PROTOCOL SOLUTIONS GROUP
3385 SCOTT BLVD
SANTA CLARA, CA 95054

# LeCroy
# USB Protocol Suite™
# User Manual

**Manual Version 4.21**

**Advisor T3™**

**USB Advisor™**

**USB*Tracer/Trainer*™**

**Voyager M3™**

**USB*Mobile* HS**

**USB*Mobile* T2**

**For Software Version 4.21**

June 2011

# Document Disclaimer

The information in this document has been carefully checked and is believed to be reliable. However, no responsibility can be assumed for inaccuracies that may not have been detected. LeCroy reserves the right to revise the information in this document without notice or penalty.

# Changes or Modifications

Any change or modification not expressly approved by LeCroy voids the user's authority to operate this equipment.

# Trademarks and Servicemarks

*CATC, LeCroy Voyager, Voyager ReadyLink, USB Protocol Suite, USB Advisor, Advisor T3, USB Chief, USB Inspector, USB Detective, USB Tracer/Trainer,* and *BusEngine* are trademarks of LeCroy.

*Microsoft* and *Windows* are registered trademarks and *Windows Vista* is a trademark of Microsoft Inc.

Intel is a registered trademark, and Core is a trademark, of Intel Corporation.

All other trademarks are property of their respective companies.

# Copyright

Copyright © 2011, LeCroy Corporation. All Rights Reserved. This document may be printed and reproduced without additional permission, but all copies should contain this copyright notice.

# FCC Conformance Statement

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user is required to correct the interference at his own expense. The end user of this product should be aware that any changes or modifications made to this equipment without the approval of LeCroy could result in the product not meeting the Class A limits, in which case the FCC could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

# EU Conformance Statement

This equipment complies with the EMC Directive 89/336/EEC and the Low Voltage Directive 73/23/EEC, and their associated amendments for Class A Information Technology Equipment. It has been tested and found to comply with EN55022:1998 Class A (EN61000-3-2:1998, EN61000-3-3:1995) and EN55024:1998 (EN61000-4-2:1998, EN61000-4-3:1996, EN61000-4-4:1996, EN61000-4-5:1996, EN61000-4-6:1997, EN61000-4-11:1998), and EN60950:1999. In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

# WEEE Program

This electronic product is subject to disposal and recycling regulations that vary by country and region. Many countries prohibit the disposal of waste electronic equipment in standard waste receptacles.
For more information about proper disposal and recycling of your LeCroy product, please visit www.lecroy.com/recycle.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS


**Chapter 1 Overview . . . . . 1**

1.1 Common Features . . . . . 1
1.1.1 Graphical Bus Traffic Display . . . . . 1
1.1.2 Accurate Time Measurement (Voyager, Advisor T3) . . . . . 2
1.1.3 CrossSync Control Panel (Voyager, Advisor T3) . . . . . 2
1.1.4 Comprehensive Error Detection and Analysis . . . . . 2
1.1.5 Real-Time Event Triggering and Capture Filtering . . . . . 3
1.1.6 Advanced Event Counting and Sequencing . . . . . 3
1.1.7 BusEngine Technology . . . . . 3
1.2 Voyager M3 Analyzer . . . . . 4
1.2.1 Voyager M3 General Description . . . . . 6
1.2.2 Voyager M3 Features . . . . . 7
1.2.3 Hi-Speed Slow Clock . . . . . 9
1.2.4 Traffic Generation . . . . . 10
1.2.5 Notes on LFPS Signals . . . . . 11
1.3 USBTracer/Trainer . . . . . 12
1.3.1 USBTracer/Trainer General Description . . . . . 12
1.3.2 USBTracer/Trainer Features . . . . . 14
1.3.3 Traffic Generation . . . . . 16
1.3.4 Hi-Speed Slow Clock . . . . . 16
1.4 Advisor . . . . . 17
1.4.1 Advisor Features . . . . . 17
1.5 Advisor T3 . . . . . 20
1.5.1 Advisor T3 General Description . . . . . 21
1.5.2 Advisor T3 Features . . . . . 22
1.6 USBMobile T2 . . . . . 25
1.6.1 Features . . . . . 26
1.7 USBMobile HS . . . . . 28

**Chapter 2 General Description . . . . . 29**

2.1 Voyager M3 System Components/Packing List . . . . . 29
2.2 Voyager M3 PC Requirements . . . . . 29
2.3 Voyager M3 Analyzer . . . . . 29
2.4 Voyager M3 Specifications . . . . . 32
2.4.1 Power Requirements . . . . . 32
2.4.2 Environmental Conditions . . . . . 32
2.4.3 Probing Characteristics . . . . . 32
2.4.4 Switches . . . . . 32
2.4.5 Recording Memory Size . . . . . 32
2.5 USBTracer/Trainer System Components . . . . . 33
2.6 USBTracer/Trainer Analyzer PC Requirements . . . . . 33
2.7 The Installed USBTracer Unit . . . . . 33
2.7.1 LED and Button Descriptions . . . . . 34
2.7.2 Back Panel . . . . . 34
2.8 USBTracer System Setup . . . . . 35

2.9 USBTracer/Trainer Specifications . . . . . 35
2.9.1 Package . . . . . 35
2.9.2 Connectors . . . . . 35
2.9.3 Weight . . . . . 35
2.9.4 Power Requirements . . . . . 35
2.9.5 Environmental Conditions . . . . . 36
2.9.6 Probing Characteristics . . . . . 36
2.9.7 Switches . . . . . 36
2.9.8 Indicators (LEDs) . . . . . 36
2.9.9 Recording Memory Size . . . . . 37
2.10 USBTracer/Trainer External Interface Breakout Board . . . . . 38
2.10.1 Pin-Outs for the Data In/Out Connector . . . . . 39
2.10.2 Prototype Rework Area . . . . . 39
2.11 Advisor . . . . . 40
2.12 Advisor PC Requirements . . . . . 40
2.13 Advisor System Components/Packing List . . . . . 40
2.14 Advisor Stand-Alone Unit . . . . . 41
2.15 Advisor System Setup . . . . . 43
2.16 Advisor Specifications . . . . . 44
2.16.1 Package . . . . . 44
2.16.2 Power Requirements . . . . . 44
2.16.3 Environmental Conditions . . . . . 44
2.16.4 Switches . . . . . 44
2.16.5 LEDs . . . . . 44
2.16.6 Recording Memory Size . . . . . 44
2.17 Advisor External Interface Breakout Board . . . . . 45
2.17.1 Pin-Outs for the Data In/Out Connector . . . . . 46
2.17.2 Prototype Rework Area . . . . . 46
2.17.3 PC Connection . . . . . 46
2.18 Advisor T3 . . . . . 47
2.18.1 Components . . . . . 47
2.18.2 Front Panel . . . . . 47
2.18.3 Rear Panel . . . . . 48
2.18.4 Advisor T3 System Setup . . . . . 49
2.19 USBMobile T2 and USBMobile HS . . . . . 50
2.19.1 Setup . . . . . 50

**Chapter 3 Installation . . . . . 51**

3.1 Installing the Analyzer Software on the PC . . . . . 51
3.2 Setting Up the Analyzer - USB Connection . . . . . 51
3.3 Setting Up the Analyzer - Ethernet Connection . . . . . 52
3.4 Cascading with CATC SYNC Expansion Card . . . . . 53
3.4.1 Removing Expansion Cards . . . . . 53
3.5 Application Startup . . . . . 56
3.5.1 Confirm Proper Hardware Installation and USB or Ethernet Connection . . . . . 56
3.5.2 Analyzer Devices . . . . . 57
3.5.3 IP Settings (Voyager only) . . . . . 58
3.5.4 Analyzer Network . . . . . 61
3.5.5 USB 3.0 Device/Host Signal Parameters . . . . . 62
3.5.6 USB 3.0 Cabling and Signal Integrity . . . . . 64

3.6 Your First USB Recording . . . . . 65
3.6.1 Trace View Features . . . . . 67
3.7 Notes on Vista and Windows 7 Directory Protections . . . . . 68
3.7.1 User Data File Paths . . . . . 68

**Chapter 4 Software Overview . . . . . 69**

4.1 Starting the Program . . . . . 69
4.2 The Main Display Window . . . . . 70
4.2.1 Exports to .CSV . . . . . 76
4.2.2 Exporting to USB 2.0 Generation Files (.utg files) . . . . . 77
4.3 Tool Bar . . . . . 78
4.3.1 Files, Searches, and Options . . . . . 78
4.3.2 Zoom and Wrap . . . . . 78
4.3.3 Miscellaneous . . . . . 79
4.3.4 Analysis (Reports) . . . . . 80
4.3.5 Recording . . . . . 80
4.3.6 Generator (Traffic Generation for USB 3) . . . . . 81
4.3.7 Generator (Traffic Generation for USB 2) . . . . . 81
4.3.8 View Level . . . . . 81
4.3.9 Trace Views . . . . . 82
4.3.10 USB 2 USB 3 Show . . . . . 82
4.3.11 USB 2.0 Display/Hide . . . . . 82
4.3.12 USB 3.0 Display/Hide . . . . . 82
4.4 Tooltips . . . . . 82
4.5 View Options . . . . . 83
4.5.1 Resetting the Toolbar . . . . . 83
4.6 Status Bar . . . . . 85
4.6.1 Recording Progress . . . . . 85
4.6.2 Recording Status . . . . . 86
4.6.3 Recording Activity . . . . . 87
4.6.4 Search Status . . . . . 87
4.6.5 SuperSpeed Termination Status . . . . . 87
4.6.6 Link Status . . . . . 88
4.7 Navigation Tools . . . . . 89
4.7.1 Zoom In . . . . . 89
4.7.2 Zoom Out . . . . . 89
4.7.3 Wrap . . . . . 89
4.8 CrossSync Control Panel . . . . . 90
4.8.1 Launching the CrossSync Control Panel . . . . . 90
4.9 Analyzer Keyboard Shortcuts . . . . . 91

**Chapter 5 Reading a Trace . . . . . 93**

5.1 Trace View Features . . . . . 93
5.1.1 USB 3.0 Packets . . . . . 94
5.1.2 Packet Direction . . . . . 94
5.2 Set Marker . . . . . 95
5.3 Edit or Clear Marker . . . . . 96
5.4 Set or Clear Quick Timing Markers . . . . . 97
5.5 Time Stamp . . . . . 99
5.6 View Raw Bits (2.0) . . . . . 100

5.7 Expanding and Collapsing Data Fields . . . . . 101
5.7.1 Using the Expand/Collapse Data Field Arrows . . . . . 101
5.7.2 Double-Clicking to Expand/Collapse Data Fields . . . . . 101
5.7.3 Expanding or Collapsing All Data Fields . . . . . 101
5.7.4 Using the Data Field Pop-up Menus . . . . . 102
5.8 Format/Color/Hide Fields . . . . . 103
5.8.1 Hide/Show Field when Packet Section is Collapsed . . . . . 103
5.9 View Data Block . . . . . 104
5.10 Pop-up Tool-tips . . . . . 105
5.11 Hide SOF Packets (2.0) . . . . . 105
5.12 Hide NAKs . . . . . 105
5.13 Hide Devices . . . . . 105
5.14 Hide Chirps (2.0) . . . . . 105
5.15 Hide Link Commands (Flow Control) (3.0) . . . . . 105
5.16 Hide ISO Time Stamp Packet (3.0) . . . . . 106
5.17 Hide Link Training Sequences (3.0) . . . . . 106
5.18 Hide Inter-Packet Symbols (3.0) . . . . . 106
5.19 Hide Logical Idle Packets (3.0) . . . . . 106
5.20 Hide Link Commands (non Flow Control) (3.0) . . . . . 106
5.21 Hide Upstream Packets (3.0) . . . . . 106
5.22 Hide LMP Packets (3.0) . . . . . 106
5.23 Hide Downstream Packets (3.0) . . . . . 106
5.24 Hide Electrical Idles (3.0) . . . . . 106
5.25 Hide Skip Sequences (3.0) . . . . . 106
5.26 Hide LFPS Packets (3.0) . . . . . 107
5.27 Display 2 Only . . . . . 107
5.28 Display 3 Only . . . . . 107
5.29 Switch to Transactions View . . . . . 108
5.30 View Decoded Transactions . . . . . 110
5.30.1 Expanded and Collapsed Transactions . . . . . 111
5.31 Switch to Split Transaction View . . . . . 112
5.32 Switch to Transfer View . . . . . 112
5.33 View Decoded Transfers . . . . . 113
5.33.1 Expanded and Collapsed Transfers . . . . . 113
5.34 Decoding Protocol-Specific Fields in Transactions and Transfers . . . . . 115
5.35 Switch to Host Wire Adapter Segment View . . . . . 115
5.36 Switch to Host Wire Adapter Transfer View . . . . . 116
5.37 Switch to Device Wire Adapter Segment View . . . . . 116
5.38 Switch to Device Wire Adapter Transfer View . . . . . 116
5.39 Switch to PTP Transactions . . . . . 117
5.40 Switch to PTP Object Transfers . . . . . 117
5.41 Switch to PTP Sessions . . . . . 118
5.42 Switch to SCSI Operations . . . . . 118
5.42.1 SCSI Metrics . . . . . 118
5.43 Compressed CATC Trace View . . . . . 119
5.44 Spreadsheet View . . . . . 120
5.44.1 Columns . . . . . 121
5.44.2 Rows . . . . . 121
5.44.3 Detail View and Spreadsheet View . . . . . 123
5.45 Edit Comment . . . . . 124

**Chapter 6 Searching Traces . . . . . 125**
6.1 Go to Trigger . . . . . 125
6.2 Go to Packet/Transaction/Transfer . . . . . 126
6.3 Go to Marker . . . . . 126
6.4 Go To USB2.0 . . . . . 127
6.4.1 Packet IDs (PIDs) . . . . . 128
6.4.2 ANY Error . . . . . 128
6.4.3 Errors . . . . . 129
6.4.4 Data Length . . . . . 130
6.4.5 Addr & Endp . . . . . 130
6.4.6 Bus Conditions . . . . . 131
6.4.7 Split HubAddr & Port . . . . . 131
6.4.8 On-the-Go . . . . . 132
6.4.9 Channel . . . . . 132
6.5 Go To USB3.0 . . . . . 133
6.5.1 Packet Type . . . . . 133
6.5.2 Specific Errors . . . . . 134
6.5.3 Data Length . . . . . 134
6.5.4 Address and Endpoint . . . . . 135
6.5.5 Header Packet Type . . . . . 135
6.5.6 Link Command . . . . . 136
6.5.7 LMP Subtype . . . . . 136
6.5.8 Transaction Packet Type . . . . . 137
6.6 Go To SCSI . . . . . 137
6.6.1 Error . . . . . 137
6.7 Find . . . . . 138
6.7.1 Data Pattern Mask and Match . . . . . 141
6.8 Find Next . . . . . 142
6.9 Search Direction . . . . . 142
6.10 Protocol . . . . . 142
**Chapter 7 Display Options . . . . . 143**
7.1 General Display Options . . . . . 144
7.2 Color/Format/Hiding Display Options . . . . . 146
7.2.1 Color Display Options . . . . . 147
7.2.2 Formats Display Options . . . . . 149
7.2.3 Hiding Display Options . . . . . 150
7.3 USB 2.0 Packet Hiding Options . . . . . 151
7.4 USB 3.0 Packet Hiding Options . . . . . 152
7.5 Saving Display Options . . . . . 153

**Chapter 8 Decode Requests . . . . . 155**
8.1 Class and Vendor Definition Files . . . . . 155
8.2 Class/Vendor Decoding Options . . . . . 159
8.2.1 Mapping Request Recipient to Class/Vendor Decoding . . 159
8.2.2 Mapping Endpoint to Class/Vendor Decoding . . . . . 162
8.2.3 Mapping Request RPipe to Class/Vendor Decoding . . . . 166
8.2.4 Mapping Endpoint RPipe to Class/Vendor Decoding . . . . 167
8.2.5 Mapping Request DWA RPipe to Class/Vendor Decoding 168
8.2.6 Mapping Endpoint DWA RPipes to Class/Vendor Decoding . . . . . 169
8.3 General Options . . . . . 170
8.3.1 Decoding USB Device Requests . . . . . 170
8.3.2 Decoding Standard Requests . . . . . 171
8.3.3 Decoding Class Requests . . . . . 172
8.3.4 Decoding Vendor Requests . . . . . 172
8.3.5 Decoding Undefined USB/WUSB Device Requests . . . . . 172
8.3.6 Decoding using Endpoint Information . . . . . 173
8.3.7 Changing the Layout of Decode Requests . . . . . 173
**Chapter 9 Reports . . . . . 175**
9.1 File Information . . . . . 177
9.2 Error Summary . . . . . 179
9.3 Timing Calculations . . . . . 180
9.4 Data View . . . . . 183
9.5 Traffic Summary . . . . . 184
9.5.1 SCSI Metrics . . . . . 185
9.6 Bus Utilization . . . . . 186
9.6.1 Bus Utilization Buttons . . . . . 188
9.6.2 View Settings Menu . . . . . 189
9.6.3 Graph Areas Menu . . . . . 191
9.7 Link Tracker (3.0) . . . . . 193
9.7.1 Using the Link Tracker Window . . . . . 194
9.7.2 Link Tracker Buttons . . . . . 196
9.8 Using the Trace Navigator . . . . . 198
9.8.1 Displaying the Navigator . . . . . 198
9.8.2 Navigator Toolbar . . . . . 199
9.8.3 Navigator Ranges . . . . . 200
9.8.4 Navigator Panes . . . . . 202
9.9 Detail View . . . . . 205
9.9.1 Detail View and Spreadsheet View . . . . . 205
9.10 Spec View (3.0) . . . . . 206
9.11 USB3 Link State Timing View . . . . . 207
9.11.1 USB3 Link State Timing View Toolbar . . . . . 208
9.12 USB3 LTSSM View . . . . . 209
9.13 Power Tracker . . . . . 210
9.13.1 Power Tracker Toolbar . . . . . 211
9.14 Running Verification Scripts . . . . . 212

9.15 Real Time Monitoring . . . . . 217
9.15.1 Real-Time Statistics Buttons . . . . . 218
9.15.2 Real-Time Statistical Monitor Pop-up Menu . . . . . 219
9.15.3 Displaying Multiple Graphs . . . . . 220

**Chapter 10 Recording Options . . . . . 221**

10.1 General Recording Options . . . . . 231
10.1.1 Product . . . . . 231
10.1.2 Recording Type . . . . . 231
10.1.3 Options for USBTracer/Trainer and Advisor . . . . . 232
10.1.4 Recording Channels (Voyager and Advisor T3) . . . . . 232
10.1.5 Recording Scope (Voyager and Advisor T3) . . . . . 233
10.1.6 Buffer Size . . . . . 234
10.1.7 Trigger Position . . . . . 234
10.1.8 Options Name . . . . . 235
10.1.9 Trace File Name & Path . . . . . 236
10.1.10 Power . . . . . 236
10.2 Recording Options - Misc. USB 2.0 (Voyager, Advisor T3, USBTracer/Trainer, and Mobile) . . . . . 237
10.2.1 Analyzer Speed . . . . . 238
10.2.2 Generator/Analyzer Clocking Overrides . . . . . 238
10.2.3 USB On-The-Go . . . . . 239
10.2.4 Generator-related Parameters . . . . . 239
10.2.5 Data Truncation Option . . . . . 239
10.3 Recording Options - Misc. USB 3.0 for Voyager . . . . . 240
10.3.1 Very Slow Clock Usage . . . . . 242
10.4 Recording Options - Misc. USB 3.0 for Advisor T3 . . . . . 245
10.5 Recording Rules - USB 2.0 . . . . . 247
10.5.1 Recording Rules Toolbar . . . . . 249
10.5.2 Recording Rules Page: How It Works . . . . . 250
10.5.3 Creating Event Buttons . . . . . 251
10.5.4 Dragging a Button to the Main Display Area . . . . . 252
10.5.5 Assigning an Action . . . . . 253
10.5.6 Recording Rules Pop-Up Menus . . . . . 254
10.5.7 Events and Event Properties for USB 2.0 . . . . . 256
10.5.8 Counters and Timers for USB 2.0 . . . . . 259
10.5.9 Actions and Action Properties . . . . . 261
10.5.10 Using a Single-State Sequence . . . . . 262
10.5.11 Using a Multi-State Sequences . . . . . 262
10.5.12 Using Independent Sequences . . . . . 262

10.6 Recording Rules - USB 3.0 (Voyager only) . . . . . 263
10.6.1 Recording Rules Toolbar . . . . . 263
10.6.2 Recording Rules Page: How It Works . . . . . 264
10.6.3 Creating Event Buttons . . . . . 264
10.6.4 Dragging a Button to the Main Display Area . . . . . 265
10.6.5 Assigning an Action . . . . . 266
10.6.6 Recording Rules Pop-Up Menus . . . . . 266
10.6.7 Actions and Action Properties . . . . . 266
10.6.8 Events and Event Properties for USB 3.0 . . . . . 267
10.6.9 Counters and Timers for USB 3.0 . . . . . 269
10.6.10 Configuration Validity . . . . . 271
10.7 Saving Recording Options . . . . . 271
10.8 Recording Bus Data . . . . . 272
10.9 Merging Trace Files . . . . . 273
10.10 Recording Option Summary Tab . . . . . 275

**Chapter 11 Traffic Generation (2.0) . . . . . 277**

11.1 Connecting to the Exerciser/Generator . . . . . 277
11.1.1 Connecting to USBTracer/Trainer . . . . . 277
11.1.2 Connecting to Voyager . . . . . 281
11.2 Traffic Generation Files . . . . . 283
11.3 Creating Traffic Generation Files . . . . . 284
11.3.1 Creating a Traffic Generation File with the Export Command . . . . . 284
11.4 Editing a Generation File . . . . . 286
11.4.1 Toolbar . . . . . 287
11.4.2 Pop-up Menu . . . . . 288
11.4.3 File Tabs . . . . . 288
11.4.4 Error Log . . . . . 288
11.4.5 Tooltips . . . . . 288
11.5 Loading the Generation File . . . . . 289
11.5.1 Traffic Generation Modes: Bitstream vs. Intelliframe . . . . . 291
11.6 Starting Traffic Generation . . . . . 291
11.7 Repeating a Generation Session . . . . . 291
11.8 Stop Traffic Generation . . . . . 291
11.9 Device Emulation . . . . . 292
11.9.1 Creating a Generation File . . . . . 292
11.9.2 Setting Generation Options . . . . . 292
11.9.3 Run the Traffic Generation Script File . . . . . 293
11.10 Format of Traffic Generation Files . . . . . 294
11.10.1 Script control of Intelliframe vs Bitstream modes . . . . . 294

**Chapter 12 Traffic Generation (3.0 Exerciser) . . . . . 307**

12.1 Connecting to Voyager . . . . . 307
12.1.1 Host Emulation . . . . . 307
12.1.2 Device Emulation . . . . . 308
12.2 Transaction Engine . . . . . 309
12.3 Exerciser Files . . . . . 309
12.4 Creating Exerciser Files . . . . . 309

12.5 Exerciser Window . . . . . 310
12.5.1 Exerciser Menus . . . . . 310
12.5.2 Main Exerciser Toolbar . . . . . 312
12.6 Script Editor . . . . . 313
12.6.1 Highlighting . . . . . 313
12.6.2 Text Editing Commands . . . . . 313
12.6.3 Help . . . . . 313
12.6.4 Properties Window . . . . . 313
12.6.5 File Tabs . . . . . 313
12.6.6 Errors . . . . . 313
12.6.7 Output . . . . . 314
12.6.8 Options Menu . . . . . 314
12.6.9 Outlining . . . . . 314
12.6.10 Line Numbers . . . . . 314
12.6.11 Tooltips . . . . . 314
12.6.12 Text Snippets . . . . . 315
12.6.13 Views Toolbar . . . . . 316
12.6.14 Script Toolbar . . . . . 317
12.6.15 Error Log . . . . . 317
12.6.16 Tooltips . . . . . 317
12.7 Creating a Script using the Script Editor . . . . . 318
12.8 Graphical Scenario Editor . . . . . 321
12.8.1 Graphical Scenario Window . . . . . 322
12.8.2 Copy SCSI Operation from Trace File and Paste to Exerciser Scenario . . . . . 327
12.8.3 Graphical Toolbar . . . . . 327
12.9 Loading and Running the Generation File . . . . . 328
12.9.1 Starting Traffic Generation . . . . . 328
12.9.2 Stop Traffic Generation . . . . . 328
12.10 Exporting a Trace to a Traffic Generation File . . . . . 329
12.11 USB 3.0 Electrical Test Modes . . . . . 330
12.11.1 Loopback Mode . . . . . 330
12.11.2 Compliance Mode . . . . . 333

**Chapter 13 Updates . . . . . 345**

13.1 Software, Firmware, and BusEngine Revisions . . . . . 345
13.2 Software Updates . . . . . 346
13.2.1 Manual Check for Software Updates . . . . . 346
13.2.2 Automatic Check for Software Updates . . . . . 347
13.3 BusEngine and Firmware Updates . . . . . 349
13.3.1 Updating the BusEngines . . . . . 349
13.3.2 Updating the Firmware . . . . . 349
13.3.3 Automatic Updates . . . . . 349
13.3.4 Manual Updates to Firmware, BusEngine, and Serdes BusEngine . . . . . 350
13.4 License Information . . . . . 351
13.5 Updating the Software License . . . . . 352
13.6 Registering Online . . . . . 352

**Appendix A China Restriction of Hazardous Substances Table . . . . . 353**

**How to Contact LeCroy . . . . . 355**

**Limited Hardware Warranty . . . . . 355**

**Index . . . . . 359**

# Chapter 1: Overview

## 1.1 Common Features

### 1.1.1 Graphical Bus Traffic Display

Bus traffic displays use color and graphics to show captured transactions.

Packets are on separate rows. Packets receive time stamps and sequential numbers as the system records them. Fields have labels and color codes. The system automatically detects protocol errors and highlights them in red.

You can customize the display color scheme and field formats. You can use the hide feature to suppress SOF packets and uninteresting user-defined packets or fields in different contexts. You can name and save display formats for later use. Pop-up tooltips annotate packet fields.

The display software operates independently of the hardware, allowing it to function as a stand-alone “trace viewer” that you can freely distribute.

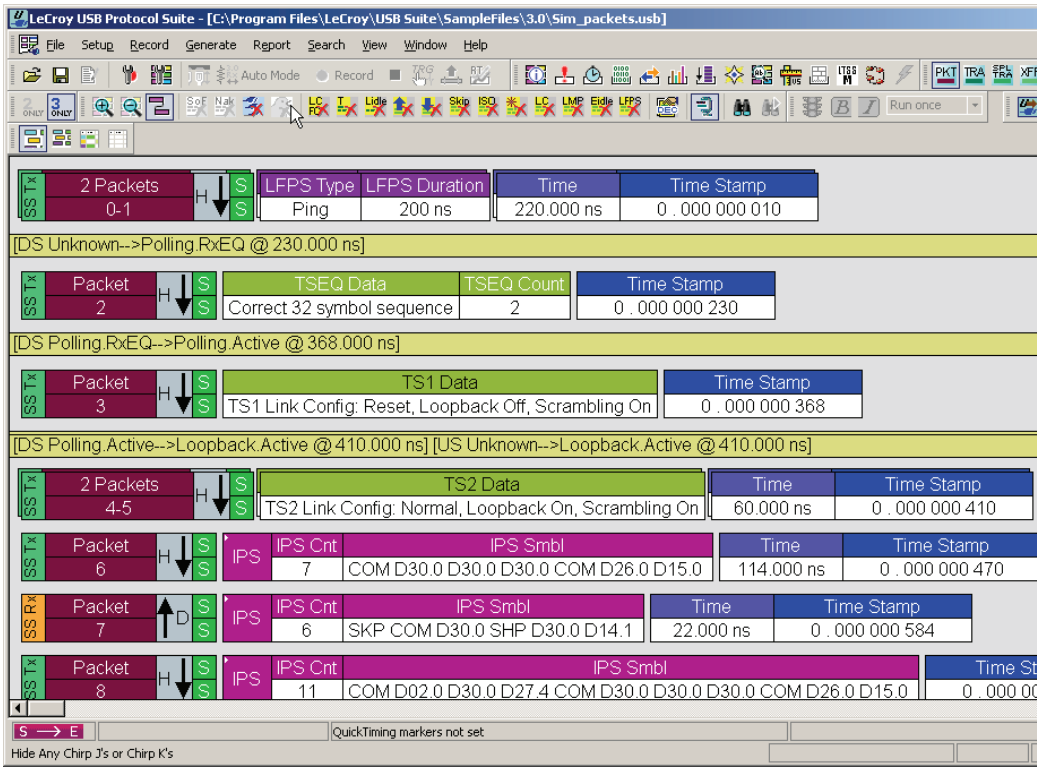



**Figure 1.1 Trace Viewer**

### 1.1.2 Accurate Time Measurement (Voyager, Advisor T3)

The internal counter/timer circuitry enables reliable, accurate (2 ns resolution) time stamping of recorded bus traffic. Traces and measurement and analysis functions display this timing information. Time fields are time stamps, idle times, bit times, or time deltas, in either decimal or hexadecimal format. You can add any number of markers to denote specific packets, you can make further timing measurements from one marker to another or from marker to trigger.

An essential feature of time management is that idle traffic does not consume Analyzer memory. Because of this unique technology, the system can make accurate timing calculations while still preserving valuable recording memory for important bus traffic.

The oscillator has 2.5 ppm accuracy.

### 1.1.3 CrossSync Control Panel (Voyager, Advisor T3)

The LeCroy CrossSync control panel provides synchronization for complete end-to-end visibility into multi-protocol systems.

CrossSync is LeCroy's analyzer synchronization solution that enables time-aligned display of protocol traffic from multiple daisy-chained analyzers showing packet traffic from multiple high-speed serial busses. A lightweight software control panel allows users to select analyzers for synchronization and manage the recording process. Captured traffic is displayed using the latest analyzer software (in separate windows) with all the protocol specific search and reporting features.

Captured packets are displayed in separate windows that share a common time scale. Navigating the traffic in either direction will scroll to the same timestamp in a synchronized window. When using the CrossSync option, users can access the full complement of analysis capabilities available within the individual LeCroy software. Search, reporting, and decoding all operate normally.

This feature is available with the LeCroy USB Protocol Suite application.

### 1.1.4 Comprehensive Error Detection and Analysis

The system detects, and alerts you to, every potential bus error and protocol violation, and their combinations. The Analyzer BusEngine™ circuitry performs real-time triggering on multiple error conditions, such as PID bad, bit stuffing bad, header or data CRC bad, end-of-packet bad, babble, activity loss, frame length violation, time-out or turn-around violation, and data toggle violation. The Analyzer program highlights all hardware-detected errors and further examines the trace file for additional protocol errors, including wrong packet length, data payload violation, and packet termination not on a byte boundary.

### 1.1.5 Real-Time Event Triggering and Capture Filtering

The Analyzer can accurately identify and selectively record transactions of interest from the crowded stream of bus traffic. The system uses more than a dozen configurable hardware building blocks that you can optimize to perform particular activities. Such “recording resources” can independently await an initialization signal, monitor its external environment (external signals or other resources) in search of a particular event, and take a subsequent action, such as triggering, inclusive or exclusive filtering, and counting. In the user interface, you can select, configure, and combine these resources to search for complex trigger conditions and selectively capture associated transactions.

The system can trigger on basic events, such as specific bus conditions and packet identifiers (PID). It can also trigger on complex events, such as “trigger on the fifth occurrence of a SETUP Token device number nine” or “trigger on a SET INTERFACE request, following a specified eight-byte bulk data pattern match from this scanner, and do not capture any start-of-frame (SOF) packets.”

You can set the size of the recording memory, specify the pre-trigger to post-trigger capture ratio, and truncate large data packets up to 256 bytes.

### 1.1.6 Advanced Event Counting and Sequencing

The count and sequence options define rules for data recording sessions. These options configure and control the order of events selected for triggering or filtering.

Using this feature, you can specify a sequence of up to seven events that must occur before the Analyzer triggers and finishes capturing data, allowing you to specify event types for recording. Without this feature, you may have to scroll through megabytes of recorded data to locate an occurrence of a sequence.

### 1.1.7 BusEngine Technology

The Analyzer uses LeCroy BusEngine Technology. The BusEngine core uses Electrically Programmable Logic Device (EPLD) technology and incorporates both a real-time recording engine and configurable building blocks that implement data/state/error detection, triggering, capture filtering, external signal monitoring, and event counting and sequencing. Like the flash-memory-based firmware that controls its operation, all BusEngine logic is fully field upgradeable, using configuration files.

# 1.2 Voyager M3 Analyzer

The LeCroy Voyager M3™ Analyzer and Exerciser system is a multifunction verification system for USB 2.0 and USB 3.0 development and testing. It can record traffic and graphically present logical USB transactions and events. It can also generate USB traffic. The system is connected to a laptop or desktop via its USB or Gigabit Ethernet port.

**Figure 1.2 Voyager M3 Analyzer Exerciser System**

Please see the **Readme** file on the installation CD for the latest information on PC requirements and supported operating systems.

## USB 2.0 and USB 3.0 Features

The system can monitor traffic between USB 2.0 links using standard high-speed compliant cables.

If configured for USB 3.0 testing, the system supports monitoring between SuperSpeed links using USB 3.0 cables (Figure 1.3)

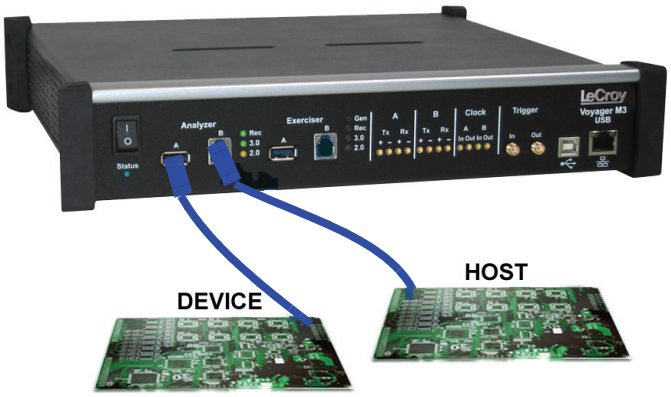



**Figure 1.3 Direct Connection using USB 3.0 Cables**

or through direct connection via MMCx-to-SMA coaxial cables (Figure 1.4).

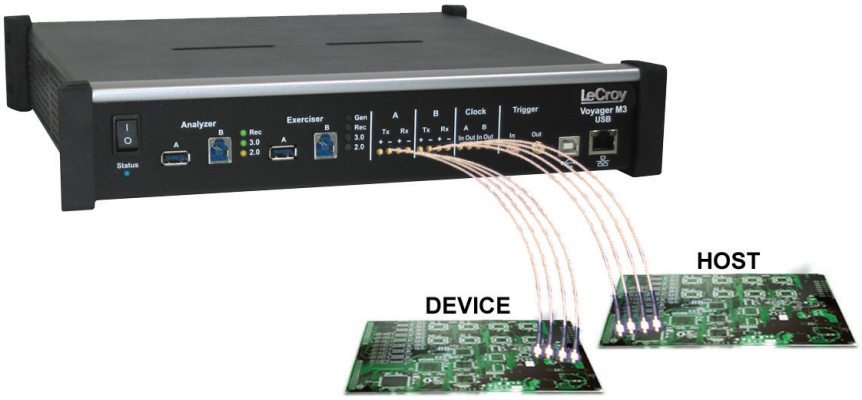



**Figure 1.4 Direct Connection using SMA Differential Tap**

## 1.2.1 Voyager M3 General Description

The Analyzer connects to a portable or desktop PC through the USB port. The PC configures and controls the Analyzer. The “CATC Trace™” user interface is an industry standard for documenting the performance of high-speed serial protocols.

The USB protocol Analyzer provides traffic capture and analysis. Hardware triggering allows capture of real-time events. Hardware filtering allows filtering different packet types in or out of the recording. Filtering also allows you to preserve recording memory, for extended recording time.

The trace viewer application displays recorded data in colored graphics. The application has advanced search and viewing capabilities that allow you to quickly locate specific data, errors, and other conditions.

The system functions with any personal computer having the Microsoft® Windows® XP, Windows Vista™ 32, Windows Vista 64, or Windows 7 (32 or 64) operating system and a functional USB interface or Ethernet port.

The system provides on-the-fly detection of, and triggering on, such events as Tokens and Errors. Whether recording manually or with a specified trigger condition, the system continuously records the link data, in a wrap-around fashion, until manually stopped or until the system detects the Trigger Event and records the specified post-trigger amount of link data.

Upon detection of a triggering event, the Analyzer continues to record data up to a point specified by you. You can individually enable or disable real-time event detection to allow triggering on events as they happen, including predefined exception or error conditions and user-defined sets of trigger events. An externally supplied signal can trigger the Analyzer.

You can use search functions to investigate particular events. In addition to immediate analysis, you can print any part of the data. You can save the data on disk for later viewing. You can generate timing information and data analysis reports.

Please refer to the *Universal Serial Bus Specification* for details on the protocol. The USB specification is available from the USB Implementers Forum (USB-IF) at:

USB Implementers Forum
1730 SW Skyline Blvd.
Suite 203
Portland, OR 97221

Tel: +1/503.296.9892
Fax: +1/503.297.1090
Web: http://www.usb.org/

## 1.2.2 Voyager M3 Features

### General

- Fully complies with USB specification revisions.
- Supports the Link Power Management extension.
- Uses field-upgradeable firmware and recording engine.
- Supports all USB speeds (5 Gb/s, 480 Mb/s, 12 Mb/s, and 1.5 Mb/s).
- Displays bus traffic using color and graphics in the user-friendly CATC Trace interface.
- Has free non-recording, view-only Trace Viewer software.
- Comes with online manual.
- Self-diagnoses at power on.
- Has a 36-month warranty and hot-line customer support.
- Uses software upgradable Exerciser function.
- Allows remote control of USB analyzers in a network.

### Flexible 3.0 Calibration

Each link can be calibrated with respect to received equalization and gain.

### Physical Components

- Desktop or portable Microsoft Windows XP, Windows Vista 32, Windows Vista 64, or Windows 7 (32 or 64) computer with USB or Ethernet capability
- Plug-and-Play USB installation
- 1 GB or 4 GB of physical data-recording memory
- USB 2.0 Hi-Speed connection to desktop or portable host PC
- Internal wide-range AC power supply
- Expansion port for future enhancements
- SMA connectors and USB 3.0 connectors for SuperSpeed capture and generation
- External clock inputs and outputs

## Recording Options

- Versatile triggering: bit-wise value and mask data patterns up to sixteen bytes wide for Setup transactions and data packets
- Triggering on new High-Speed PIDs and split transaction special tokens (ERR, SPLIT, PING, NYET, DATA2, and MDATA) (2.0)
- CATC Trace display and enumeration of High-Speed Micro Frames (2.0)
- Three forms of triggering: Snapshot, Manual, and Event
- Transaction sequencer: Allows triggering on a token qualified by a data pattern and/or specific handshake, or can filter transactions (for example, NAK'd transactions) (2.0)
- Advanced triggering with event counting and sequencing
- Dedicated trigger for recording input and output used to interface to external test equipment
- Triggering on multiple error conditions: PID bad, bit stuffing bad, CRC bad, end-of-packet bad, babble, activity loss, frame length violation, time-out or turn-around violation, data toggle violation, Token, Bus Conditions, Data Length, and excessive empty frames (2.0)
- Real-time traffic capture filtering and data packet truncation variable up to 256 bytes (2.0)
- Adjustable buffer size from 0.4 MB to 1 GB or 4 GB
- Idle filtering (3.0)

### Display Options

- Utilizes the CATC Trace graphical display of bus packets, transactions, split transactions, and transfers.
- Groups numerous packets and transactions under a single transfer while quickly decoding all essential information.
- Decodes split transactions upstream and downstream of a transaction translator with a special hierarchical view.
- Has reports summarizing key statistics and conditions of interest, with the ability to jump to the selected item in the trace display.
- Uses a Trace Viewer that is backward compatible with USB Advisor™, USB Chief™, USB Inspector™, and USB Detective™ trace files, which are converted upon loading.
- Indicates trigger position by different pre-trigger and post-trigger packet colors.
- Sets markers to assist with navigation and time calculations. Each marker can contain unique comments.
- Hides start-of-frame (SOF) packets, as well as any packet or transaction from a device address and endpoint.
- Searches for a specific PID.
- Detects and alerts you to every potential bus error and protocol violation, and their combinations.
- Has high-resolution, accurate time stamping of bus packets and timing measurement and analysis functions.
- Allows search and packet hiding.
- Allows device class decoding and user-defined protocol decoding.
- Has a Data View (2.0 and 3.0).
- Uses Link Tracker to view symbols of traffic (3.0).
- Uses a Spec View to show packets in the same format as the USB 3.0 specification (3.0).
- Has Quick Timing Markers to immediately show time deltas and bandwidth use.

## 1.2.3 Hi-Speed Slow Clock

- Trace and generate High-Speed traffic at fractional (slow) clock rate capability (2.0)

## 1.2.4 Traffic Generation

USB 2.0 and 3.0 traffic generation options allow you to transmit custom packets over standard USB cables with low-level control of headers, payloads, timing, and link states. The Exerciser can play back trace files bit-for-bit, allowing validation engineers to recreate problems reported in the field or test-specific functionality.

To build generation script files, you can edit example test scenarios or export any traffic stream from a previously recorded trace. The Voyager Exerciser includes a Generation Script Editor.

A script pre-processor allows you to organize script code and create reusable generation blocks.

For USB 3.0 applications, test scenarios can contain multi-stage traffic generation blocks that include Boolean expressions, LOOP, DO-CASE, and IF-THEN logical branching.

The Voyager USB 2.0 Exerciser can transmit low, full, or high-speed traffic and supports both host and device emulation. It is backward compatible with existing USB*Trainer* traffic generation scripts.

For USB 2.0 applications, the Exerciser supports both bitstream mode or Intelliframe mode. In Intelliframe mode, the Exerciser can wait for the appropriate response from the DUT before transmitting the next packet. For example, after issuing an IN, the generator waits for the DATAx packet returned by the device to finish, and then issues an ACK. When NAKs are received, the Exerciser can automatically resend the previous packet.

### Voyager ReadyLink™ Emulation

The LeCroy Voyager USB 3.0 Exerciser features ReadyLink Emulation Mode. The ReadyLink feature handles all USB 3.0 link training and link flow control, allowing the emulator to operate at full line rate and respond to the DUT as defined by the specification. The ReadyLink Emulation Mode helps simplify development of USB 3.0 test scenarios.

By default, ReadyLink Emulation Mode automatically manages:

- Header Packet Acknowledgements (L_GOOD_n)
- Buffer Credit (L_CRD_x)
- SKIPs at required intervals (SKP)
- Link Synchronization
    - Responds to LFPS (Polling.LFPS)
    - Responds to polling sequence (Polling.RxEQ)
    - Responds to TS1 / TS2 handshaking sequence
    - Responds to SS.Inactive (with RX.Detect)
- Power Management Link Commands
    - Responds to LGO_Un (with LAU)
    - Responds to LAU (with LMPA)

Test scripts can customize ReadyLink Emulation Mode to include error scenarios, such as:

- Header LBADs
- Invalid link commands
- 8B10B / CRC Error
- Running Disparity Error
- Corrupt Link Commands
- Corrupt Flow Control (Wrong L_CRD_x, Wrong L_GOOD_n, Drop L_Good_n)
- Corrupt Header Packet acknowledgement (Send LBAD, LRTY)
- Corrupt Packet Framing (SHP, SDP, END)

At the packet level, you can send customized data payloads anywhere within the stream to insert logic errors, perform corner-case, or do stress testing. Commands, such as the **Set ErrWrongLCRD** command, allow link-layer error injection anywhere within the script.

## 1.2.5 Notes on LFPS Signals

Voyager Exerciser requires received “Ping” LFPS signals to be a minimum of 150 nanoseconds to be reliably recognized.

Voyager Analyzer can recognize “Ping” LFPS signals above 60 nanoseconds and report their durations to ±15 nanoseconds of accuracy.

# 1.3 USB*Tracer/Trainer*

The LeCroy USB*Tracer*™ USB 2.0 Design & Verification System is the fifth generation product of LeCroy's analysis tools for USB development and testing. The USB bus & protocol Analyzer interfaces with standard USB cables and connections to capture and display all speeds of USB 2.0 bus traffic.

**Figure 1.5 USB *Tracer/Trainer***

## 1.3.1 USB*Tracer/Trainer* General Description

The USB*Tracer*™ hardware module installs into the LeCroy Universal Protocol Analyzer System. A portable or desktop PC connects to USB*Tracer* at its USB port and configures and controls the Analyzer. The “CATC Trace™” user interface is the industry standard for documenting the performance of high-speed serial protocols.

USB*Tracer* non-intrusively provides traffic capture and analysis for USB protocol development and testing. Hardware triggering allows real-time event capture. Hardware filtering filters different types of packets in or out of the recording. Filtering also preserves recording memory, so that recording time can be extended.

The trace viewer application displays recorded data in colored graphics. Advanced search and viewing capabilities allow you to quickly locate specific data, errors, and other desired conditions.

USB*Tracer* functions with any personal computer using the Microsoft® Windows® XP, Windows Vista™ 32, Windows Vista 64, or Windows 7 (32 or 64) operating system and equipped with a functional USB interface.

The Analyzer is a plug-in module that installs into a LeCroy Universal Protocol Analyzer System (UPAS). Together, the Analyzer and UPAS are controlled from a personal computer USB port across a USB connection.

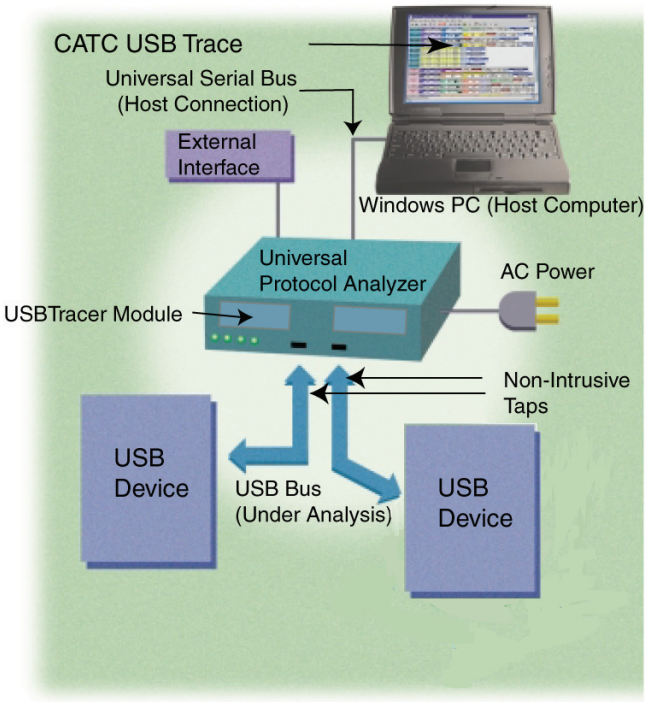



**Figure 1.6 System Setup**

USB*Tracer* provides on-the-fly detection of, and triggering on, events such as Tokens and Errors. Whether recording manually or with a specified trigger condition, USB*Tracer* continuously records the link data in a wrap-around fashion until manually stopped or until the system detects a Trigger Event and records the specified post-trigger amount of link data.

Upon detection of a triggering event, the Analyzer continues to record data up to a point specified by the user. You can individually enable or disable real-time detection of events to allow triggering on events as they happen, including predefined exception or error conditions and user-defined sets of trigger events. An externally supplied signal can trigger the Analyzer. An external DB-25 connector provides a path for externally supplied data or timing data to be recorded along with traffic.

The DB-25 connector also provides a path for USB*Tracer* to transmit externally the software trigger signal or a user-defined event, for probing or use by other circuitry.

Search functions allow the software to identify and highlight specific events. In addition to immediate analysis, you can print any part of the data. You can save the data on disk for later viewing. You can generate timing information and data analysis reports.

Please refer to the *Universal Serial Bus Specification, version 2.0* for details on the protocol. The USB specification is available from the USB Implementers Forum (USB-IF) at:

USB Implementers Forum
1730 SW Skyline Blvd.
Suite 203
Portland, OR 97221

Tel: +1/503.296.9892
Fax: +1/503.297.1090
Web: http://www.usb.org/

## 1.3.2 USB*Tracer/Trainer* Features

### General

- Fully complies with USB specification revision 2.0.
- Supports Link Power Management extension to USB 2.0 specification.
- Allows reconfigurable hardware for future enhancements.
- Has field-upgradeable firmware and recording engine.
- Supports all USB speeds (480 Mb/s, 12Mb/s, and 1.5 Mb/s).
- Has dual recording channels to aid development of multiple speed functions upstream and downstream of speed-matching hub or transaction translator.
- Displays bus traffic using color and graphics in the CATC Trace interface.
- Has free non-recording, view-only Trace Viewer software.
- Comes with online manual.
- Self-diagnoses at power on.
- Has a 36-month warranty and hot-line customer support.
- Works in conjunction with the LeCroy USB*Trainer* USB Traffic Generator hardware module to create a fully customizable USB test platform.

### Physical Components

- Hardware module for the LeCroy Universal Protocol Analyzer System
- Desktop or portable Microsoft Windows XP, Windows Vista 32, Windows Vista 64, or Windows 7 (32 or 64) computer with USB capability
- Plug-and-Play USB installation
- High-impedance tap: Inserts non-intrusively in any branch of a USB system.
- 512 MB of physical data-recording memory
- Two all speed (Low, Full, or Hi-Speed) recording channels
- Full-Speed USB connection to desktop or portable host PC. Hi-Speed on UPAS 2500H platform.
- Internal wide-range AC power supply
- Break-out board to interface to external test equipment

## Recording Options

- Versatile triggering: bit-wise value and mask data patterns up to sixteen bytes wide for Setup transactions and data packets
- Triggering on new High-speed PIDs and split transaction special tokens (ERR, SPLIT, PING, NYET, DATA2, and MDATA).
- CATC Trace displays and enumerates High-speed Micro Frames.
- Three forms of triggering: Snapshot, Manual, and Event.
- Transaction sequencer: Allows triggering on a token qualified by a data pattern and/or specific handshake, or can filter transactions (such as NAK'd transactions).
- Advanced triggering with event counting and sequencing
- Dedicated trigger for recording input and output used to interface to external test equipment
- Triggering on multiple error conditions: PID bad, bit stuffing bad, CRC bad, end-of-packet bad, babble, activity loss, frame length violation, time-out or turn-around violation, data toggle violation, Token, Bus Conditions, Data Length, and excessive empty frames
- Real-time traffic capture filtering and data packet truncation variable up to 256 bytes
- Adjustable buffer size from 0.4 MB to 512 MB

## Display Options

- Uses the CATC Trace graphical display of bus packets, transactions, split transactions, and transfers.
- Groups numerous packets and transactions under a single transfer while quickly decoding all essential information.
- Decodes split transactions upstream and downstream of a transaction translator with a special hierarchical view.
- Has reports summarizing key statistics and conditions of interest, with the ability to jump to the selected item in the trace display.
- Records flexible input signaling with the CATC Trace.
- Uses a Trace Viewer backward compatible with Advisor™, Chief™, Inspector™, and Detective™ trace files.
- Indicates trigger position by different pre-trigger and post-trigger packet colors.
- Sets markers to assist with navigation and time calculations. Each marker can contain unique comments.
- Hides start-of-frame (SOF) packets and any packet or transaction.
- Searches for a specific PID.
- Detects, and alerts you to, every potential bus error and protocol violation, and their combinations.
- Has high-resolution, accurate time stamping of bus packets and timing measurement and analysis functions.
- Has search and packet hiding capabilities.
- Allows comprehensive device class decoding and user-defined protocol decoding.

### 1.3.3 Traffic Generation

Traffic generation capability is available as an add-on module, USB*Trainer*™, for the Universal Protocol Analyzer System.

### 1.3.4 Hi-Speed Slow Clock

The ability to trace and generate Hi-Speed traffic at fractional (slow) clock rate is available on both USB*Tracer* platforms (2500 and 2500H). You can purchase this feature with a License Key. Contact LeCroy for more information.

# 1.4 Advisor

The LeCroy Advisor™ USB 2.0 Bus & Protocol Analyzer is a LeCroy fourth-generation product for USB development and testing. The Advisor interfaces with standard USB cables and connections to capture and display Hi-Speed and Classic-Speed USB 2.0 bus traffic.

**Figure 1.7 Advisor**

## 1.4.1 Advisor Features

### General

- Fully complies with USB 2.0 specification
- Supports Link Power Management extension to USB 2.0 specification.
- Has reconfigurable hardware for future enhancements.
- Supports all USB speeds (High-Speed, Full-Speed, and Low-Speed).
- Displays bus traffic using color and graphics in the CATC Trace interface.
- Has free non-recording, view-only Trace Viewer software.
- Self-diagnoses at power on.
- Has a 36-month warranty and hot-line customer support.

## Physical Components

- High impedance tap: Inserts non-intrusively in any branch of a USB system
- 128 MB of physical data-recording memory
- Two recording channels: one for High-Speed traffic and one for Classic-Speed traffic (either Low-Speed or Full-Speed)
- Secondary recording channel for development of multiple speed functions up-stream and down-stream of a speed-matching hub or transaction translator
- Convenient “Detach Device” switch operates with the Classic recording channel to save time and reduce USB cable/connector wear for multiple connects and disconnects to host
- Full-speed USB connection to desktop or portable host PC
- Internal wide-range AC power supply
- Breakout board (included)

## Recording Options

- Triggering on all USB2.0 PIDS and special tokens (such as ERR, SPLIT, PING, NYET, DATA2, and MDATA).
- CATC Trace display and enumeration of USB2.0 Micro Frames
- Three forms of triggering: Snapshot, Manual, and Event
- High, Full, and Low speed traffic capture
- Adjustable buffer size from 0.1 MB to 128 MB
- Versatile triggering: bit-wise value and mask data patterns up to sixteen bytes wide for Setup transactions and data packets
- Triggering on multiple error conditions: PID bad, bit stuffing bad, CRC bad, end-of-packet bad, babble, activity loss, frame length violation, time-out or turn-around violation, and data toggle violation
- Transaction sequencer: Allows triggering on a token qualified by a data pattern and/or specific handshake, or can filter transactions.
- Advanced triggering with event counting and sequencing
- Dedicated trigger for recording input and output that is used to interface to external test equipment
- Real-time traffic capture filtering and data packet truncation variable up to 245 bytes

### Display Options

- Uses the CATC Trace graphical display of bus packets, transactions, split transactions, and transfers
- Has a Trace Viewer backward compatible with Chief™, Inspector™, and Detective™ trace files.
- Indicates trigger position by different pre-trigger and post-trigger colors.
- Set markers to assist with navigation and time calculations. Each marker can contain unique comments.
- Hides start-of-frame (SOF) packets and any packet or transaction.
- Search for a specific PID.
- Change bit order for all fields, except Data Length, Time, and Packet # (MSB>LSB or LSB>MSB).
- Detects, and alerts you to, every potential bus error and protocol violation, and their combinations.
- Has high-resolution, accurate time stamping of bus packets and timing measurement and analysis functions.
- Has search and packet hiding capabilities.
- Allows comprehensive device class decoding and user-defined protocol decoding.

Refer to **Readme.txt** on your installation CD for the latest information on features.

# 1.5 Advisor T3

The LeCroy USB Advisor T3™ USB 3.0 Protocol Analyzer is a verification system for USB development and testing. It supports both USB 2.0 and USB 3.0. It can record USB traffic and graphically present the logical transactions and events. It connects to a laptop or desktop PC through its USB port.

**Figure 1.8 Advisor T3**

The system can monitor traffic between USB 2.0 links using standard high-speed compliant cables.

If configured for USB 3.0 testing, the system supports monitoring between SuperSpeed links using USB 3.0 cables.

Please see the **Readme** file on the installation CD for the latest information on PC requirements and supported operating systems.

## 1.5.1 Advisor T3 General Description

The Analyzer connects to a portable or desktop PC through its USB port. The PC configures and controls the Analyzer. The “CATC Trace™” user interface is an industry standard for documenting the performance of high-speed serial protocols.

The USB protocol Analyzer provides traffic capture and analysis. Hardware triggering allows capture of real-time events. Hardware filtering allows filtering different packet types in or out of the recording. Filtering also allows you to preserve recording memory, for extended recording time.

The trace viewer application displays recorded data in colored graphics. The application has advanced search and viewing capabilities that allow you to quickly locate specific data, errors, and other conditions.

The system functions with any personal computer having the Microsoft® Windows® XP, Windows Vista™ 32, Windows Vista 64, or Windows 7 (32 or 64) operating system and a functional USB interface.

The system provides on-the-fly detection of, and triggering on, such events as Tokens and Errors. Whether recording manually or with a specified trigger condition, the system continuously records the link data, in a wrap-around fashion, until manually stopped or until the system detects the Trigger Event and records the specified post-trigger amount of link data.

Upon detection of a triggering event, the Analyzer continues to record data up to a point specified by you. You can individually enable or disable real-time event detection to allow triggering on events as they happen, including predefined exception or error conditions and user-defined sets of trigger events. An externally supplied signal can trigger the Analyzer.

You can use search functions to investigate particular events. In addition to immediate analysis, you can print any part of the data. You can save the data on disk for later viewing. You can generate timing information and data analysis reports.

Please refer to the *Universal Serial Bus Specification* for details on the protocol. The USB specification is available from the USB Implementers Forum (USB-IF) at:

USB Implementers Forum
1730 SW Skyline Blvd.
Suite 203
Portland, OR 97221

Tel: +1/503.296.9892
Fax: +1/503.297.1090
Web: http://www.usb.org/

## 1.5.2 Advisor T3 Features

### General

- Fully complies with USB specification revisions.
- Has field-upgradeable firmware.
- Supports all USB speeds (5 GB/s, 480 MB/s, 12 MB/s, and 1.5 MB/s).
- Displays bus traffic using color and graphics in the CATC Trace interface.
- Has free non-recording, view-only Trace Viewer software.
- Comes with online manual.
- Self-diagnoses at power on.
- Has a 36-month warranty and hot-line customer support.
- Allows remote control of USB analyzers in a network.

### Flexible 3.0 Calibration

Each link can be calibrated with respect to received equalization and gain.

### Physical Components

- Desktop or portable Microsoft Windows XP, Windows Vista 32, Windows Vista 64, or Windows 7 (32 or 64) computer with USB capability
- Plug-and-Play USB installation
- 2 GB of physical data-recording memory
- USB 2.0 Hi-Speed connection to desktop or portable host PC
- DC power supply
- Expansion port for optional External Trigger In/Out cable, as well as multi-box synchronized recording
- USB 3.0 connectors for SuperSpeed capture and generation

## Recording Options

- Versatile triggering: bit-wise value and mask data patterns up to sixteen bytes wide for Setup transactions and data packets
- Triggering on new High-speed PIDs and split transaction special tokens (ERR, SPLIT, PING, NYET, DATA2, and MDATA) (2.0)
- CATC Trace display and enumeration of High-Speed Micro Frames (2.0)
- Three forms of triggering: Snapshot, Manual, and Event
- Transaction sequencer: Allows triggering on a token qualified by a data pattern and/or specific handshake, or can filter transactions (for example, NAK'd transactions) (2.0)
- Advanced triggering with event counting and sequencing
- Dedicated trigger for recording input and output used to interface to external test equipment
- Triggering on multiple error conditions: PID bad, bit stuffing bad, CRC bad, end-of-packet bad, babble, activity loss, frame length violation, time-out or turn-around violation, data toggle violation, Token, Bus Conditions, Data Length, and excessive empty frames (2.0)
- Real-time traffic capture filtering and data packet truncation variable up to 256 bytes (2.0)
- Adjustable buffer size from 0.4 MB to 2 GB
- Idle filtering (3.0)

## Display Options

- Uses the CATC Trace graphical display of bus packets, transactions, split transactions, and transfers.
- Groups numerous packets and transactions under a single transfer while quickly decoding all essential information.
- Decodes split transactions upstream and downstream of a transaction translator with a special hierarchical view.
- Has reports summarizing key statistics and conditions of interest, with the ability to jump to the selected item in the trace display.
- Has a Trace Viewer backward compatible with USB Advisor™, USB Chief™, USB Inspector™, and USB Detective™ trace files, which are converted upon loading.
- Indicates trigger position by different pre-trigger and post-trigger colors.
- Sets markers to assist with navigation and time calculations.
- Hides start-of-frame (SOF) packets and any packet or transaction from a device address and endpoint.
- Searches for a specific PID.
- Detects, and alerts you to, every potential bus error and protocol violation, and their combinations.
- Has high-resolution, accurate time stamping of bus packets and timing measurement and analysis functions.
- Has search and packet hiding capabilities.
- Allows comprehensive device class decoding and user-defined protocol decoding.
- Has a Data View (2.0 and 3.0).
- Uses Link Tracker to view symbols of traffic (3.0).
- Has a Spec View to show packets in the same format as the USB 3.0 specification (3.0).
- Uses Quick Timing Markers to immediately show time deltas and bandwidth use.

# 1.6 USB*Mobile* T2

The LeCroy USB*Mobile* T2™ is a portable hardware-based USB 2.0 protocol analyzer that debugs, tests, and verifies low, full, and high-speed USB devices. The USBMobile T2 fits into a single PCMCIA slot in a laptop computer. The USBMobile T2 uses the standard CATC Trace display.

**Figure 1.9 USB*Mobile* T2**

The USB*Mobile* T2 is available in three configurations that can be upgraded to add the advanced functionality shown:

| | USB*Mobile* PDQ | USB*Mobile* Standard | USB*Mobile* Advanced |
|---|---|---|---|
| USB 2.0 / USB 1.1 / OTG | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ |
| Recording Memory | 64MB | 64MB | 64MB |
| View Packet Layer / Bus Conditions | □ | ✓ | ✓ |
| View Transaction Layer | □ | ✓ | ✓ |
| View Transfer / Application Layers | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ |
| Triggering PID Type, PID Address | □ | ✓ | ✓ |
| Triggering Payload & Dev. Requests | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ |
| Max Sequential Events per Triggering Sequence | 1 | 2 | 4 |
| Max Number of Triggering Sequences | 1 | 1 | 2 |
| Filter PIDs / Truncate Data payload | □ | ✓ | ✓ |
| | □ Upgradeable via software | | |

## 1.6.1 Features

| Features | Benefits |
|---|---|
| Low-power, 16-bit, Type II PC Card Design | Personal analyzer<br>Portable operation with any notebook PC |
| CATC Trace software display | Speeds interpretation and debug of USB traffic. Compatible with LeCroy USB*Mobile*™, Inspector™, Chief™, Advisor™, and USB*Tracer*/*Trainer*™. |
| OTG (On-The-Go) Support | Records and analyzes HNP and SRP, including capture of VBus pulses |
| Trace Navigator | Defines areas of interest and “shrinks” the viewable Trace to areas of most importance. |
| Advanced Triggering | Isolates important traffic, specific errors, or data patterns. |
| Hardware Filtering | Removes non-essential fields from the trace for faster analysis. |
| Intelligent Reporting | Quickly identifies and tracks error rates and abnormal bus or timing conditions. |
| Sophisticated Viewing | Displays Packet, Transaction, and Transfer layers of the USB protocol. |
| Downloadable Trace Viewer Software | Shares and annotates trace recordings within a development team. |

### General

- Fully complies with USB 2.0 specification.
- Supports Link Power Management extension to USB 2.0 specification.
- Supports Full-Speed, Low-Speed, and Hi-Speed USB.
- Displays bus traffic using color and graphics in the “CATC Trace™” interface.
- Has free non-recording, view-only Trace Viewer software.
- Has a 12-month warranty and hot-line customer support.

### Physical Components

- PC-Card form: Personal analyzer. Low-power, portable operation with any notebook PC.
- Two Mini AB USB ports and cables: Designed to reduce bulk and maintain portability and compact size.
- 64 MB of physical data-recording memory

## Recording Options

- Versatile triggering: bit-wise value and mask data patterns up to sixteen bytes wide for Setup transactions and data packets
- Triggering on new High-Speed PIDs and split transaction special tokens (ERR, SPLIT, PING, NYET, DATA2, and MDATA)
- CATC Trace display and enumeration of High-Speed Micro Frames
- Three forms of triggering: Snapshot, Manual, and Event
- Transaction sequencer: Allows triggering on a token qualified by a data pattern and/or specific handshake, or can filter transactions (such as NAK'd transactions)
- Advanced triggering with event counting and sequencing
- Triggering on multiple error conditions: PID bad, bit stuffing bad, CRC bad, end-of-packet bad, babble, activity loss, frame length violation, time-out or turn-around violation, data toggle violation, Token, Bus Conditions, Data Length, and excessive empty frames
- Real-time traffic capture filtering and data packet truncation variable up to 256 bytes
- Adjustable buffer size from 0.4 MB to 64 MB

## Display Options

- Uses the CATC Trace graphical display of bus packets, transactions, split transactions, and transfers.
- Groups numerous packets and transactions under a single transfer while quickly decoding all essential information.
- Decodes split transactions upstream and downstream of a transaction translator with a special hierarchical view.
- Has reports summarizing key statistics and conditions of interest, with the ability to jump to the selected item in the trace display.
- Records flexible input signaling with the CATC Trace.
- Has a Trace Viewer backward compatible with USB*Tracer*™, USB*Mobile*™, Advisor™, Chief™, Inspector™, and Detective™ trace files.
- Indicates trigger position by different pre-trigger and post-trigger colors.
- Sets markers to assist with navigation and time calculations.
- Hides start-of-frame (SOF) packets and any packet or transaction.
- Searches for a specific PID.
- Detects, and alerts the user to, every potential bus error and protocol violation, and their combinations.
- Has high-resolution, accurate time stamping of bus packets and timing measurement and analysis functions.
- Has search and packet hiding capabilities.
- Allows comprehensive device class decoding and user-defined protocol decoding.

# 1.7 USB*Mobile* HS

The LeCroy USB*Mobile* HS™ USB Hi-Speed Analyzer is a portable, PC Card based, bus and protocol analyzer that accurately and efficiently debugs, tests, and verifies Low, Full, and Hi-Speed USB semiconductors, devices, software and systems.

**Figure 1.10 USB*Mobile* HS**

USB*Mobile* HS is the previous generation of PCMCIA USB Analyzer. Its features are identical to USB*Mobile* T2, with the exception that it allows for up to seven sequential states in its triggering and filtering capabilities.

# Chapter 2: General Description

## 2.1 Voyager M3 System Components/Packing List

These system components are on the packing list:

- Voyager M3 Analyzer Exerciser System
- AC power cable
- USB cables (five)
- Installation CD-ROM, including documentation
- Micro to Standard USB adapter
- Mini to Standard USB adapter
- Quick Start Guide

Product documentation is on the Installation CD-ROM.

## 2.2 Voyager M3 PC Requirements

Please refer to the **USBProtocolSuite_Readme.html** file on the installation CD for the current PC and operating system requirements.

## 2.3 Voyager M3 Analyzer

The Analyzer is shown in the figure.

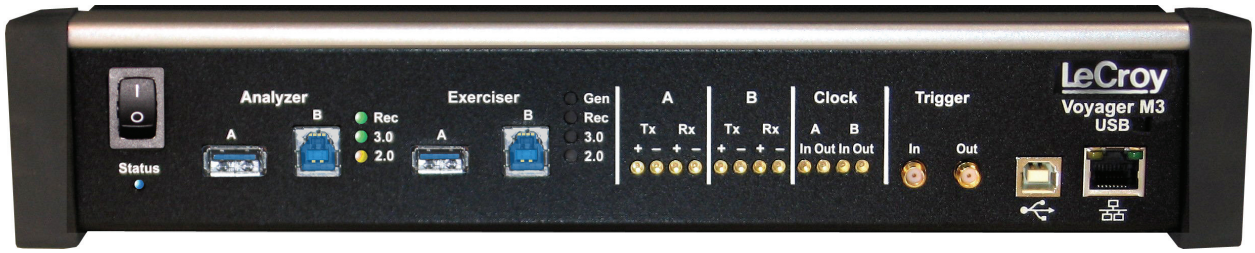



**Figure 2.1 Voyager M3 Analyzer Front**

The Analyzer has the following features:

**Power Switch (0/1)**

**Status LED** (blue if system successfully initializes
red if hardware failure
green while initializing)

**Analyzer Ports A (downstream) and B (upstream)**
**Analyzer LEDs**

**Rec -** Recording
Red if 2.0 recording enabled or 3.0 recording enabled in Analyzer mode

**3.0 -** USB 3.0
**Off**: No traffic or LFPS.
**Solid Yellow**: Only Polling LFPS
**Slow Flashing Yellow**: Low Power States
**Fast Flashing Yellow**: Symbol Traffic, Training (TS1/TS2/TSEQ)
**Solid Green**: Link Traffic (U0) LUP, LDN
**Blinking Green**: TP's and DP's (actual traffic)

**2.0 -** USB 2.0
**Solid Yellow**: FS SOF's, LS EOP's, or control endpoint traffic
**Slow Flashing Yellow**: LS Traffic on endpoints other than 0 (resets activity timer as in 3.0)
**Fast Flashing Yellow**: FS Traffic on endpoints other than 0 (resets activity timer as in 3.0)
**Solid Green**: HS SOF's or control endpoint traffic
**Flashing Green**: HS traffic on endpoints other than 0 (resets activity timer as in 3.0)

**Exerciser Ports A (downstream) and B (upstream)**
**Exerciser LEDs**

**Gen -** Generating
Green if generating enabled

**Rec -** Recording
Red if 3.0 recording enabled when in Exerciser mode

**3.0 -** USB 3.0
**Off**: No traffic or LFPS.
**Solid Yellow**: Only Polling LFPS
**Slow Flashing Yellow**: Low Power States
**Fast Flashing Yellow**: Symbol Traffic, Training (TS1/TS2/TSEQ)
**Solid Green**: Link Traffic (U0) LUP, LDN
**Blinking Green**: TP's and DP's (actual traffic)

**2.0 -** USB 2.0
unused

**Note:** USB 2.0 Link LEDs operate only while USB 2.0 Recording or Real-Time Statistics (RTS) is running.
USB 3.0 LEDs always operate, unless USB 3.0 has been disabled in the Recording Options General Tab.

**A (downstream)** - MMCx plug connectors for interfacing
**B (upstream)** with USB 3.0 signals

**Tx + -** Transmit pair
**Rx + -** Receive pair

**Clock A (downstream)** - MMCx plug connectors for interfacing
**Clock B (upstream)** with external clock source or sink

**In -** Connects to an external reference clock.
**Out -** Provides reference clock output.

**Trigger**

**In** - SMA external trigger input. **Note**: Threshold value is 0.8 V. Maximum value of the external input signal which can be input is 5 V. Minimum value is 0 V.

**Out** - SMA external trigger output.

**USB** - Type B connector for connection to host computer

**ETHERNET** - Gigabit Ethernet connector for connection to host computer

**Note:** The rear has only a power connector.

**Warning**: Do not open the Voyager M3 enclosure. No operator serviceable parts are inside. Refer servicing to LeCroy customer care.

# 2.4 Voyager M3 Specifications

The Analyzer has the following specifications.

## 2.4.1 Power Requirements

90 to 254 VAC, 47 to 63 Hz (universal input), 100 W maximum

## 2.4.2 Environmental Conditions

| | |
|---|---|
| Operating Temperature | 0 to 55 °C (32 to 131 °F) |
| Storage Range | -20 to 80 °C (-4 to 176 °F) |
| Operating Humidity | 10 to 90%, non-condensing |
| Operating Altitude | Up to 6560 feet (2000 meters) |

## 2.4.3 Probing Characteristics

| | |
|---|---|
| Connection | SuperSpeed connectors |
| | USB 3.0 cables |
| | MMCx connectors for USB 3.0 |
| | High Speed USB Connectors |
| | Standard cables |

## 2.4.4 Switches

| | |
|---|---|
| Power | On/off |

## 2.4.5 Recording Memory Size

1 GB or 4 GB for traffic data capture, timing, state and other data.

# 2.5 USBTracer/Trainer System Components

- One stand-alone USB*Tracer*™ Analyzer module
- Five USB cables
- USB*Tracer* software program installation diskettes
- Product documentation

# 2.6 USBTracer/Trainer Analyzer PC Requirements

Please refer to the **USBProtocolSuite_Readme.html** file on the installation CD for the most current PC and operating system requirements.

# 2.7 The Installed USB*Tracer* Unit

USB*Tracer* is a module that inserts into the left slot on the LeCroy Universal Protocol Analyzer System (UPAS). Once installed, the USB*Tracer* Analyzer activates the user-accessible controls and LEDs on the front and rear panels of the UPAS.

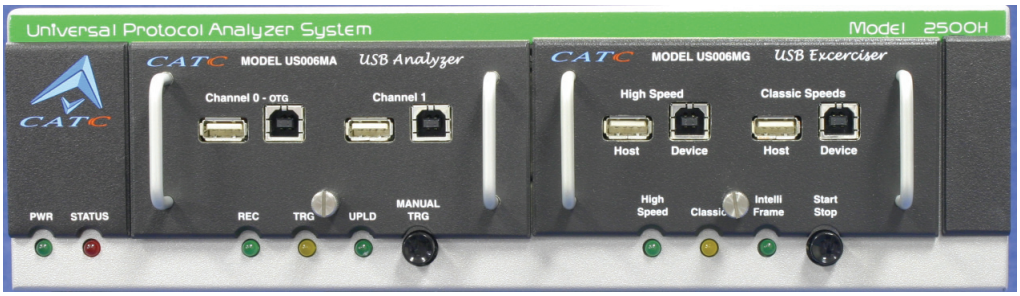



**Figure 2.2 USB*Tracer* Front Panel**

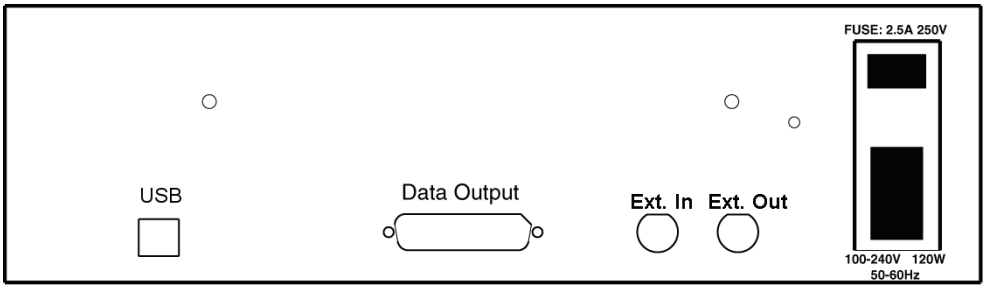



**Figure 2.3 USB*Tracer* Rear Panel**

## 2.7.1 LED and Button Descriptions

This section describes the LEDs, buttons, and connectors on the module and UPAS.

### LEDs on the Far Left Side of the UPAS

- Green **PWR** (Power) indicator LED for UPAS: Lights when unit power is switched on.
- Red **Status** indicator LED for UPAS: Lights during boot up.

### LEDs and Button on the UPAS under the Left Module Slot

The LEDs and button on the UPAS enclosure under the left module slot function in conjunction with the USB*Tracer* module inserted above it:

- Green **REC** (Recording) LED: Lights when the unit is recording.
- Orange **TRG** (Triggered) LED: Lights when the unit triggers on an event.
- Green **UPLD** (Upload): Lights when unit is uploading data to PC.
- **Manual Trigger** push-button: Allows a manual Trace capture.

### LEDs and Button on the UPAS under the Right Module Slot

The LEDs and button under the right module slot are reserved for LeCroy generator modules such as the USB*Trainer* USB Traffic Generator (described in Traffic Generation (2.0) on page 277):

- Green **HS**: Illuminates when Hi-Speed is being generated.
- Orange **Classic:** Illuminates when Full or Low Speed is being generated. Classic also illuminates during power-on testing and is turned off at the end of the power-on cycle. If the LED blinks at the end of this cycle, the hardware is faulty.
- Green **Intelliframe**: Illuminates when Intelliframe traffic is being generated using Intelliframe mode, an intelligent adaptive traffic mode. If off, the generation is in Bitstream mode. See “Traffic Generation Modes: Bitstream vs. Intelliframe” on page 291 for more information.
- **Start/Stop*:*** Push-button allows manual Trace capture.

## 2.7.2 Back Panel

- Wide range **AC connector** module:
  - Power socket
  - Power on/off switch
  - Enclosed 5x20 mm, 2.0 A, 250 V fast-acting glass fuse

**Warning!** For continued protection against fire, replace fuse only with the type and rating specified above.

- **Ext. In**: Threshold value is between 0.8 V and 2 V, because it uses TTL. Maximum value of the external input signal which can be input is 5 V. Minimum value is 0 V.
- **Ext. Out**: Uses TTL.
- **USB** type B host computer connector
- **Data In/Out** DB-25 (25-pin) external interface connector

**Warning!** Do not open the UPAS enclosure. There are no operator serviceable parts inside. Refer servicing to LeCroy.

# 2.8 USB*Tracer* System Setup

The USB*Tracer* module inserts into the Universal Protocol Analyzer System. The UPAS connects to a desktop or laptop PC through a USB port. The PC controls the UPAS and Analyzer.

To set up the system hardware:

- Insert the USB*Tracer* module into the UPAS.
- Connect the Analyzer to an AC power source.
- Connect to the analyzing PC with USB.
- Connect USB cable to the device under test.

# 2.9 USBTracer/Trainer Specifications

USBT*racer* is a hardware module that installs into the Universal Protocol Analyzer System. The following specifications describe a combined USBT*racer*/Universal Protocol Analyzer System.

## 2.9.1 Package

| | |
|---|---|
| UPAS | 12.2 x 12.2 x 3.5 inches<br>(31.1 x 31.1 x 8.9 cm) |
| USB*Tracer* Plug-in | 4.5 x 6.7 x 1.3 inches<br>(11.3 x 17.0 x 3.2 cm) |

## 2.9.2 Connectors

| | |
|---|---|
| UPAS | AC power connection<br>External trigger connection<br>Host connection (USB, type B) |

## 2.9.3 Weight

| | |
|---|---|
| UPAS | 7.5 lb. (3.4 kg) |
| USB*Tracer* Plug-in | 1.0 lb. (0.5 kg) |

## 2.9.4 Power Requirements

90 to 254 VAC, 47 to 63 Hz (universal input), 100 W maximum

## 2.9.5 Environmental Conditions

| | |
|---|---|
| Operating Temperature | 0 to 55 °C (32 to 131 °F) |
| Storage Range | -20 to 80 °C (-4 to 176 °F) |
| Operating Humidity | 10 to 90%, non-condensing |
| Operating Altitude | Up to 6560 feet (2000 meters) |

## 2.9.6 Probing Characteristics

| | |
|---|---|
| Connection | High Speed USB Connectors<br>Standard cables |

## 2.9.7 Switches

| | |
|---|---|
| Power | On/off |
| Manual Trigger | When pressed forces a trigger event |

## 2.9.8 Indicators (LEDs)

### UPAS

| | |
|---|---|
| Power (PWR): | Illuminated when the Analyzer is powered on. |
| Status (STATUS): | Illuminated solid during self test, blinking during failure, off when the Analyzer is functioning properly. |
| Recording (REC): | Illuminated when the Analyzer is actively recording traffic data. |
| Triggered (TRG): | Illuminated during power-on testing and when the Analyzer has detected a valid trigger condition. |
| Uploading (UPLD): | Illuminated when the Analyzer is uploading its recording memory to the Host PC to display the CATC Trace. |

## 2.9.9 Recording Memory Size

512 MB DRAM for traffic data capture, timing, state, and other data.

### Power Cord Set

Cord Manufacturer and Models:

- 180-0005-00 Quail 5000.079 UL, CSA
- 180-0013-00 Quail 8500.098 VDE, KEMA, CEBERC, NEMDO, DEMDO, SETI, OVE, SEV
- 180-0014-00 Quail 9650.098 ASTA

### USB*Tracer* on the UPAS 2500H Platform

UPAS 2500H USB*Tracer* is a USB 2.0 Certified Hi-Speed Device. To upload at Hi-Speed, you must have a USB 2.0 Certified Host Controller and be running the Microsoft Windows XP, Windows Vista 32, or Windows Vista 64 operating system.

The UPAS 2500H ships in one of two configurations: Classic and Hi-Speed. The Classic version can trace and generate traffic at Low and Full Speeds. The Hi-Speed version can trace and generate traffic at All speeds: Low, Full, and Hi.

The Classic model may be upgraded to a Hi-Speed model by purchasing a License Key from LeCroy. Contact your LeCroy representative for more information.

**Note:** The UPAS 2500 and UPAS 2500H products include internal 1.1 and 2.0 Hubs. You might see the drivers for these generic hubs being installed upon initial plug-in.

# 2.10 USBTracer/Trainer External Interface Breakout Board

The External Interface Breakout Board is an accessory that allows convenient access to several potentially useful standard LV TTL output and input signals. It also offers a simple way to connect logic analyzers or other tools to the USB*Tracer* Analyzer. Six ground pins and one 5-volt pin are provided.

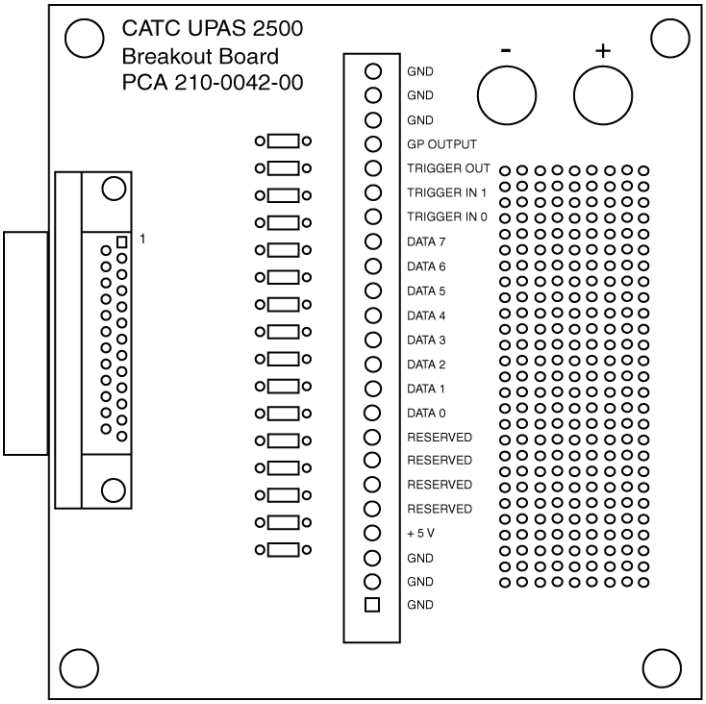



**Figure 2.4 External Interface Breakout Board**

The Breakout Board connects by cable to the **Data In/Out** connector located on the rear of the Analyzer box. Each signaling pin is isolated by a 100 Ω series resistor and a buffer inside the Analyzer box.

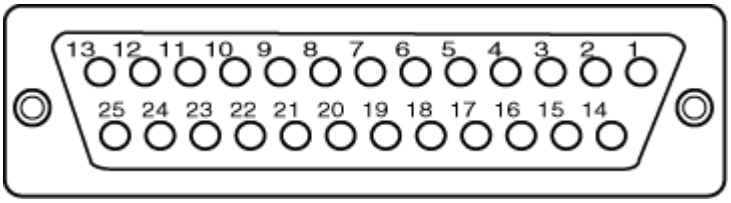



**Figure 2.5 Data In/Out Connector (on cable)**

## 2.10.1 Pin-Outs for the Data In/Out Connector

Table 1 lists the pin-out and signal descriptions for the **Data In/Out** connector on a cable that connects to the Breakout Board.

**Table 1 Data In/Out Connector – Pin-Out**

| Pin | Signal Name | Signal Description |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | RSV | Reserved |
| 2 | GND | Ground |
| 3 | GP OUT | General Purpose Output |
| 4 | TRG IN 1 | Trigger In 1 |
| 5 | GND | Ground |
| 6 | DATA 6 | Data 6 |
| 7 | DATA 4 | Data 4 |
| 8 | DATA 3 | Data 3 |
| 9 | DATA 1 | Data 1 |
| 10 | GND | Ground |
| 11 | RSV | Reserved |
| 12 | RSV | Reserved |
| 13 | +5V | +5 Volts, 250 mA DC Source |
| 14 | RSV | Reserved |
| 15 | GND | Ground |
| 16 | TRG OUT | Trigger Out |
| 17 | TRG IN 0 | Trigger In 0 |
| 18 | DATA 7 | Data 7 |
| 19 | DATA 5 | Data 5 |
| 20 | GND | Ground |

**Note:** (*) Pins 4 and 17 have the same function. They allow external signals to be used to cause triggering or recording. Pins 3 and 16 are used to transmit output signals.

## 2.10.2 Prototype Rework Area

The Breakout Board contains a prototype rework area for making custom circuits for rapid development. The area consists of plated-through holes, 20 columns wide by 27 rows long. The top row of holes connects to GND, and the bottom row connects to +5 V. The remaining holes are not connected. Use the rework area to insert custom components and wire-wrap their respective signal, power, and ground pins.

# 2.11 Advisor

The LeCroy USB Advisor™ USB 2.0 Protocol Analyzer is a stand-alone unit controlled and configured by a portable or desktop PC connected through its USB port.

The Advisor uses hardware triggering to capture real-time events and hardware filtering to preserve memory and find data. Recorded data uploads to the attached PC and displays on the CATC Trace graphical user interface as color-coded packets that can be searched for specific data, errors, or other conditions.

The Analyzer works with any Microsoft® Windows® XP, Windows Vista™ 32, or Windows Vista 64 desktop or portable PC.

The Analyzer supports the Universal Serial Bus, version 2.0. Please refer to the *Universal Serial Bus Specification, version 2.0* for details on the protocol. The USB specification is available from the USB Implementers Forum (USB-IF) at:

USB Implementers Forum
1730 SW Skyline Blvd. Suite 203
Portland, OR 97221

Tel: +1/503.296.9892
Fax: +1/503.297.1090
Web: http://www.usb.org/

# 2.12 Advisor PC Requirements

Please refer to the **USBProtocolSuite_Readme.html** file on the installation CD for the most current PC and operating system requirements.

# 2.13 Advisor System Components/Packing List

The LeCroy Advisor Analyzer package includes the following items:

- One stand-alone LeCroy USB Advisor™ Analyzer module
- One AC power cord with a plug appropriate to your location
- One External Interface Breakout Board with a 9-pin cable
- Five USB cables: four 3-foot (1-meter) cables and one 6-foot (2-meter) cable
- LeCroy Advisor software program installation CD
- Product documentation, including online help

# 2.14 Advisor Stand-Alone Unit

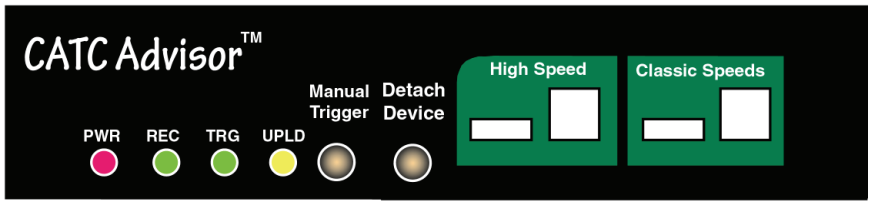



**Figure 2.6 Advisor Front Panel**

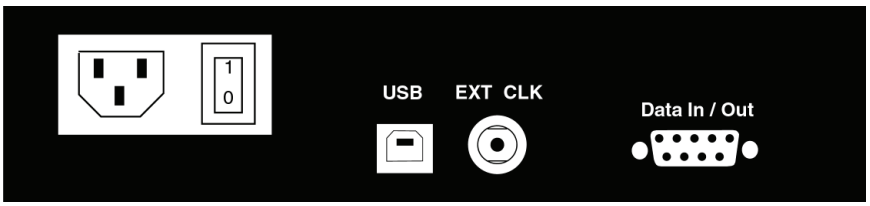



**Figure 2.7 Advisor Rear Panel**

The Analyzer has several user-accessible controls on its front and rear panels.

- **Red PWR (power) indicator LED**: Illuminates when the unit power is switched on.
- **Green REC (recording) LED**: Illuminates when the unit is recording.
- **Yellow TRG (triggered) LED**: Illuminates when the unit triggers an event. Also lights during power-on testing and blinks when the hardware is faulty.
- **Green UPLD (upload) LED**: Illuminates when unit is uploading data to host PC.
- **Manual Trigger** push-button (allows a manual Trace capture)
    - After beginning a recording session, press the **Manual Trigger** switch to force a Trigger condition. The session completes when a specified post-trigger amount of bus data is recorded or when you manually stop a recording session.
    - **Detach Device** push-button allows a momentary disconnection of the device from the host on the Classic Speeds port. This is useful when interesting traffic occurs during device enumeration. Use the **Detach Device** switch shortly after starting recording to capture a Trace of the device's enumeration.
- Two USB ports, **High Speed** and **Classic Speed**, each with a type A and a type B connector.
    - **High Speed**: Used to record 480 MB/s High-Speed traffic only
    - **Classic Speeds**: Used to record either 12 MB/s or 1.5 MB/s Classic-Speed traffic

- Wide range AC connector module:
  - Power socket
  - Power on/off switch
  - Enclosed 5x20 mm 2.0A 250 V fast acting glass fuse

**Warning!** For continued protection against fire, replace fuse only with the type and rating specified above.

  - USB type B host computer connector
  - **Data In/Out** DB-9 (9-pin) external interface connector

**Note:** The BNC connector next to the Data In/Out 9-pin DIN connector DOES NOT PROVIDE ANY USER FUNCTIONALITY! It may have the label **EXT CLK**, **AUX,** or **TRIGGER,** depending on when it was manufactured.
Do not use the BNC connector for any purpose!
(The Trigger In and Trigger Out functions are only available through the Breakout Board accessory.)

**Warning!** Do not open the Analyzer enclosure. There are no operator serviceable parts inside. Refer servicing to LeCroy.

# 2.15 Advisor System Setup

The Analyzer functions with any personal computer using the Microsoft® Windows® XP, Windows Vista™ 32, or Windows Vista 64 operating system and equipped with a functional USB interface.

The Analyzer is a stand-alone unit configured and controlled through a personal computer USB port. It can be used with portable computers for field service and maintenance as well as with desktop units in a development environment. To install, connect a cable between the computer's USB port and the Analyzer's USB port.

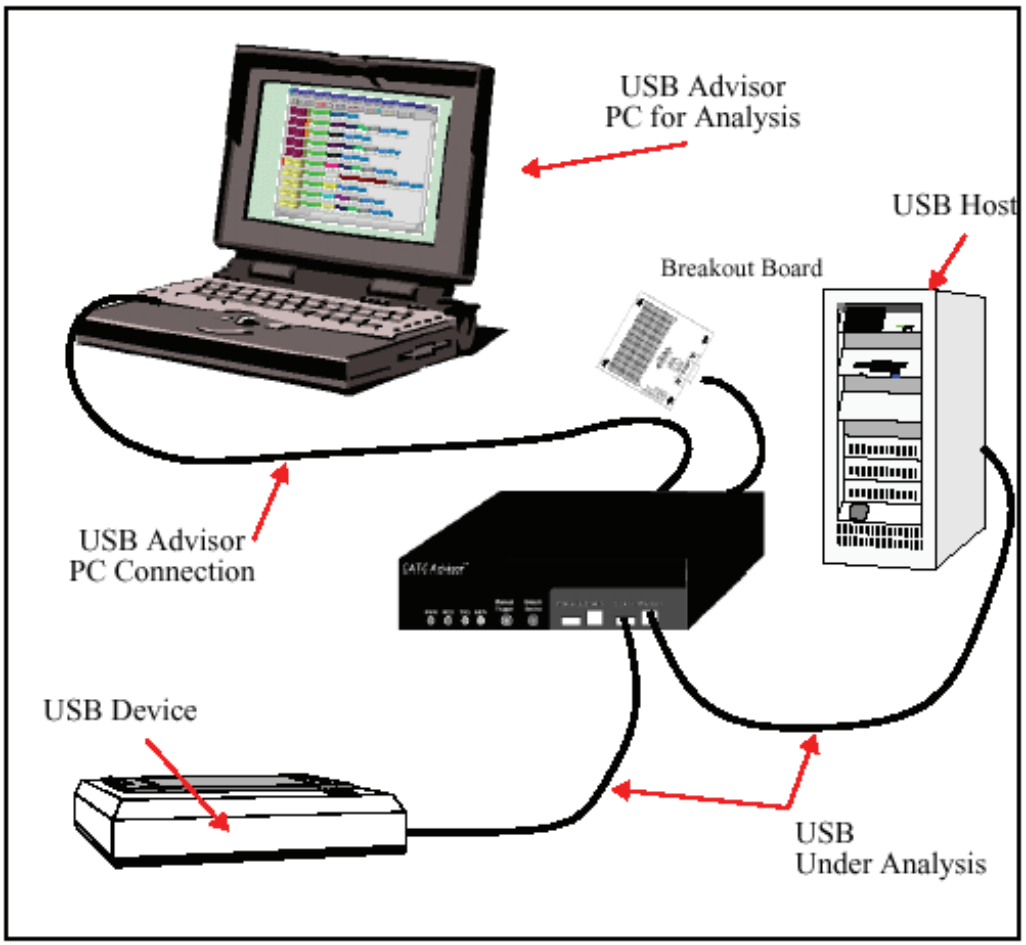



**Figure 2.8 USB Advisor Connection**

# 2.16 Advisor Specifications

## 2.16.1 Package

| | |
|---|---|
| Dimensions | 9.2 x 8.4 x 2.5 inches<br>(23.4 x 21.3 x 6.4 cm) |
| Connectors | AC power connection<br>Trigger IN/OUT input (BNC)<br>Host connection (USB, type B)<br>Data connector (Data In/Out, 9-pin DB) |
| Weight | 2.8 lbs. (1.2 kg) |

## 2.16.2 Power Requirements

90 to 254 V AC, 47 to 63 Hz (universal input), 100 W maximum

## 2.16.3 Environmental Conditions

| | |
|---|---|
| Operating Temperature | 0 to 55°C (32 to 131°F) |
| Storage Range | -20 to 80°C (-4 to 176°F) |
| Operating Humidity | 10 to 90%, non-condensing |
| Operating Altitude | Up to 6560 feet (2000 meters) |

## 2.16.4 Switches

| | |
|---|---|
| Power | on/off |
| Manual Trigger | Forces trigger event. |
| Detach Device | Detaches the device from the classic speed connection. |

## 2.16.5 LEDs

| | |
|---|---|
| Power (PWR) | Illuminated when the Analyzer is powered on |
| Recording (REC) | Illuminated when the Analyzer is actively recording traffic data |
| Triggered (TRG) | Illuminated during power-on testing and when the Analyzer has detected a valid trigger condition |
| Uploading (UPLD) | Illuminated when the Analyzer is uploading its recording memory to the host PC for display |

## 2.16.6 Recording Memory Size

128 megabyte DRAM for traffic data capture, timing, state and other data

# 2.17 Advisor External Interface Breakout Board

The External Interface Breakout Board is an accessory that allows convenient access to several potentially useful standard, fast TTL output and input signals. It also offers a simple way to connect logic Analyzers or other tools to the Analyzer unit. Four ground pins and one 5-volt pin are provided.

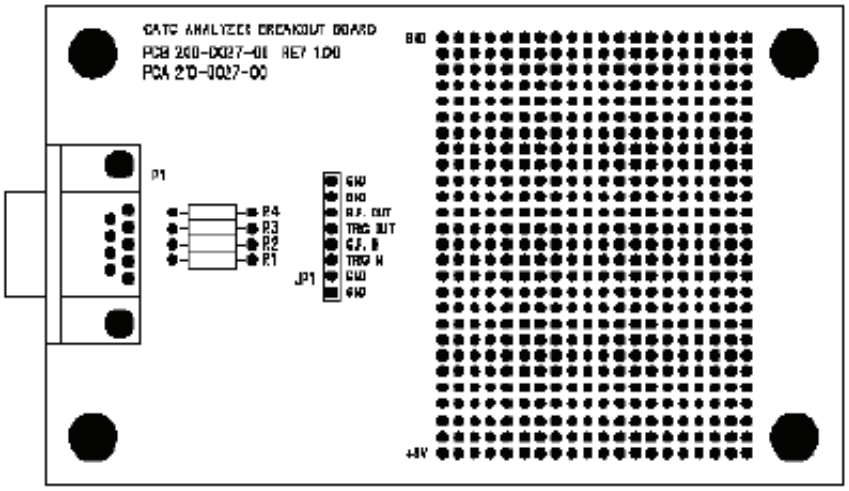



**Figure 2.9 External Interface Breakout Board**

The Breakout Board connects by cable to the **Data In/Out** connector located on the rear of the Analyzer box. Each signaling pin is isolated by a 100 Ω series resistor and a buffer inside the Analyzer box.

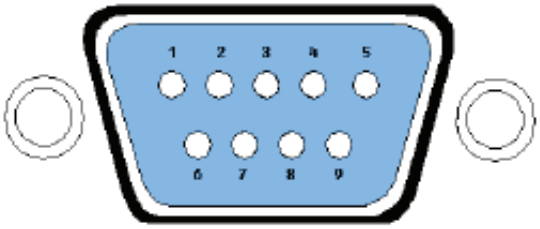



**Figure 2.10 Data In/Out Connector (on cable)**

## 2.17.1 Pin-Outs for the Data In/Out Connector

Table 2 lists the pin-out and signal descriptions for the **Data In/Out** connector on a cable that connects to the Breakout Board.

**Table 2 Data In/Out Connector – Pin-Out**

| Pin | Signal Name | Signal Description |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | +5V | +5 Volts, 250mA DC source |
| 2 | TRG IN | (*) Trigger Input |
| 3 | GP IN | (*) General Purpose Input |
| 4 | TRG OUT | (*) Trigger Output |
| 5 | GP OUT | (*) General Purpose Output |
| 6 | GND | Ground |
| 7 | GND | Ground |
| 8 | GND | Ground |
| 9 | GND | Ground |

**Note:** (*) Pins 2 and 3 have the same function: they allow external signals to be used to cause triggering or recording. Pins 4 and 5 are used to transmit output signals.

## 2.17.2 Prototype Rework Area

The Breakout Board contains a prototype rework area for making custom circuits for rapid development. The area consists of plated-through holes, 20 columns wide by 27 rows long. The top row of holes connects to GND, and the bottom row connects to +5 V. The remaining holes are not connected. Use the rework area to insert custom components and wire-wrap their respective signal, power, and ground pins.

## 2.17.3 PC Connection

Use the **LONGEST (6-foot/2-meter)** of the five USB cables provided to connect the host computer to the Analyzer box.

# 2.18 Advisor T3

The LeCroy USB Advisor T3™ USB 3.0 Protocol Analyzer is a verification system for USB development and testing. It supports both USB 2.0 and USB 3.0. It can record USB traffic and graphically present the logical transactions and events. It connects to a laptop or desktop PC via USB 2.0.

The system can monitor traffic between USB 2.0 links using standard high-speed compliant cables.

If configured for USB 3.0 testing, the system supports monitoring between SuperSpeed links using USB 3.0 cables.

## 2.18.1 Components

The LeCroy Advisor T3 Analyzer package includes the following:

- One LeCroy USB Advisor T3 Analyzer
- DC Power Adaptor
- USB cables (three)
- Installation CD-ROM, including documentation
- Quick Start Guide
- Carrying Case

## 2.18.2 Front Panel

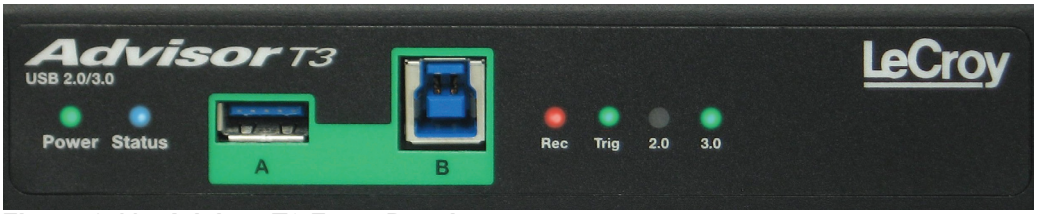



**Figure 2.11 Advisor T3 Front Panel**

The **front** panel has the following indicators and connectors:

**Power LED** (green if on)

**Status LED** (blue if system successfully initializes)
(red while booting. If red for more than a minute, hardware failure.)
(green while initializing)

**Analyzer Port A (downstream)** Connects to Device under test.

**Analyzer Port B (upstream)** Connects to Host.

**Analyzer LEDs**

**Rec-** Recording (red if recording enabled)
**Trig**- Trigger (green if triggering)
**2.0 -** USB 2.0 (yellow for Low and Full Speed)
(green for Hi Speed)
**3.0 -** USB 3.0 (green if link is up; flashes green while data transfers;
yellow if polling)

## 2.18.3 Rear Panel

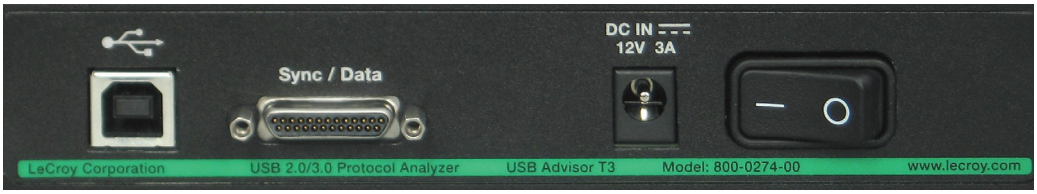



**Figure 2.12 Advisor T3 Rear Panel**

The **rear** panel has the following indicators and connectors:

| | |
|---|---|
| **USB** | Type B connector for connection to host computer |
| **Sync/Data**: | Micro DB-25 (25-pin) external interface connector (cable sold separately) |
| **Power Connector** | 12V, 3A DC |

**Power Switch** (0/1)

Do not open the enclosure. No operator serviceable parts are inside. Refer servicing to LeCroy customer care.

## 2.18.4 Advisor T3 System Setup

Advisor T3 is configured and controlled through a personal computer USB port.

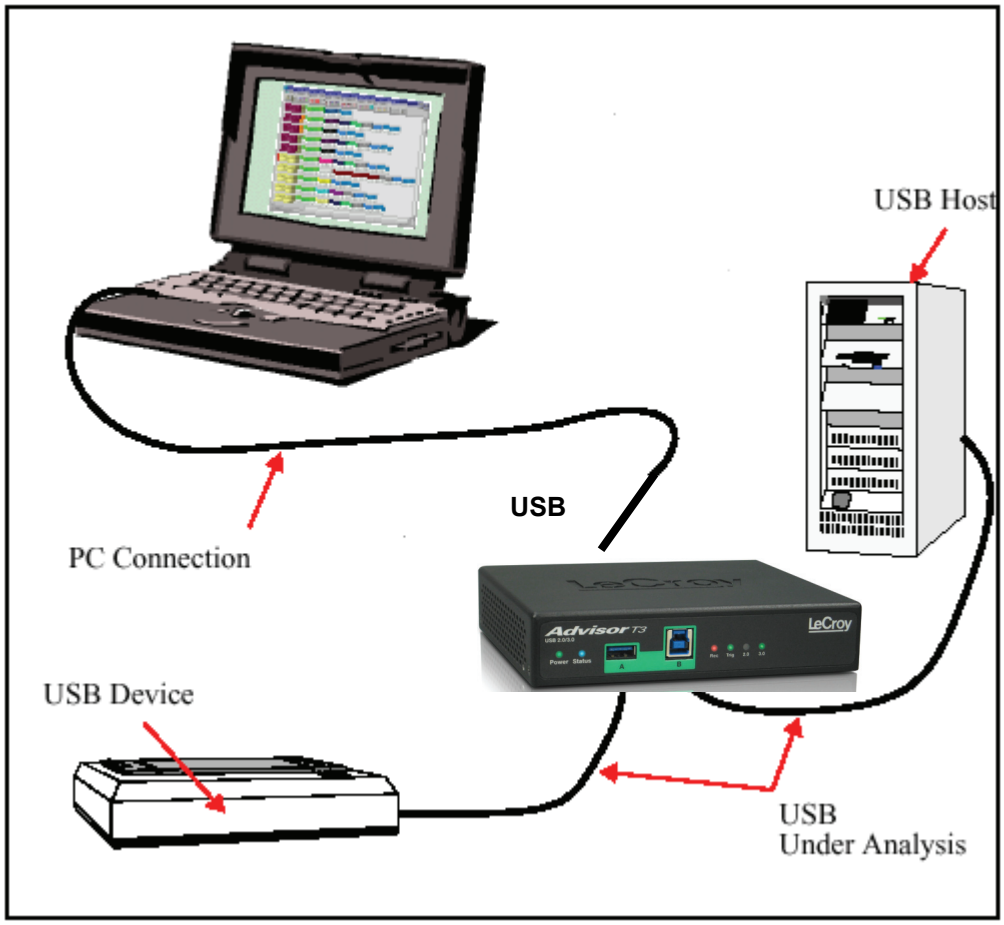



**Figure 2.13 Advisor T3 Setup**

# 2.19 USB*Mobile* T2 and USB*Mobile* HS

USB*Mobile* T2 (and USB*Mobile* HS) components are:

- One LeCroy USB*Mobile* T2 Analyzer (or USB*Mobile* HS Analyzer)
- One 1-meter **A-B** cable (standard **A** plug to mini **B** plug)
- One 1-meter **A-B** cable (mini **A** plug to mini **B** plug)
- One 15-centimeter On-the-Go (OTG) adaptor (standard **A** receptacle to mini **A** plug)
- Installation CD
- *USBMobile T2 Quick Start*

**Note**: All USB*Mobile* T2 items also apply to USB*Mobile* HS.

## 2.19.1 Setup

Insert the USB*Mobile* T2 card (or USB*Mobile* HS card) into a **PCMCIA slot** on your host computer.

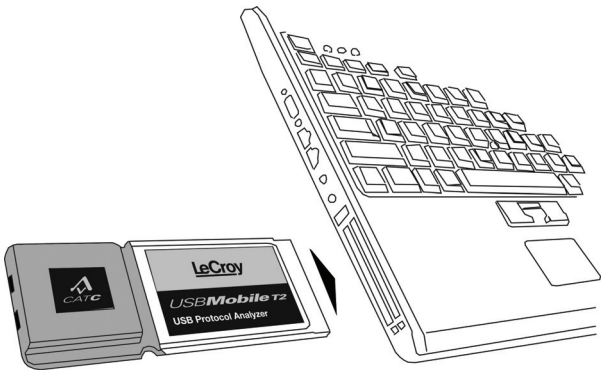



**Figure 2.14 USB*Mobile* T2 Setup**

**Note**: The USB*Mobile* T2 (and USB*Mobile* HS) card does not fit into an ExpressCard slot.

To install components:

**Step 1** Connect a host to one of the mini A-B receptacles (use an adaptor if necessary), and connect your device to the other. It does not matter which receptacle into which you plug.

**Step 2** Insert the CD-ROM.

**Step 3** Click **NEXT** when you see the **Add New Hardware Wizard** window.

**Step 4** Follow the on-screen Plug and Play instructions.

**Step 5** Click **Finish** when you see the message that says “Windows has finished installing the software that your new hardware requires” and the file **USBMobileT2.inf** (or **USBMobileHS.inf**) has been installed on your host PC.

**Note:**

USB*Mobile* T2 (and USB*Mobile* HS) USB is not a hub device. It connects to a USB branch by inserting a non-intrusive, high-impedance tap. Because poor signal quality in the middle of a USB cable, LeCroy recommends using the shortest possible cables, so that total length of both cables together is less than six feet. The USB cables provided with your Analyzer meet this requirement. When longer cables are used, the Analyzer might record incorrect data.

# Chapter 3: Installation

The Analyzer software installs on a Microsoft® Windows® XP, Windows Vista™ 32, Windows Vista 64, or Windows 7 (32 or 64) personal computer system.

**Note:** USB*Mobile* T2 and USB*Mobile* HS are not supported on 64-bit operating systems.

**Important!**
**Please uninstall any versions of USB*Tracer*, USB Advisor, or USB*Mobile* HS software on your computer BEFORE installing USB Protocol Suite. The older software is not compatible with the new software and device drivers. You can load files recorded using the old software into USB Protocol Suite, which will automatically convert them to the new format.**

## 3.1 Installing the Analyzer Software on the PC

**Note:** You must install the software before connecting the Analyzer to the host machine for the first time.

Install the software on the PC administering the Analyzer:

**Step 1** Insert the Installation CD into the CD drive of the PC that administers the Analyzer.

**Step 2** Follow the on-screen installation instructions to install the application on the PC hard disk.

## 3.2 Setting Up the Analyzer - USB Connection

To set up an Analyzer using a USB connection:

**Step 1** Connect the AC power cord to the rear of the Analyzer and to a 100-volt to 240-volt, 50-Hz to 60-Hz, 100-W power outlet.

**Note:** The Analyzer is capable of supporting supply voltages between 100 volts and 240 volts, 50 Hz or 60 Hz, thus supporting all supply voltages around the world.

**Step 2** Connect the USB port to a USB port on the PC using the LONG (6-foot/2-meter) USB 2.0 cable.

**Step 3** Insert the Installation CD.

**Step 4** Turn on the power switch.

**Note:** At power-on, the Analyzer initializes itself in approximately ten seconds and performs an exhaustive self-diagnostic that lasts about five seconds. If the diagnostics fail, call LeCroy Customer Support for assistance.

**Step 5** Click **Next** after you see the Add New Hardware Wizard window.

**Step 6** Follow the Microsoft® Windows® on-screen Plug-and-Play instructions for the automatic installation of the Analyzer as a USB device on your analyzing PC (the required USB files are included on the Installation CD).

**Step 7** Click **Finish** when you see the message that says “Windows has finished installing the software that your new hardware requires” and the driver files have been installed in your PC.

**Step 8** Check Analyzer setup in the “Application Startup” section (See “Application Startup” on page 56).

**Warning!** Do not change from USB to Ethernet, or back, without power cycling the Analyzer.

# 3.3 Setting Up the Analyzer - Ethernet Connection

To set up an Analyzer using an Ethernet connection:

**Step 1** Connect the provided AC power cord to the rear of the Voyager M3 and to a 100-volt to 240-volt, 50-Hz to 60-Hz, 100-W power outlet.

**Note:** The Analyzer is capable of supporting supply voltages between 100 volts and 240 volts, 50 Hz or 60 Hz, thus supporting all supply voltages around the world.

**Step 2** Insert the Installation CD.

**Step 3** To use a DHCP network, make sure that the PC connects to a DHCP network, then connect the Ethernet port on the Analyzer to the DHCP network.

**Note:** If the DHCP network uses a Firewall, you must set the Firewall to allow the Analyzer device on the network.

**Note:** Direct connection from the Ethernet port on the PC to the Ethernet port on the Analyzer is supported in this release. See “IP Settings (Voyager only)” on page 58.

**Step 4** Turn on the power switch.

**Note:** At power-on, the Analyzer initializes itself in approximately ten seconds and performs an exhaustive self-diagnostic that lasts about five seconds. If the diagnostics fail, call LeCroy.

**Step 5** Complete Analyzer setup in the “Application Startup” section (See “Application Startup” on page 56).

**Warning!** Do not change from USB to Ethernet, or back, without power cycling the Analyzer.

# 3.4 Cascading with CATC SYNC Expansion Card

You can cascade two Analyzers, if they both have a CATC SYNC port:

- Voyager requires a CATC Sync Expansion Card for cascading.
- Advisor T3 has a built-in CATC SYNC port and only requires a cross-connect or octopus cable accessory.

After Analyzers are connected, recording will start simultaneously and triggers will occur simultaneously, with synchronized timestamps.

You must select both Analyzers in the Device List dialog
(see “Analyzer Devices” on page 57).

**Important**: When you are NOT doing cascaded recording, you must UNPLUG the cable! If you do not unplug, the electrical signal prevents recording on all Analyzers.

**Note**: In this software version, cascaded recording only works if you use two Voyagers OR two Advisor T3s. You cannot use one of each. Also, you must enable **3.0 Auto-Detect/Termination** mode. Manual control does not work.

## 3.4.1 Removing Expansion Cards

You can remove expansion cards using two tools:

- Standard (flat blade) 3/16” screwdriver
- LeCroy Extraction Tool (part number 230-0160-00)

To remove an expansion card, follow these steps:

**Step 1** Unplug the system from AC power and turn the system so the expansion port is facing you. Note the two retaining screws and the holes for the extraction tool that are located on the panel of the expansion card.

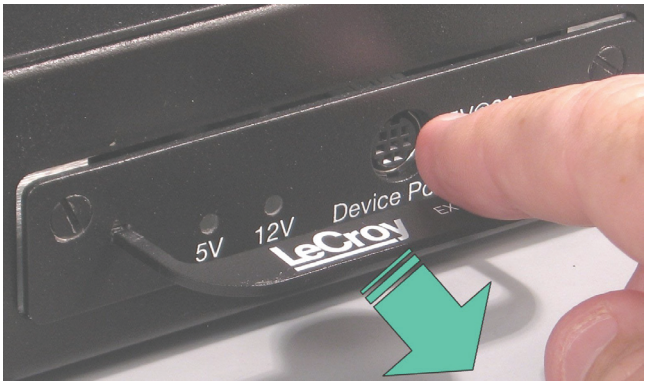
**Note**: The example shows a different expansion card, but the removal method is the same.

**Step 2** Insert the extraction-tool prongs into the holes in the expansion card panel.
**Note:** If the prongs do not slip easily into the holes, use a small nail file or similar device to remove paint from the prongs.

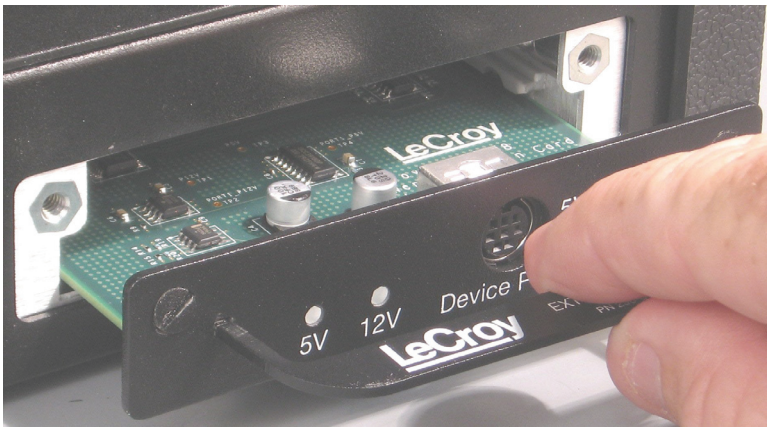
**Step 3** Rotate the extraction tool to a horizontal position to lock the prongs into place and make a handle.

**Step 4** Using the screwdriver, loosen both retaining screws by rotating counter-clockwise approximately two full turns, until feeling slight resistance. **Do not force the retaining screws** after two turns.

**Step 5** Using the extraction tool as a handle, gently wriggle the expansion card forward about 1/8”.

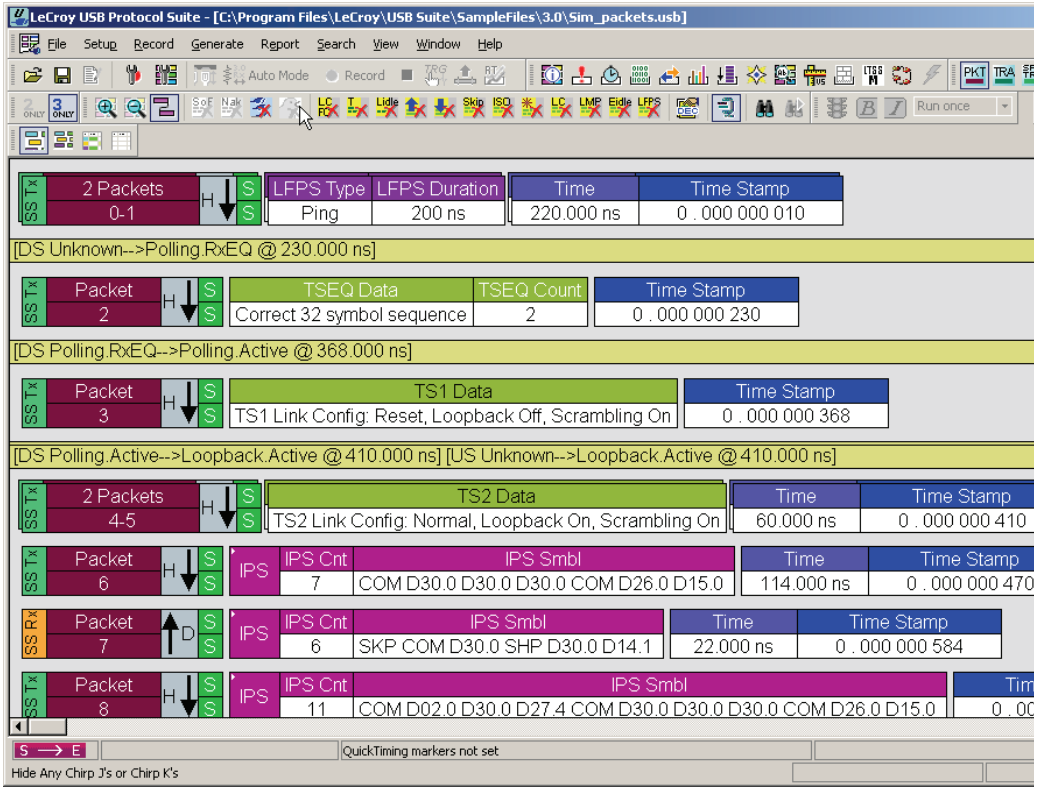



**Step 6** Repeat steps 4 and 5 approximately three times, until the card is free from the retaining screws and you can remove the card from the system.



# 3.5 Application Startup

To start the application, launch the LeCroy USB Protocol Suite program from the Start Menu:
**Start > Programs > LeCroy > USB Protocol Suite > USB Protocol Suite**
to open the main window.




You can use the software with or without the system connected to the host. Without the Analyzer, the program functions as a trace viewer to view, analyze, and print trace files.

## 3.5.1 Confirm Proper Hardware Installation and USB or Ethernet Connection

### USB Connection

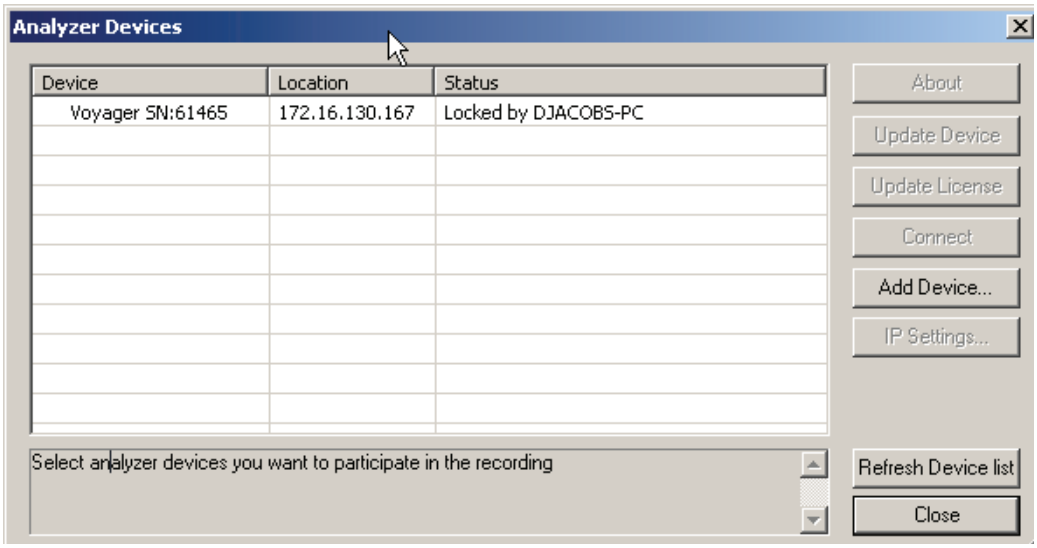
For USB connection, after you open the USB Protocol Suite application, confirm proper installation and USB connection by selecting **About** from the Help menu to view the Software Version, Firmware Version, BusEngine™ Version, and Unit Serial Number in the About window.

### Ethernet Connection (Voyager only)

For Ethernet connection, after you open the USB Protocol Suite application, confirm proper installation and Ethernet connection using the Analyzer Devices dialog and the About window.

## 3.5.2 Analyzer Devices

To show the available Analyzer Devices, select **Setup > All Connected Devices** to display the Analyzer Devices dialog.




The dialog displays the Device, Location, and Status.

You can click:

- **About** to display device information (see “Software, Firmware, and BusEngine Revisions” on page 345).
- **Update Device** (see “Manual Updates to Firmware, BusEngine, and Serdes BusEngine” on page 350)
- **Update License** (see “Updating the Software License” on page 352)
- **Connect** to display the Connection Properties dialog, in which you can set the system to:
  - Automatically connect to the device.
  - Ask to connect to the device.
  - Take no action.
- **Add Device** to display the Add Ethernet Attached Device dialog, in which you can enter an IP Address.
- **IP Settings** to use a DHCP or Static IP address.

To refresh the list of devices, click **Refresh Device List**.

Before starting recording, select the Analyzer you want to use for recording.

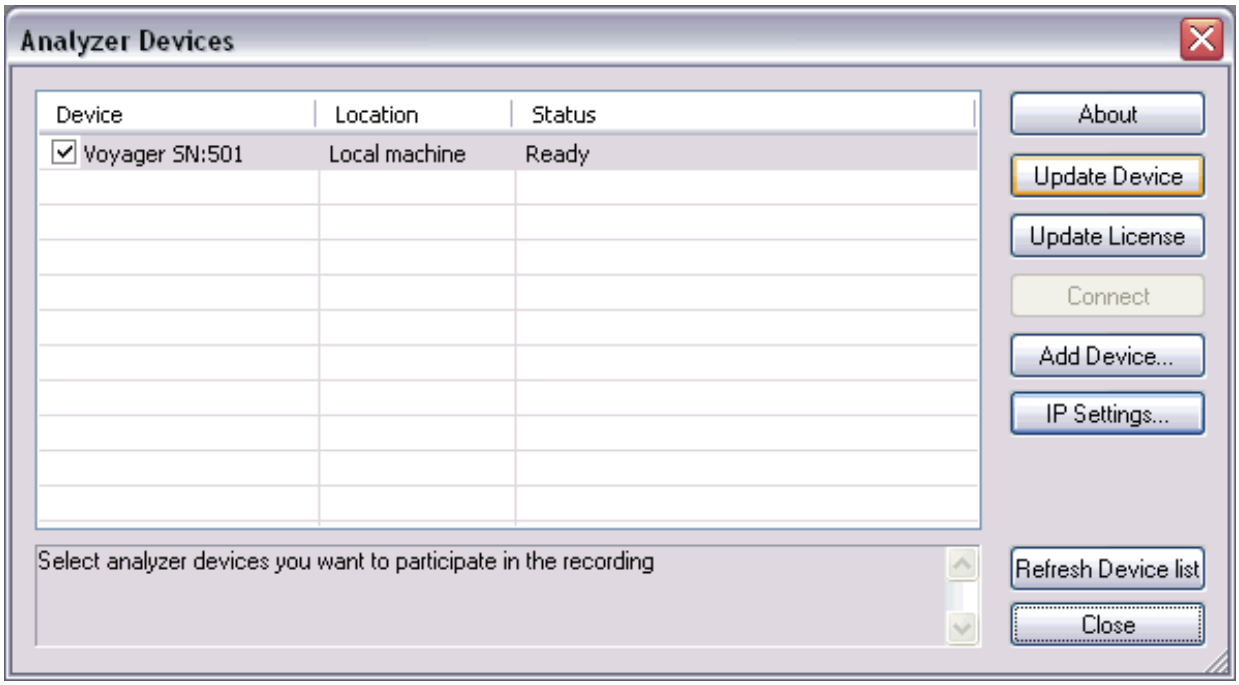
### 3.5.3 IP Settings (Voyager only)

If connected to a device, you can change the IP settings:

- **DHCP** automatically assigns an IP address. DHCP is the default.
- **Static IP** prompts you to enter a specific IP address.

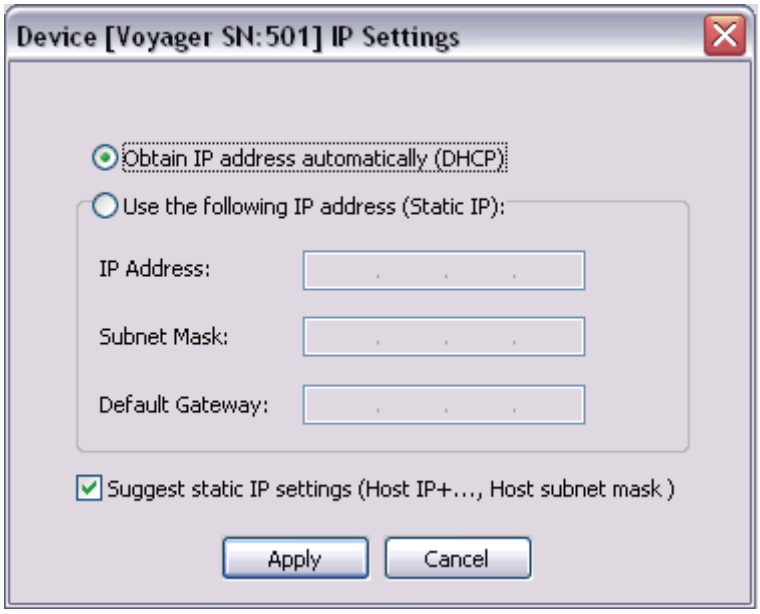
To change from DHCP to Static IP while connected to a device:

**Step 1** Select **Setup > All Connected Devices** from the menu bar to display the Analyzer Devices dialog.




**Note:** If you are not connected to a device, the IP Settings command is grayed out.

**Step 2** Select the device to use in the recording, then click the **IP Settings** button to display the Device IP Settings dialog.




Two radio buttons are available:

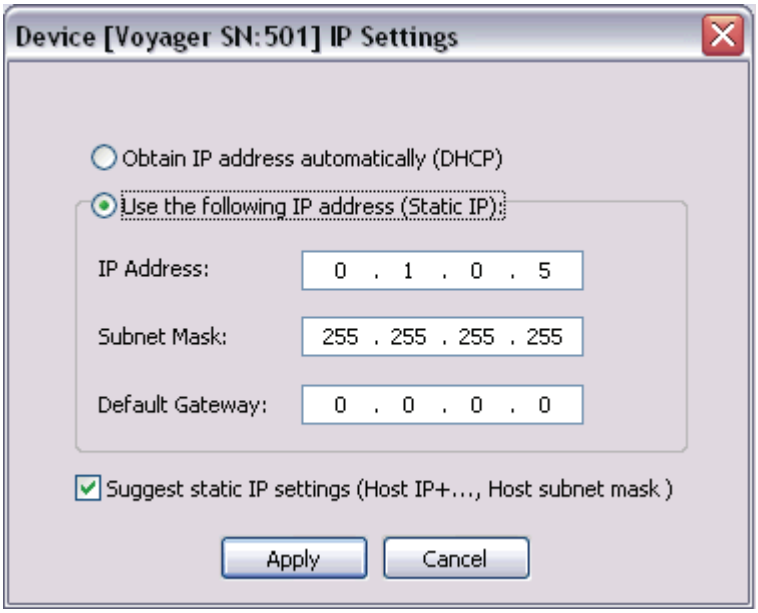
- Obtain IP address automatically (DHCP) [default]
- Use the following IP Address (Static IP)

**Step 3** To change to Static IP, click the **Static IP** radio button.

Enter the **IP Address**.

Enter the **Subnet Mask**.

Enter the **Default Gateway**.


Device [Voyager SN:501] IP Settings
Obtain IP address automatically (DHCP)
Use the following IP address (Static IP):
IP Address:
0 . 1 . 0 . 5
Subnet Mask:
255 . 255 . 255 . 255
Default Gateway:
0 . 0 . 0 . 0
Suggest static IP settings (Host IP+..., Host subnet mask )
Apply
Cancel

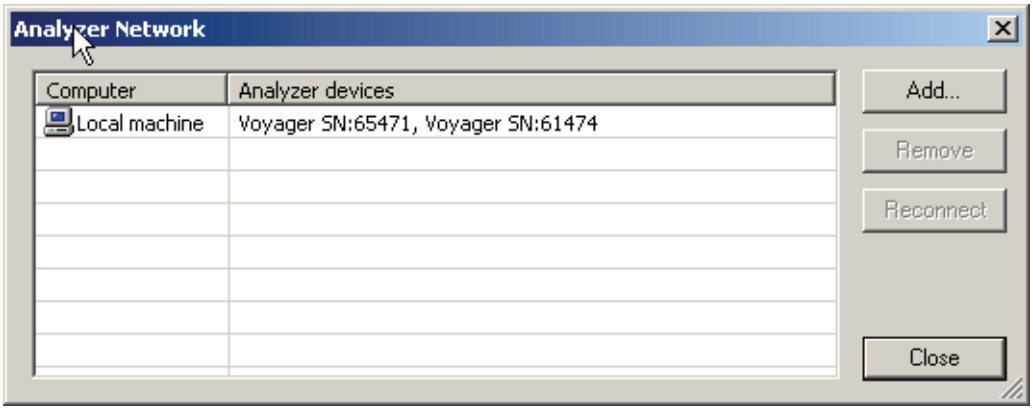
Click **Apply** to get a success message and return to the Analyzer Devices dialog.

**Note:** You can let the system **Suggest static IP settings** (IP address and subnet mask).

**Step 4** Click **Close** to close the dialog and use the device with a Static IP address.

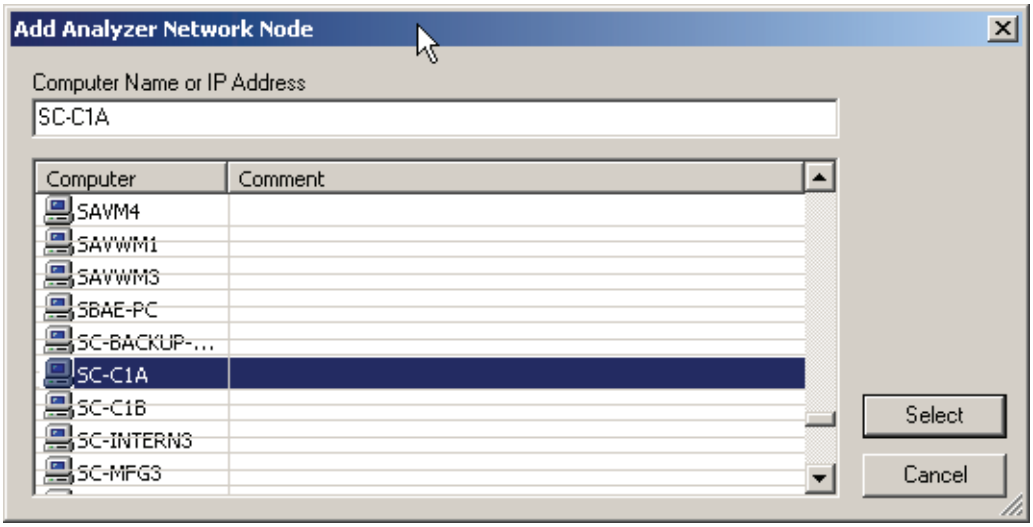
### 3.5.4 Analyzer Network

For Ethernet, to display the computers and analyzers on the local network, select **Setup > Analyzer Network** to display the Analyzer Network dialog.




The dialog displays the computers on the network and the Analyzer devices connected to the computers.

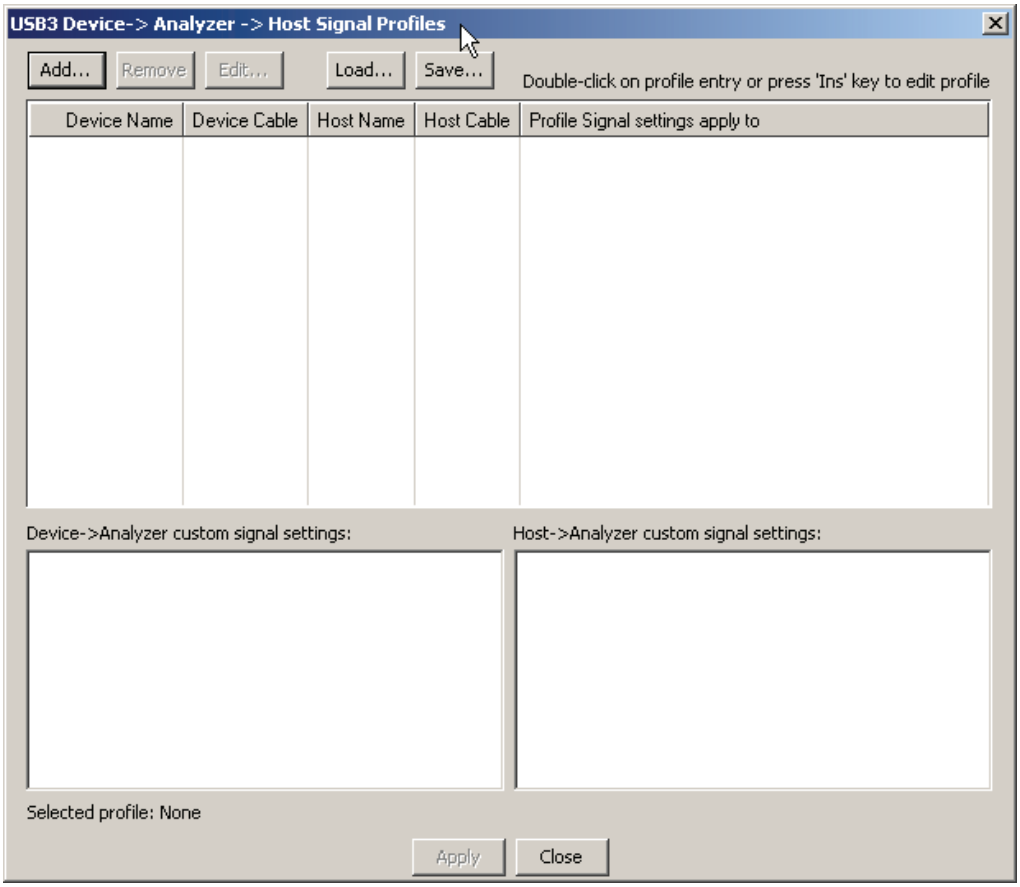
You can click **Add** to display the Add Analyzer Network Node dialog, in which you can select a computer on the network




You can also **Remove** a selected computer or **Reconnect** a selected computer.

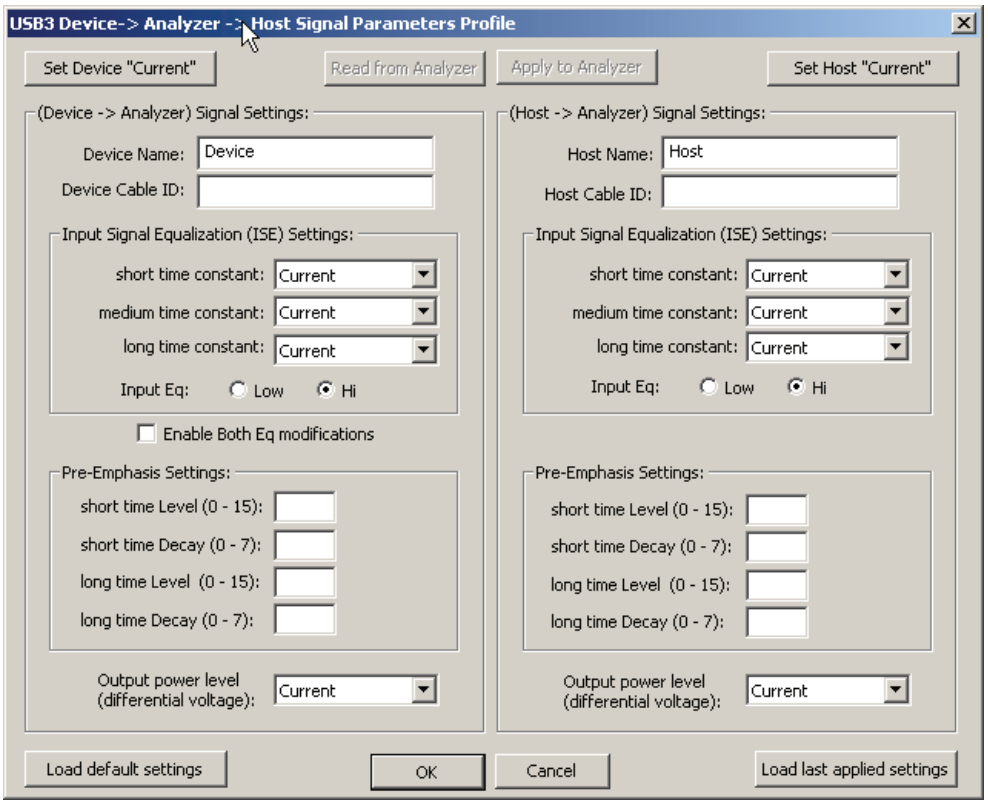
### 3.5.5 USB 3.0 Device/Host Signal Parameters

For USB, to add, remove, edit, load (from a comma-delimited **.csv** file), or save (as a comma-delimited **.csv** file) USB 3.0 devices and to calibrate USB 3.0 connections, select **Setup > USB 3.0 Device/Host Signal Parameters** to display the USB3 Device -> Analyzer -> Host Signal Profiles dialog.




The dialog lists the Device Name, Device Cable, Host Name, Host Cable, and to what the Profile Signal Settings apply. It also shows Device-to-Analyzer and Host-to-Analyzer custom signal settings.

To add a device, click **Add** to display the USB3 Device -> Analyzer -> Host Signal Parameter Profiles dialog.




The dialog allows you to **Set Device "Current"** or **Read from Analyzer**.

The dialog allows you to **Set Host "Current"** or **Apply to Analyzer**.

You can enter Device to Analyzer Signal Settings:

- **Device Name**
- **Device Cable ID**
- **Input Signal Equalization (ISE) Settings**: Short, medium and long time constant (Current, Off, Minimum, Moderate, or Maximum)
- **Pre-Emphasis Settings**: Short and long time level (0 to 15) and short and long time decay (0 to 7)
- **Output Power Level**: Current, or 213 mV to 1294 mV

You can enter Host to Analyzer Signal Settings:

- **Host Name**
- **Host Cable ID**
- **Input Signal Equalization (ISE) Settings**: Short, medium and long time constant (Current, Off, Minimum, Moderate, or Maximum)
- **Pre-Emphasis Settings**: Short and long time level (0 to 15) and short and long time decay (0 to 7)
- **Output Power Level**: Current, or 213 mV to 1294 mV

You can also **Load the default settings** or **Load the last applied settings**.

**Input Equalization**

Depending on the hardware version of your system, there are two ways to control input equalization. One method requires you to set three time constants, or use the defaults. The other method allows you to select either **Hi** or **Low**, or use the default. The method appropriate for your connected hardware is enabled.

**For advanced users only**: You can change the values for the “other hardware” by checking **Enable Both Eq modifications**. For example, you might want to do this if you use the same file for both Advisor T3 and Voyager M3i.

## 3.5.6 USB 3.0 Cabling and Signal Integrity

The Analyzer requires two connector discontinuities. In addition, bus-powered devices are susceptible to voltage drops on VBus.

To maintain the best possible signal integrity for all devices under test, use high-quality cabling and use the shortest possible cable lengths. Do not "stress" the system by using long or low-quality cabling that might result in signal degradation.

If you suspect signal integrity problems in capture situations, you should first try using shorter and higher-quality cables to see if this rectifies the problem.

# 3.6 Your First USB Recording

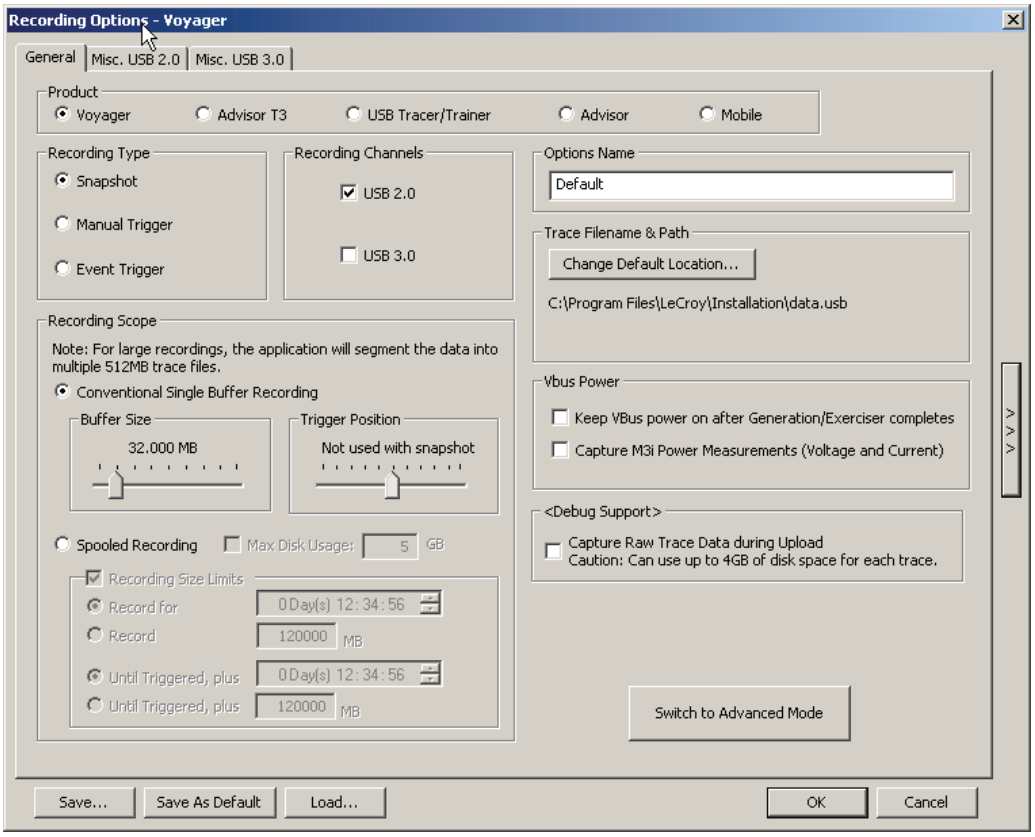
After installing and launching the software, you can test the system by performing the following steps:

**Step 1** Connect a USB cable to each of the two connectors on the Analyzer module, then connect the other ends to the USB device under test and USB host system.

**Note:** Whenever you do connect/disconnect testing, always plug/unplug the "**B**" connector on the Analyzer, to insure that the Host detects the event properly. In some cases, using the "**A**" port for this purpose can cause the Host to misinterpret the terminations.

**Step 2** Select **Setup > Recording Options** on the Menu Bar.

**Step 3** Select the **General** tab to display a dialog box showing factory default settings, such as Snapshot and 4 MB buffer size. For the first recording, you can leave these settings unchanged. Under Recording Channels, select **2.0** to record USB 2.0 traffic.




**Note:** Items not supported on your hardware are grayed out or not shown.

**Step 4** Click **OK** to activate the recording options you selected.

**Step 5** Turn on the USB devices that are to be tested and cause them to generate USB traffic.

**Step 6** Click

on the Tool Bar.

The system starts to record the USB traffic immediately. After 4 MB of traffic are recorded, the Analyzer uploads the data and displays the packets in the trace window.

**Step 7** To terminate recording before the snapshot automatically completes,

click on the Tool Bar.

When the recording session finishes, the traffic uploads from the Analyzer to the hard drive on your PC as a file named **data.usb** or the name you assigned as the default filename. While the file is uploading, you should see a brown progress bar at the bottom of the screen. When the bar disappears, the data has uploaded to disk.

**Step 8** To save a current recording for future reference, select **File > Save As** on the Menu Bar.

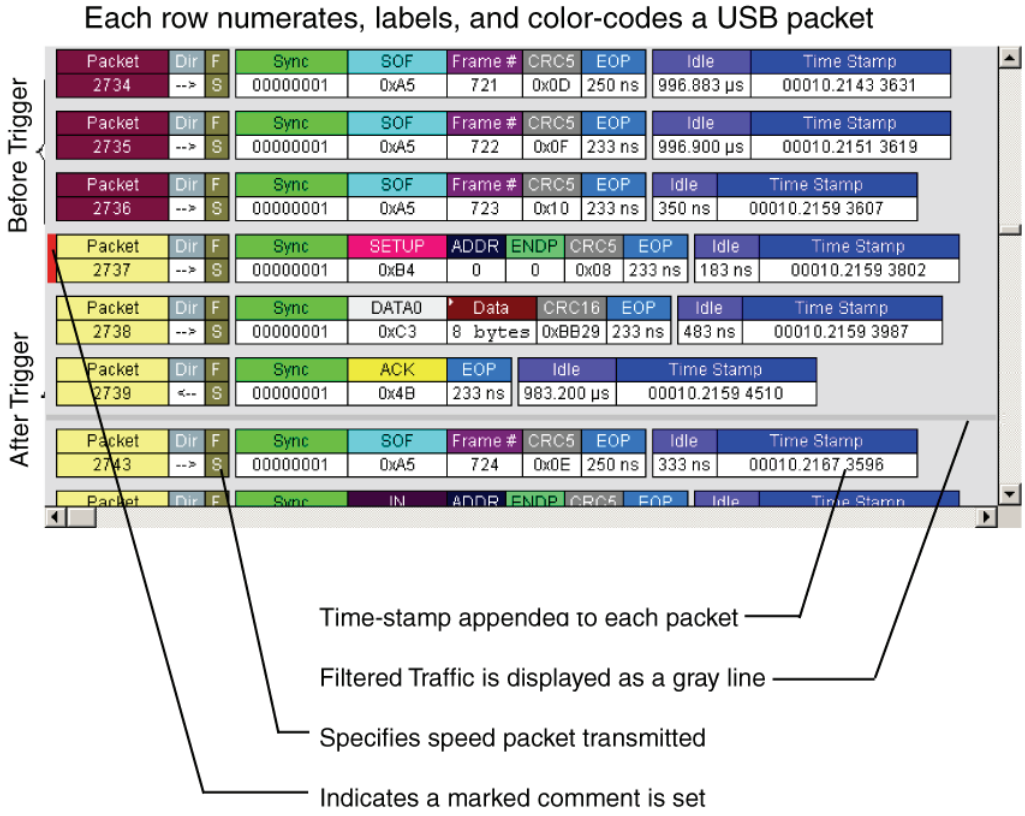
OR

Click on the Tool Bar to display the standard **Save As** window.
Give the recording a unique name and save it to the appropriate directory.

## 3.6.1 Trace View Features

After the recording terminates, the results display.

- The packet view display uses color and graphics to document captured traffic.
- Packets are on separate rows, with individual fields both labeled and color-coded.
- Packets are numbered sequentially (as recorded), time-stamped (with a resolution of 2 ns on 3.0 signalling), and highlighted to show the transmitted speed (low-speed, full-speed, high-speed, or superspeed).
- You can name and save display formats for later use.
- Data fields can collapse to occupy minimal space in the display.


Each row numerates, labels, and color-codes a USB packet
Before Trigger
After Trigger
Time-stamp appended to each packet
Filtered Traffic is displayed as a gray line
Specifies speed packet transmitted
Indicates a marked comment is set

You can start the application from the Desktop or from the installed directory.

The display software can operate independently of the Analyzer. When used without the Analyzer, the program functions in a Trace Viewer mode to view, analyze, and print captured protocol traffic. When used with the Analyzer, you can set trigger conditions, record, monitor, and analyze the activity of your USB bus.

# 3.7 Notes on Vista and Windows 7 Directory Protections

## 3.7.1 User Data File Paths

Windows™ Vista and Windows 7 institute a policy which prevents user data from being written into the **Program Files** directory/folder. It was common for applications written for Windows XP (and earlier) to use the **Program Files** folder to store user data. LeCroy and CATC products used this folder as a default folder for storing trace files, user option files (**default.opt, default.rec**), scripts, and so on. The default folder for USB Protocol Suite was:

**x:\Program Files\Lecroy\USB Protocol Suite\…**

Windows Vista and Windows 7 make such paths illegal directories for user data. For Windows Vista and Windows 7, files that are accessible by different user accounts must be in the path

**x:\Users\Public\…**

To preserve the ability of multiple user accounts to access all the LeCroy files that were accessible in Windows XP when using Windows Vista and Windows 7, files that were in the **Program Files** path in Windows XP are now in:

**x:\Users\Public\Documents\Lecroy\USB Protocol Suite\…**

In some cases, such as paths stored in the Recording Options **.rec** file, the application silently changes this path, so that the Windows Vista and Windows 7 operating systems will accept it as valid.

USB Protocol Suite on Windows XP still uses the **Program Files** directory. However, if a Recording Options file that was created on a Windows 7 system is used on a Windows XP system, trace files will be probably be recorded to a new Windows XP directory called

**x:\Users\Public\Documents\Lecroy\USB Protocol Suite\…**

This is a legitimate path on a Windows XP system, so there are no conflicts with the operating system.

# Chapter 4: Software Overview

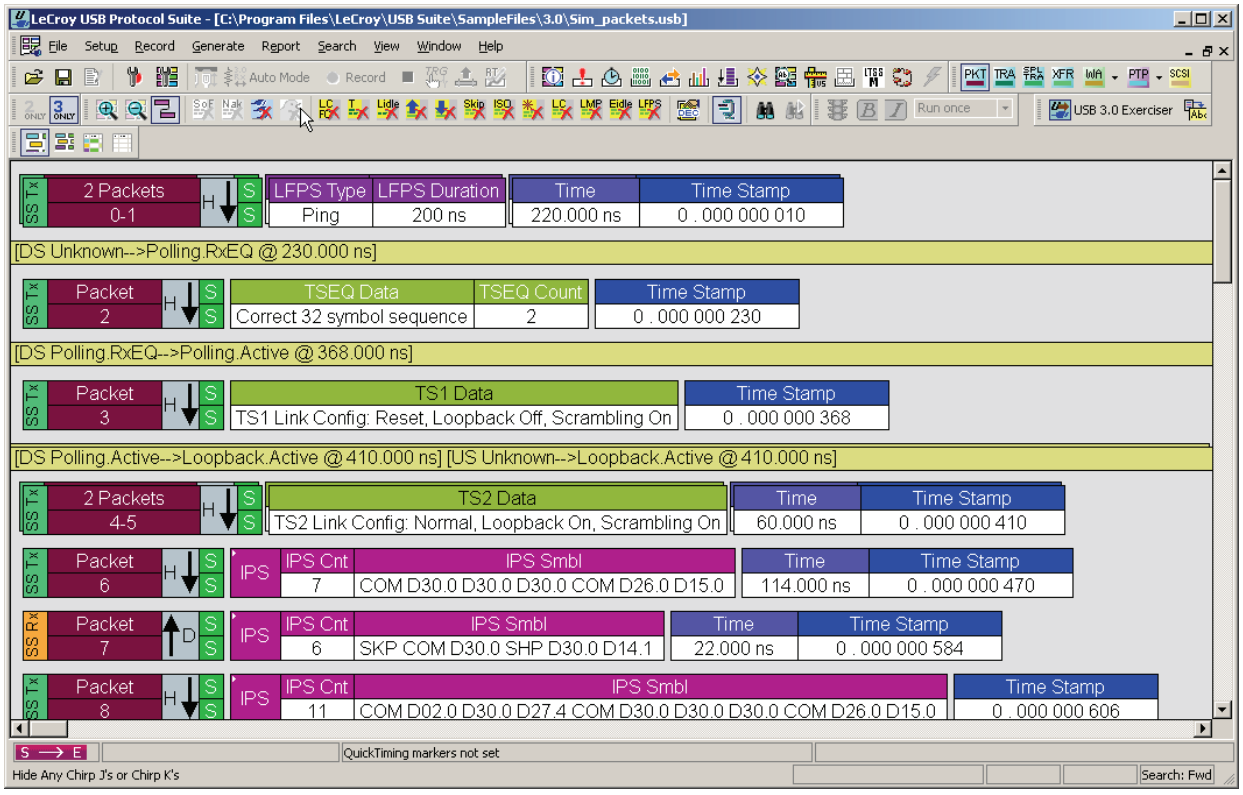
The USB Protocol Suite application can function with or without the Analyzer. When used without an Analyzer, the program functions in a Trace Viewer mode to view, analyze, and print captured protocol traffic. The software also allows you to view trace files created by the LeCroy USB Chief™, USB Advisor™, USB Detective™, USB Inspector™, and USB Tracer™/Trainer™. Opening a file created with any of those Analyzers displays a screen asking if you want to convert the old file to the new format under the name **<filename>_convert.usb**.

When used with the Analyzer attached to the computer, you can monitor and analyze the activity of your USB branch from USB ports on the Analyzer front.

## 4.1 Starting the Program

To start the USB Protocol Suite application:

**Step 1** Select **Start** > **Programs** > **LeCroy** > **USB Protocol Suite** > **USB Protocol Suite**.


LeCroy USB Protocol Suite - [C:\Program Files\LeCroy\USB Suite\SampleFiles\3.0\Sim_packets.usb]
File Setup Record Generate Report Search View Window Help
USB 3.0 Exerciser
2 Packets 0-1
LFPS Type Ping
LFPS Duration 200 ns
Time 220.000 ns
Time Stamp 0 . 000 000 010
[DS Unknown-->Polling.RxEQ @ 230.000 ns]
Packet 2
TSEQ Data Correct 32 symbol sequence
TSEQ Count 2
Time Stamp 0 . 000 000 230
[DS Polling.RxEQ-->Polling.Active @ 368.000 ns]
Packet 3
TS1 Data TS1 Link Config: Reset, Loopback Off, Scrambling On
Time Stamp 0 . 000 000 368
[DS Polling.Active-->Loopback.Active @ 410.000 ns] [US Unknown-->Loopback.Active @ 410.000 ns]
2 Packets 4-5
TS2 Data TS2 Link Config: Normal, Loopback On, Scrambling On
Time 60.000 ns
Time Stamp 0 . 000 000 410
Packet 6
IPS Cnt 7
IPS Smbl COM D30.0 D30.0 D30.0 COM D26.0 D15.0
Time 114.000 ns
Time Stamp 0 . 000 000 470
Packet 7
IPS Cnt 6
IPS Smbl SKP COM D30.0 SHP D30.0 D14.1
Time 22.000 ns
Time Stamp 0 . 000 000 584
Packet 8
IPS Cnt 11
IPS Smbl COM D02.0 D30.0 D27.4 COM D30.0 D30.0 D30.0 COM D26.0 D15.0
Time Stamp 0 . 000 000 606
QuickTiming markers not set
Hide Any Chirp J's or Chirp K's
Search: Fwd

# 4.2 The Main Display Window

| Menu | Function |
|---|---|
| **File** | |
| New .utg file. | Creates a new, empty traffic generation file. Available only if a trace file (**.usb**) is open. To edit a .**utg** file, click **Edit as Text** in the toolbar. |
| Open | Opens a file. |
| Close | Closes the current file. |
| Save As | Saves all, or a range of, packets from the current file. |
| Print | Prints part or all of the current traffic data file. |
| Print Preview | Produces an on-screen preview before printing. |
| Print Setup | Sets the options for the current or new printer. |
| Edit as Text | Opens the Script Editor. Available only when a traffic generation file (**.utg**) is open. See “Editing a Generation File” on page 286. |
| Edit Comment | Creates or edits the Trace file comment field. See “Edit Comment” on page 124. |
| Check Syntax of .utg file | Reads open **.utg** file and checks syntax for errors. Available only when a traffic generation file (.**utg**) is open. |
| Export>> | Saves all or part of a trace to a text file or generator file. |
| Packets to Text (Packet View Format) | Saves trace as a text file in Packet View Format. |
| Packets to .CSV (Comma Separated Values for Excel, etc.) Format) | Saves trace as a comma-separated-values text file for use with Microsoft® Excel. See “Exports to .CSV” on page 76. |
| Packets to Host Traffic Generator Text File (**.utg**) | Saves trace as a script file that can be used by a Generator to generate a trace. See “Exporting to USB 2.0 Generation Files (.utg files)” on page 77. |
| Packets to Device Emulation Traffic Generation Text File (**.utg**) | Exports packets to Device Emulation files. This option does not export transactions. See “Exporting to USB 2.0 Generation Files (.utg files)” on page 77. |
| Packets to USB3 Exerciser Script (**.usb3g**) | Exports packets to USB3 Exerciser Script files. This option does not export transactions. |
| Data | Exports Transfer data as a text or binary file. |
| Merge Trace Files | Merges two simultaneously recorded files into a single file. (This command does not work if the files were recorded at different times). |
| Import | If you have exported simulations to a defined **.csv** format, you can import data from the **.csv** file to a BusEngine™ data file. To use this feature, you must contact support for information on how to export to a specific-format **.csv** file and then import the file. |
| Compare Endpoint Data | Allows you to select two endpoints of different directions with the same address and verify that the data OUT/IN is identical to the data IN/OUT from the other endpoint. Used when running echo-types of tests for data integrity. Available only when a trace file (**.usb**) is open. (2.0 only) |
| Exit | Exits the program. |

| Menu | Function |
|---|---|
| **Setup** | |
| Display Options | Provides display options such as color, formats, and filters.<br>See “Display Options” on page 143. |
| Recording Options | Provides setup options for recording, triggering events and filtering.<br>See “Recording Options” on page 221. |
| Update Device | Updates the BusEngine™ and Firmware manually.<br>See “Manual Updates to Firmware, BusEngine, and Serdes BusEngine” on page 350. |
| Launch CrossSync Control Panel | Opens the CrossSync multiple-analyzer traffic synchronization software (see CrossSync Control Panel on page 90). For more infoemation, refer to the *CrossSync User Manual.* |
| Analyzer Network | Opens a dialog box for browsing to local and networked analyzers. Within the dialog, click **Add** to browse. The dialog lists PCs that are on the LAN. If a PC has an analyzer attached to it, and if DCOM permissions have been set on the selected PC, clicking **Select** establishes a connection.<br>See “Analyzer Network” on page 61. |
| All Connected Devices | Opens a dialog box with a list of analyzers connected to the host PC. Lets you select an analyzer and update the BusEngine, Firmware, and licensing information.<br>See “Analyzer Devices” on page 57. |
| USB 3.0 Device/ Host Signal parameters | Adds, removes, edits, loads, and saves USB 3.0 devices and lists the device name, device cable, host name, host cable, and to what the Profile Signal Settings apply.<br>Used to calibrate 3.0 connections. Also shows custom device-to-analyzer and host-to-analyzer signal settings.<br>See “USB 3.0 Device/Host Signal Parameters” on page 62. |
| **Record** (see “Recording Status” on page 86.) | |
| Start | Causes the Analyzer to begin recording USB activity. |
| Stop | Causes the Analyzer to stop recording. |
| Upload Again | Allows you to upload a different portion of the captured trace if the previous upload was only partially uploaded. |
| Reset SuperSpeed Capture Engine | For USB 3.0 traffic capture, in some cases, the Analyzer might not correctly lock onto the 5-GBps signals on power up, or it may unlock after a long period of usage. To issue a soft reset to the SuperSpeed capture engine, select this command. **Note:** After performing the reset, you must retrain the link on your devices. |
| **Generate** (see “Traffic Generation (2.0)” on page 277) | |
| Start/Stop | Starts traffic generation. After traffic generation has begun, the **Start** command becomes **Stop** and lets you stop traffic generation. |
| IntelliFrame Generation Mode | Sets the mode of generation to IntelliFrame. Use before Start. (2.0 only) |
| Bitstream Generation Mode | Sets the mode of generation to bitstream. Use before Start. (2.0 only) |

| Menu | Function |
|---|---|
| Repeat Mode | Allows you to repeat once, a specified number of times, or an infinite number of times using the Generation Repeat Mode window. (2.0 only) |
| **Report** | |
| File Information | Displays information about the recording, such as the number of packets and triggering setup. See “File Information” on page 177. |
| Error Summary | Summarizes the errors throughout the recording. Allows for fast navigation to packets with errors. See “Error Summary” on page 179. |
| Timing Calculations | Calculates timing between two packets and bus utilization. See “Timing Calculations” on page 180. |
| Data View | Shows packet information. See “Detail View” on page 205. |
| Traffic Summary | Summarizes the numbers and types of errors, packets, transactions, split transactions, and transfers that occurred in the open trace. See “Traffic Summary” on page 184. |
| Bus Utilization | Displays graphs of packet length, bus usage, and bus usage by device. See “Bus Utilization” on page 186. |
| Link Tracker | Opens a window for displaying a detailed chronological view of traffic. The window provides view and navigation options. See “Link Tracker (3.0)” on page 193. |
| Navigator | Allows you to view the location of errors and triggers in a trace, narrow the range of traffic on display, and jump to any point in the trace. See “Using the Trace Navigator” on page 198. |
| Detail View | Displays details of selected packet. See “Detail View” on page 205. |
| Spec View | Shows packet header information and other items, in a view that matches the USB 3.0 specification. See “Spec View (3.0)” on page 206. |
| USB3 Link State Timing View | Graphically shows how much time the link spends in each link state. See “USB3 Link State Timing View” on page 207. |
| USB3 LTSSM view | Displays the LTSSM diagram depicted in the USB 3.0 specification. See “USB3 LTSSM View” on page 209. |
| Power Tracker | Displays voltage, current, and power. See “Power Tracker” on page 210. |
| Run Verification Scripts | Opens a window to allow you to run verification scripts over the open trace. See “Running Verification Scripts” on page 212. |

| Menu | Function |
|---|---|
| **Search** (see “Searching Traces” on page 125) | |
| Go to Trigger | Positions the display to show the first packet that follows the trigger event. |
| Go to Packet/ Transaction/Transfer | Positions the display to the packet/transaction/transfer number selected in the Go to Packet/Transaction/Transfer menu. |
| Go to Marker » | Positions the display to the selected marked packet. |
| Go to USB2.0» | Positions the display to the selected event, condition, value, or type. |
| Go to USB3.0» | Positions the display to the selected event, condition, value, or type. |
| Go to SCSI | Positions the display to the selected SCSI Operation, Command Status, Task Management, Task Management Response, or Error. |
| Find | Allows complex searches on multiple criteria. See “Find” on page 138. |
| Find Next | Repeats the previous Find operation. |
| Search Direction | Allows the search direction to be changed from Forward to Backward, or vice versa. |
| **View** | |
| Toolbars | Displays list of available toolbars. See “Resetting the Toolbar” on page 83. |
| Analyzer Network Chat Bar | Opens a dialog that allows you to conduct chat sessions over an IP LAN. In order to send and receive electronic text messages, each user must be working with a PC that is on an IP LAN and also attached to an analyzer. |
| Status Bar | Switches display of the Status Bar on or off. See “Status Bar” on page 85. |
| QuickTiming Bar | Quick Timing provides immediate time deltas and bandwidth calculations. If the Start is placed on a packet that contains an Address and Endpoint, the bandwidth for that combination is displayed in the Status Bar below the trace data. See “Set or Clear Quick Timing Markers” on page 97. |
| Real-time Statistics | Allows you to view traffic statistics as they occur. See “Real Time Monitoring” on page 217. |
| USB Electrical Test | Tests electrical characteristics. See “USB 3.0 Electrical Test Modes” on page 330. |
| Trace Views | Displays CATC Trace, Compressed CATC Trace, Spreadsheet (Color), or Spreadsheet (B/W). |
| Unhide cells | Unhide Filtered Traffic, VBus Power, or Unhide All. |
| Zoom In | Increases the size of the displayed elements. |
| Zoom Out | Decreases the size of the displayed elements. |
| Wrap | Wraps displayed packets within the window. |
| Show USB 2 Traffic Only | Displays only USB 2.0 traffic. |
| Show USB 3 Traffic Only | Displays only USB 3.0 traffic. |

| Menu | Function |
|---|---|
| Hiding USB 2 Traffic | Hides.<br>• SOF's: Start of Frames<br>• NAK's: NAK'ed Transactions<br>• Devices: Packets belonging to specified devices by address and endpoint<br>• Chirps: Chirp-K and Chirp-J Bus conditions (these are recorded only) |
| Hiding USB 3 Traffic | Hides:<br>• Link Commands (Flow Control)<br>• Link Training Sequences (TS1, TS2, TSEQ)<br>• Logical Idle Packets<br>• Upstream Packets<br>• Downstream Packets<br>• Skip Sequences<br>• ISO Time Stamp Packets<br>• Inter-Packet Symbols<br>• Link Commands (Other than Flow Control)<br>• LMP Packets<br>• Electrical Idles<br>• LFPS Packets<br>• LTSSM Transition Indicators |
| View Layers Mode | Display All Layers, Application Layers, or Lower USB Layers. |
| Stacking View | Puts a group of packets in one row, to shorten display. |
| Apply Decoding Scripts | Decoding scripts set the values of the display and recording options for optimum views of trace information from specific vendors or classes of data. This menu option allows you to select the vendor or class of data for the request recipients and endpoints listed in the Request Recipients and Endpoints menu. You can keep the settings across recordings.<br>See "Decode Requests" on page 155. |
| Packet Level | Displays Packets. |
| Transaction Level | Displays Transactions. |
| Split Transaction Level | Displays Split Transactions. |
| Transfer Level | Displays Transfers. |
| WA Group | **HWA Segment Level** displays Host Wire Adapter Segments.<br>**HWA Transfer Level** displays Host Wire Adapter Transfers.<br>**DWA Segment Level** displays Device Wire Adapter Segments.<br>**DWA Transfer Level** displays Device Wire Adapter Transfers. |
| PTP Group | **PTP Transaction Level** displays PTP Transactions<br>**PTP Object Transfer Level** displays PTP Objects<br>**PTP Session Level** displays PTP Sessions |
| SCSI Operation Level | Displays SCSI Operation Level |

| Menu | Function |
|---|---|
| Refresh Decoding | Forces the software to re-decode transactions and transfers. Useful if you have applied a decoding mapping which helps fully decode a sequence of transfers, as is the case with Mass Storage decoding. |
| **Window** | |
| New Window | Switches display of the Tool Bar on or off. |
| Cascade | Displays all open windows in an overlapping arrangement. |
| Tile Horizontal | Displays all open windows in a above-below arrangement. |
| Tile Vertical | Displays all open windows in a side-by-side arrangement. |
| Arrange Icons | Arranges minimized windows at the bottom of the display. |
| Windows ... | Displays a list of open windows. |
| **Help** | |
| Help | Displays online help. You can also select F1. |
| Video Tutorials | Has links to YouTube videos that describe Voyager features:<br>Basic USB 3.0 Recording,<br>USB 3.0 Basic Triggering,<br>USB 3.0 Advanced Triggering,<br>Troubleshooting USB 3.0 Connection Issues,<br>USB 3.0 Packet Header Display,<br>USB 3.0 Compliance (Part 1).<br>USB 3.0 Compliance (Part 2) |
| Update License | Opens a dialog box for updating your LeCroy license.<br>See “Updating the Software License” on page 352. |
| Display License Information | Displays information related to licensing.<br>See “License Information” on page 351. |
| Register Product Online | Register at the LeCroy website.<br>See “Registering Online” on page 352. |
| Check for Updates | Use the Internet to analyze your system for licensed updates. You can set the system to automatically check for updates at application startup in the LeCroy USB Protocol Suite Software Update window.<br>See “Software Updates” on page 346. |
| About | Displays version information about the Voyager M3 and the USB Protocol Suite.<br>See “Software, Firmware, and BusEngine Revisions” on page 345. |

## 4.2.1 Exports to .CSV

**.CSV** files may be created as exports from the contents of 2.0 CATC Trace Packet and Transaction Views, 3.0 CATC Trace Packet views, and any Spreadsheet view. The output is limited to 1 million rows.

### 4.2.1.2 Export Packets to .CSV

When viewing 2.0 or 3.0 Packets in either the CATC Trace view or the CATC Trace Compressed view, selecting **Export > Packets to .CSV <show Packets/Transactions/Spreadsheet item from the Export> menu in a graphic>**

exports the packets to a **.csv** file in a pre-configured format. The first row of that **.csv** file shows what each column represents.

### 4.2.1.2 Export Transactions to .CSV

When viewing 2.0 Packets in either the CATC Trace view or the CATC Trace Compressed view, selecting **Export > Transactions to .CSV** exports the 2.0 transactions to a **.csv** file in a pre-configured format. The first row of that **.csv** file shows what each column represents.

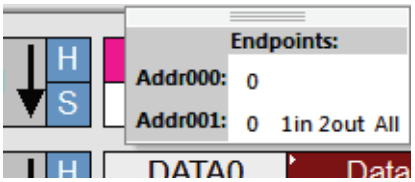
### 4.2.1.2 Export Spreadsheet View to .CSV

When viewing 2.0 Packets in either the Black and White or Colored Spreadsheet Views Trace view, selecting **Export > Spreadsheet to .CSV** exports the contents of the spreadsheet to a **.csv** file in a pre-configured format. The columns match the columns as you have defined them in your Spreadsheet view.

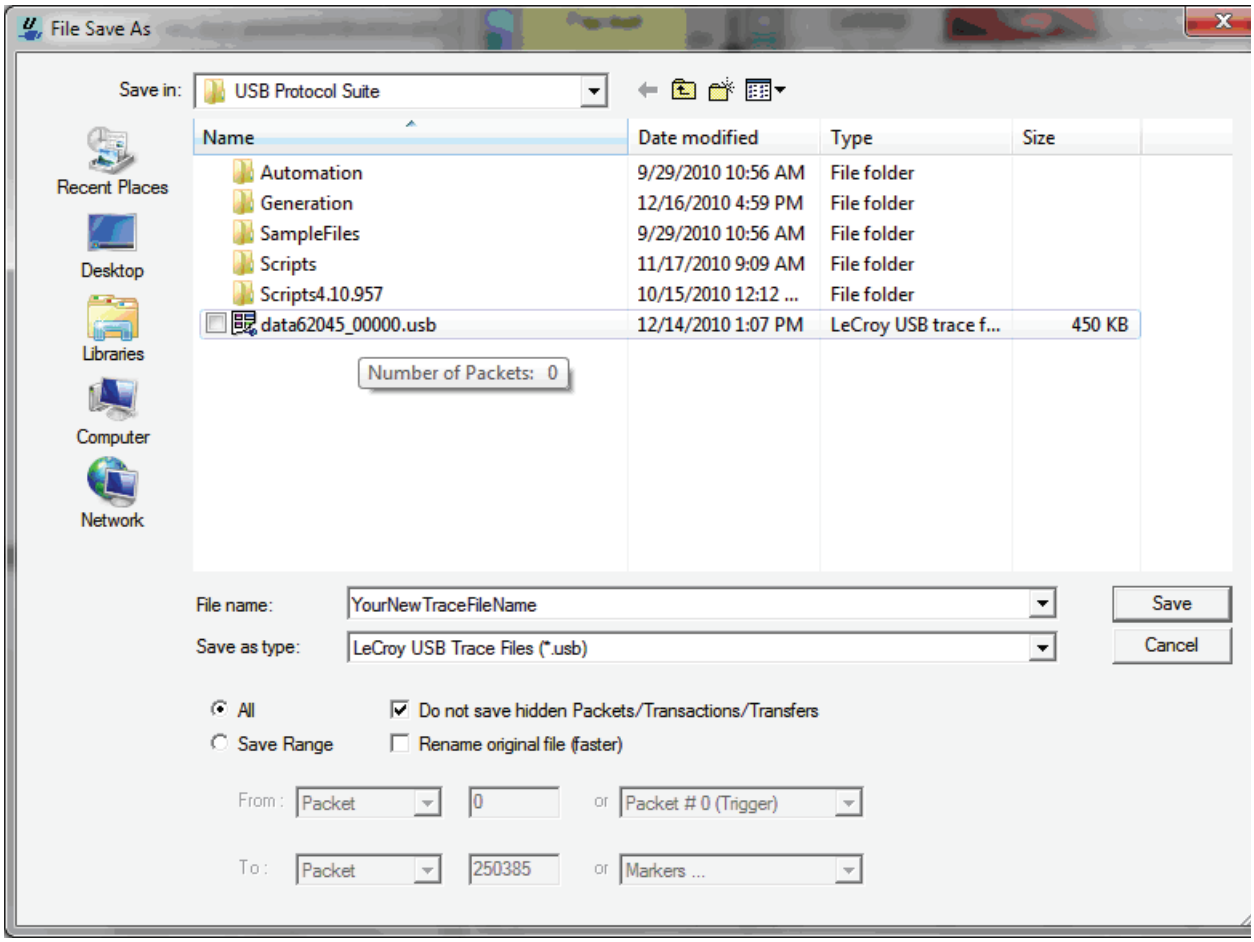
## 4.2.2 Exporting to USB 2.0 Generation Files (.utg files)

Before exporting to a **.utg** file, first make sure the **.usb** file contains traffic for only one device:

**Step 1** Hide all other device addresses in the trace, leaving only the address of your device and the **Address 0** (the default enumeration address.)



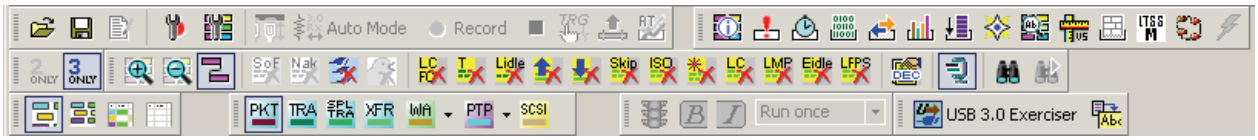

**Step 2** Save to a new file using the **All** and **Do not save hidden Packets/Transactions/Transfers** selections.




**Step 3** On the new file, you can now **Export… Packets to USB 2.0 … Text File (.utg) …**

**Step 4** If the captured file was Hi Speed and was recorded in Auto-Speed Detect mode, you must add a **ping=here** statement before the first SOF packets in the **.utg** file. This is required because, when the capture is made in Auto-Speed Detect mode, the first "Ping" sequence is not captured in the trace file.

# 4.3 Tool Bar




The Tool Bar provides quick and convenient access to the most popular program functions. Tool tips briefly describe the functionality of each icon and menu item as the mouse arrow is moved over the icon/item.

## 4.3.1 Files, Searches, and Options

Open file

Save As

Edit as Text

Find (see “Find” on page 138)

Find Next

Setup Recording Options. See “Recording Options” on page 221.

Setup Display Options
See “Display Options” on page 143.

## 4.3.2 Zoom and Wrap

Zoom In

Zoom Out

Wrap

### 4.3.3 Miscellaneous

Display Realtime Statistics. See “Real Time Monitoring” on page 217.

Assign High Level Decodes. See “Decode Requests” on page 155.

Display Stacking View.

Stacking conserves space in the trace view by displaying repeating items (or item groups) as one item, along with the number of repeats.

For USB 2.0, stacking items (or item groups) can be:

- SOF
- Chirp (merges J's and Ks into one stacked display unit)
- NAK'ed (split) Transaction

For USB 3.0, stacking items (or item groups) can be:

- TSEQ
- TS1 with same Link Functionality
- TS2 with same Link Functionality
- LFPS with same Type
- LUP
- LDN
- NAK'ed Transaction

**Note:** Items are grouped regardless of any intervening Skip Sequence, Electrical Idle, or Logical Idle symbols. If any of these occur during a stream of the repeating stacking item, they are not displayed.

## 4.3.4 Analysis (Reports)

File Information Report
See “File Information” on page 177.

Timing and Bus Usage Calculations
See “Timing Calculations” on page 180.

Data View
See “Detail View” on page 205.

Link Tracker
See “Link Tracker (3.0)” on page 193.

Open the Navigator bar
See “Using the Trace Navigator” on page 198.

Show USB3 Link State Timing View.
See “USB3 Link State Timing View” on page 207.

Run Verification Scripts.
See “Running Verification Scripts” on page 212.

Error Report
See “Error Summary” on page 179.

Traffic Summary
See “Traffic Summary” on page 184.

Bus Utilization
See “Bus Utilization” on page 186.

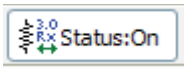
Spec View
See “Spec View (3.0)” on page 206.

Detail View
See “Detail View” on page 205.

Show USB3 LTSSM View
See “USB3 LTSSM View” on page 209.

Show Power Tracker.
(Power captures are supported only on Voyager M3i.)
See “Power Tracker” on page 210.

## 4.3.5 Recording




Superspeed (USB 3.0) receiver terminations of Analyzer:
**M3i:** If both Analyzer ports are set to Auto in Recording Options, this button is dimmed. If either port is set to Manual, this button can apply or remove USB 3.0 termination.
**M3:** This button is always enabled, and Auto mode is not supported.

Start Recording

Manual Trigger

Stop Recording

Repeat Upload

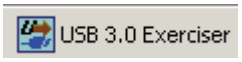
Momentary VBus Disconnect (Voyager M3i Only)

Causes the VBus power between the Host and the Device connected through the Analyzer A and B USB ports to be broken for 1 second, simulating a unplug-plugin cycle. This is the recommended method of creating plug-in scenarios.

**Note:** When Disconnect is done during recording, it may cause capturing of IPS (undecodable symbols) and false triggering of CRC triggers, because packets will be abruptly stopped in the middle of a symbol stream.

## 4.3.6 Generator (Traffic Generation for USB 3)

(See “Traffic Generation (3.0 Exerciser)” on page 307)




Go to USB 3.0 Exerciser window.

Display Export to Script dialog.

Manual Trigger

Repeat Upload

## 4.3.7 Generator (Traffic Generation for USB 2)

(See “Traffic Generation (2.0)” on page 277)

Start or Stop Traffic Generation (available if you have the Traffic Generation module).

Bitstream and Intelliframe modes

Repeat Mode. This button becomes active when a traffic generation file (*.utg) is open.

## 4.3.8 View Level

(See “Switch to Transactions View” on page 108 and following)

Display Packets
See “Trace View Features” on page 93.

Display Transactions
See “Switch to Transactions View” on page 108.

Display Split Transactions
See “Switch to Split Transaction View” on page 112.

Display Transfers
See “Switch to Transfer View” on page 112.

Display Host Wire Adapter Segments
See “Switch to Host Wire Adapter Segment View” on page 115.

Display Host Wire Adapter Transfers
See “Switch to Host Wire Adapter Transfer View” on page 116.

WA Group
Click the arrow to display the Wire Adapter Levels.

Display Device Wire Adapter Segments
See “Switch to Device Wire Adapter Segment View” on page 116.

Display Device Wire Adapter Transfers
See “Switch to Device Wire Adapter Transfer View” on page 116.

Display PTP Transactions
See “Switch to PTP Transactions” on page 117.

Display PTP Objects
See “Switch to PTP Object Transfers” on page 117.

Display PTP Sessions
See “Switch to PTP Sessions” on page 118.

Display SCSI Operations

PTP Group
Click the arrow to display the PTP Levels

### 4.3.9 Trace Views

(See “Compressed CATC Trace View” on page 119 and “Spreadsheet View” on page 120)

Normal CATC Trace View

Compressed CATC Trace

Spreadsheet View (Color)

Spreadsheet View (B/W)

### 4.3.10 USB 2 USB 3 Show

Display USB 2.0 traffic only.

Display USB 3.0 traffic only.

### 4.3.11 USB 2.0 Display/Hide

Hide SOFs.

Hide Devices

Hide NAK’ed transactions.

Hide Chirps

### 4.3.12 USB 3.0 Display/Hide

Hide Link Commands (Flow Control).

Hide ISO Time Stamp Packets.

Hide Link Training Sequences (TS1, TS2, TSEQ).

Hide Inter-Packet Symbols (unexpected packets).

Hide Logical Idle Packets.

Hide Link Commands (other than Flow Control).

Hide Upstream Packets.

Hide LMP Packets.

Hide Downstream Packets.

Hide Electrical Idles.

Hide Skip Sequences.

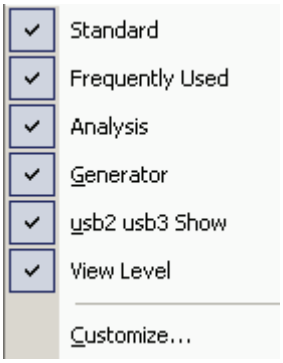
Hide LFPS Packets.

## 4.4 Tooltips

Tooltips provide information about trace cells and application buttons. To display a tooltip, position the mouse pointer over the item.

# 4.5 View Options

You can hide, display, or reset toolbars by selecting **View > Tool bars** from the menu bar.



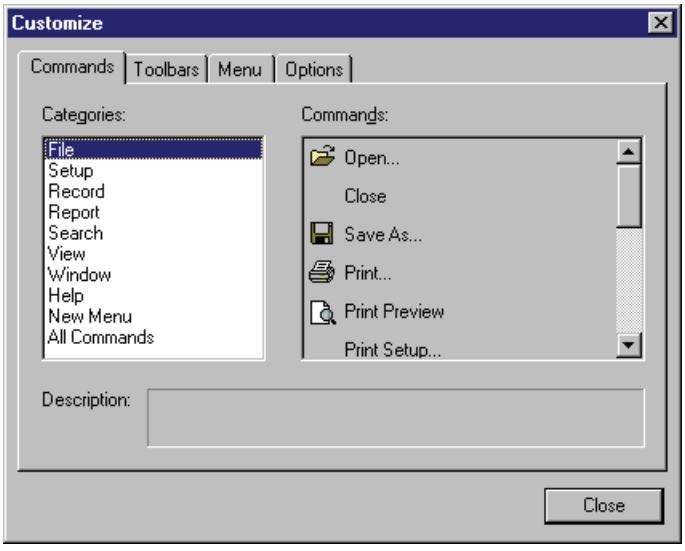

## 4.5.1 Resetting the Toolbar

From time to time (such as following a software upgrade), it is possible for the buttons on the toolbar not to match their intended function.

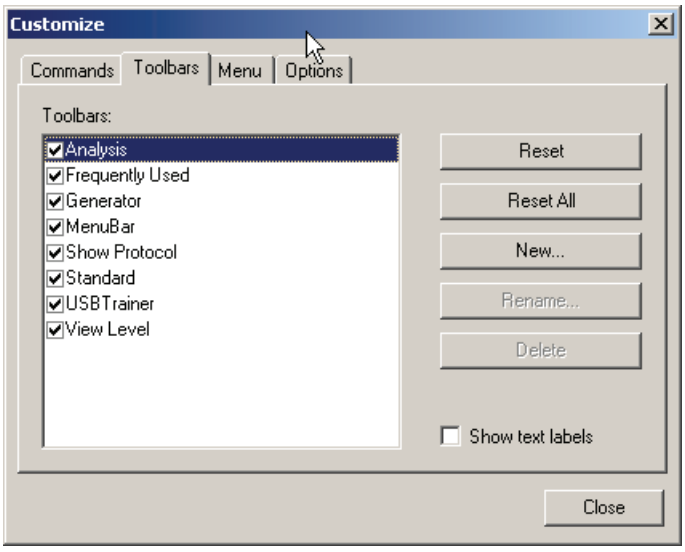
To reset the toolbar:

**Step 1** Select **View > Tool bars** from the menu bar.

**Step 2** Select **Customize** from the submenu to display the Customize dialog box.



**Step 3** Select the **Toolbars** tab to display the Toolbars page of the Customize dialog box.

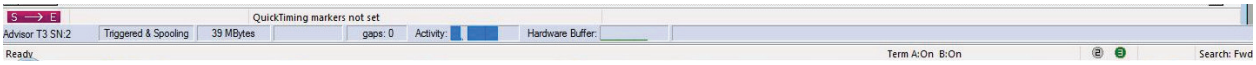



**Step 4** Click the **Reset All** button.

The toolbar resets to the factory defaults.

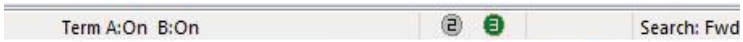
# 4.6 Status Bar

The Status Bar is located at the bottom of the main display window.




Depending on the current activity, the left side of the bar has segments that indicate the hardware, status, size, activity, and buffer.

The right side of the bar has segments that indicate port status, link status, and search direction.




## 4.6.1 Recording Progress

When you begin recording, the Status Bar displays an indicator.

As recording progresses, the indicator changes to reflect the recording progress graphically:

A black vertical line illustrates the location of the Trigger Position that you selected in Recording Options.

- Pre-Trigger progress is in the field to the left of the Trigger Position in the before-trigger color specified in the Display Options.
- When the Trigger Position is reached, the indicator wiggles as it waits for the trigger.
- After the trigger occurs, the field to the right of the Trigger Position fills with the after-trigger color specified in the Display Options.
- When recording is complete, the upper half of the progress indicator fills with white, indicating the progress of the data upload to the host computer.

You should be aware of two exceptional conditions:

- If a Trigger Event occurs during the before-trigger recording, the before-trigger color changes to the after-trigger color to indicate that not all the expected data was recorded pre-trigger.
- When you click **Stop** before or after a Trigger Event, the Status Bar adjusts accordingly to begin uploading the most recently recorded data.

The indicator fills with color in proportion to the specified size and actual rate at which the hardware is writing and reading the recording memory. However, the indicator is normalized to fill the space within the Status Bar.

## 4.6.2 Recording Status

During recording, the current Recording Status is in a segment. When you activate the **Record** function, this segment flashes a message depending on the selected Recording Options, such as **Triggered** or **Uploading**.

After recording stops,

- The flashing message changes to **Uploading data–*x*% done** (x% indicates the percentage completion of the data uploading process).
- The traffic data copies to disk (overwriting any previous version of this file) using the default file name **data.usb**. You can also create a file name by specifying one in the Recording Options dialog box.

To abort the upload process:

- Press **Esc** on the keyboard

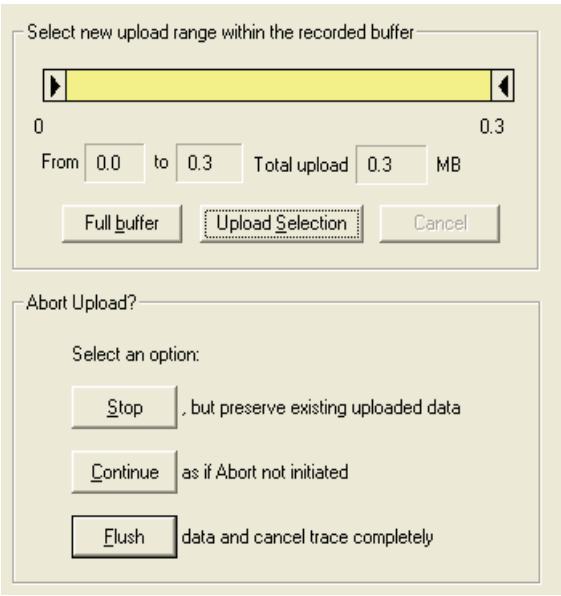
  OR

- Again click in the Tool Bar.

You are asked if you want to keep or discard the partially uploaded data.

**Note:** While uploading is in progress, clicking the **Stop** button again opens a dialog that allows you to do a partial upload, flush the current file, keep what has uploaded at this point, or to continue uploading.

The Partial Upload button enables when you have partially uploaded data. When you click **Partial Upload**, a dialog box displays options on what portion of data you want to upload again.



When the data is saved, the Recorded Data file appears in the main display window, and the Recording Status window clears.

- If the recording resulted from a Trigger Event, the first packet following the trigger (or the packet that caused the trigger) is initially positioned second from the top of the display.
- If the recording did not result from a Trigger Event, the display begins with the first packet in the traffic file.

### 4.6.3 Recording Activity

During recording, a segment of the Status Bar displays recording activity as a series of vertical bars.

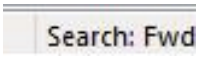
The more vertical bars that display, the greater the amount of activity recording. If there are no vertical bars, there is no recording activity.

During uploading, the percent of the completed upload displays.

**Note:** If packets are filtered from the recording, or data are truncated, recording activity reduces.

### 4.6.4 Search Status

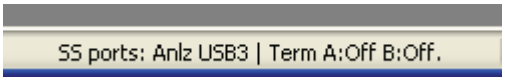
The lower rightmost segment displays the current search direction: **Fwd** (forward) or **Bwd** (backward). Change the search direction from the Search Menu or double-click the Search Status segment.




### 4.6.5 SuperSpeed Termination Status

The lower right middle of the Status Bar shows the SuperSpeed Termination status. **Note**: The status is the status of the Analyzer's port, not of the device or host under test.

When in Analyzer-only mode, it shows the status of the Analyzer A and B ports. When in Exerciser mode, it shows the status of the Exerciser port.




Polling occurs when the Application CPU is not busy.

The polling interval is reflected in a small dot (.) at the end of the string in the Status Bar.

**Note:** Terminations reflect what the Analyzer is presenting to the device or host. The Analyzer changes these terminations while attempting to connect the Host DUT and Device DUT together using the SuperSpeed connection protocol. For more information about the Recording buttons, see "Recording" on page 80.

## 4.6.6 Link Status

The circles 2 and 3 on the lower right of the Status Bar represent the equivalent colors of the link states for USB 2.0 and USB 3.0.

**Analyzer**

**3.0** - USB 3.0
**Off**: No traffic or LFPS.
**Solid Yellow**: Only Polling LFPS
**Slow Flashing Yellow**: Low Power States
**Fast Flashing Yellow**: Symbol Traffic, Training (TS1/TS2/TSEQ)
**Solid Green**: Link Traffic (U0) LUP, LDN
**Blinking Green**: TP's and DP's (actual traffic)

**2.0** - USB 2.0
**Solid Yellow**: FS SOF's, LS EOP's, or control endpoint traffic
**Slow Flashing Yellow**: LS Traffic on endpoints other than 0 (resets activity timer as in 3.0)
**Fast Flashing Yellow**: FS Traffic on endpoints other than 0 (resets activity timer as in 3.0)
**Solid Green**: HS SOF's or control endpoint traffic
**Flashing Green**: HS traffic on endpoints other than 0 (resets activity timer as in 3.0)

**Exerciser**

**3.0** - USB 3.0
**Off**: No traffic or LFPS.
**Solid Yellow**: Only Polling LFPS
**Slow Flashing Yellow**: Low Power States
**Fast Flashing Yellow**: Symbol Traffic, Training (TS1/TS2/TSEQ)
**Solid Green**: Link Traffic (U0) LUP, LDN
**Blinking Green**: TP's and DP's (actual traffic)

**2.0** - USB 2.0
unused

**Note:** USB 2.0 Link LEDs operate only while USB 2.0 Recording or Real-Time Statistics (RTS) is running.
USB 3.0 LEDs always operate, unless USB 3.0 has been disabled in the Recording Options General Tab.

# 4.7 Navigation Tools

You can zoom in and out, and wrap packets/transactions/transfers to fit within the screen, using the following buttons:

## 4.7.1 Zoom In

**Zoom In** increases the size of the displayed elements, allowing fewer (but larger) packet fields per screen.

- Click on the Tool Bar.

## 4.7.2 Zoom Out

**Zoom Out** decreases the size of the displayed elements, allowing more (but smaller) packet fields per screen.

- Click on the Tool Bar.

## 4.7.3 Wrap

Select **Wrap** to adjust the Trace View so that packets fit onto one line. If a packet is longer than the size of the window, the horizontal scroll bar can be used to see the hidden part of the packet.

- Click on the Tool Bar or select **Wrap** under **View** on the Menu Bar.

# 4.8 CrossSync Control Panel

The CrossSync Control Panel allows you to select analyzers for synchronization and manage the recording process.

## 4.8.1 Launching the CrossSync Control Panel

To launch CrossSync from the USB Protocol Suite software application, select the '**Launch CrossSync Control Panel**' entry in the 'Setup' menu (see the screen capture below). Or, you can launch CrossSync from the 'Start' menu.

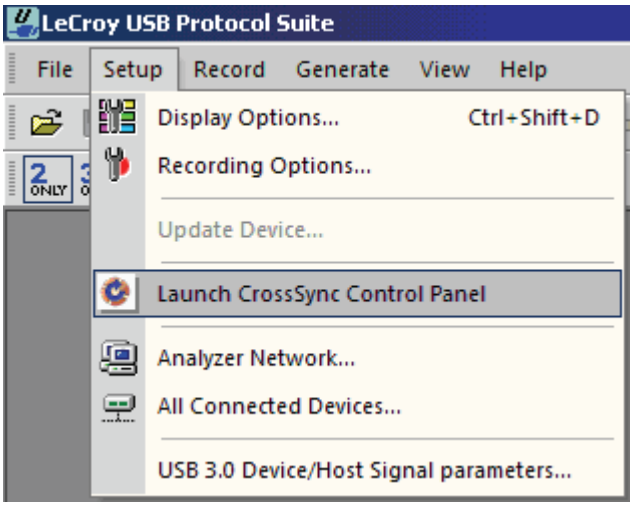



**Figure 4.1 Launching CrossSync from the USB Protocol Suite Application**

For more information, refer to the *CrossSync Control Panel User Manual*.

**Note:** If you are using CrossSync, USB Compliance Suite, or any application that uses the Automation Interface to the USB Protocol Suite, and the system prompts you that it cannot write a trace file to disk:
1. Make sure that the trace-file destination folder has write/create permissions. (For example, the target directory might be the netwrok file system, which typically does not have write/create permissions.)
2. Make sure that the Windows (or other) Firewall Settings for USB Protocol Suite are set to **Public**.

# 4.9 Analyzer Keyboard Shortcuts

Several frequently-used operations have keyboard shortcuts.

**Table 1: Keyboard Shortcuts**

| Operation | Key Combination |
|---|---|
| **Trace Navigation** | |
| Find Next | F3 |
| Search Backwards | Ctrl+B |
| Search Forwards | Ctrl+F |
| Jump to First Packet | Ctrl+Home |
| Jump to Last Packet | Ctrl+End |
| Go to Any Error | Shift+E |
| Go to Channel 0 | Ctrl+Shift+0 |
| Go to Channel 1 | Ctrl+Shift+1 |
| Move packet selection up | Shift + Up Arrow |
| Move packet selection down | Shift + Down Arrow |
| **PID** | |
| Go to ACK | Shift+A |
| Go to DATA0 | Shift+0 |
| Go to DATA1 | Shift+1 |
| Go to DATA2 | Shift+2 |
| Go to DATAx | Shift+D |
| Go to IN | Shift+I |
| Go to MDATA | Shift+M |
| Go to NAK | Shift+N |
| Go to NYET | Shift+Y |
| Go to OUT | Shift+O |
| Go to PING | Shift+G |
| Go to PRE/ERR | Shift+P |
| Go to SETUP | Shift+S |
| Go to SOF | Shift+F |
| Go to SPLIT | Shift+X |
| Go to STALL | Shift+L |

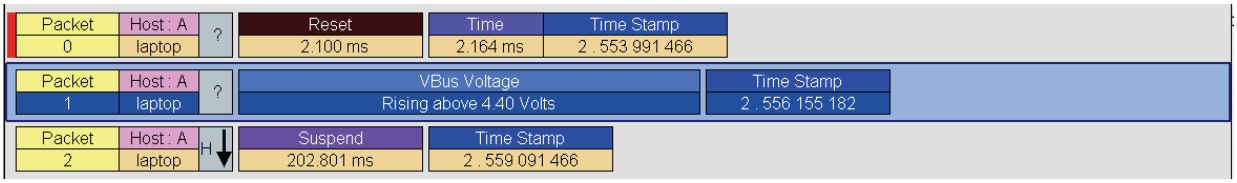
| | |
|---|---|
| Go to EXT | Shift+R |
| **Bus Conditions** | |
| Go to Reset | Shift+T |
| Go to Resume | Shift+6 |
| Go to SE0 | Shift+Z |
| Go to SE1 | Shift+7 |
| Go to Keep-Alive | Shift+5 |
| Go to Suspend | Shift+U |
| Go to Chirp | Shift+C |
| Go to Full Speed J | Shift+J |
| Go to Full Speed K | Shift+K |
| **OTG** | |
| Go to SRP | Ctrl+Q |
| Go to HNP | Shift+H |
| Go to VBus Voltage Change | Shift+V |
| Go to OTG Host A | Ctrl+Shift+A |
| Go to OTG Host B | Ctrl+Shift+B |
| **Misc.** | |
| Marker Menu | Ctrl+M |
| Open File | Ctrl+O |
| Print… | Ctrl+P |
| Record | Ctrl+R |
| Stop Recording | Ctrl+T |
| Open Display Options dialog | Ctrl+Shift+D |
| Open Recording Options dialog | Ctrl+Shift+R |
| Hide SOFs | Ctrl+Shift+S |
| Hide NAKs | Ctrl+Shift+N |
| Hide Chirps | Ctrl+Shift+C |
| Apply Decoding Scripts | Ctrl+Shift+Y |
| Set Quick Timing Marker Start | Ctrl+Left-click-mouse |
| Set Quick Timing Marker End | Ctrl+Shift+Left-click-mouse |

# Chapter 5: Reading a Trace

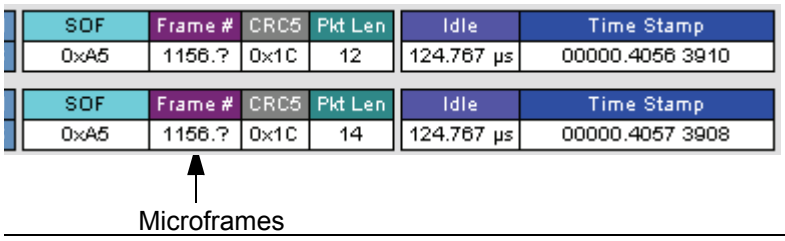
## 5.1 Trace View Features

The Trace View has these features:

- Packet view display uses color and graphics to document captured traffic.
- Selected packets, transactions, and so on, are highlighted, with blue background and black border.




- To move packet selection up or down, click **Shift-Up-Arrow** or **Shift-Down-Arrow**
- Packets are on separate rows, with individual fields both labeled and color-coded.
- Packets are numbered (sequentially, as recorded), time-stamped (with a resolution of 8 ns), and highlighted to show the transmitted speed (low-speed, full-speed, or high-speed).
- Display formats can be named and saved for later use.
- Pop-up Tool Tips detail the contents of packet fields.
- Data fields can collapse to occupy minimal space in the display, and you can zoom in and out to optimize screen use.
- The display software can operate independently of the hardware and so can function as a stand-alone Trace Viewer that may be freely distributed.
- High Speed SOFs display Microframes (shown below.)



### 5.1.1 USB 3.0 Packets

USB 3.0 has the following packet types:

- Link Commands (Flow Control)
- Link Training Sequences (TS1, TS2, TSEQ)
- Logical Idle Packets
- Upstream Packets
- Downstream Packets
- Skip Sequences
- ISO Time Stamp Packets
- Inter-Packet Symbols (unexpected packets)
- Link Commands (other than Flow Control)
- LMP Packets
- Electrical Idles
- LFPS Packets
- Termination Packets (Time stamped when termination is detected by Analyzer)

### 5.1.2 Packet Direction

The Packet Direction field displays the direction the packet or signal was traveling on the bus: Downstream from a Host

or Upstream from a Device

.

In most cases, direction can be determined unambiguously. However, some signals and situations, including protocol errors, cannot be determined with high confidence, since either Host or Device might be responsible for them. Such cases are marked as Question Marks

in the trace.

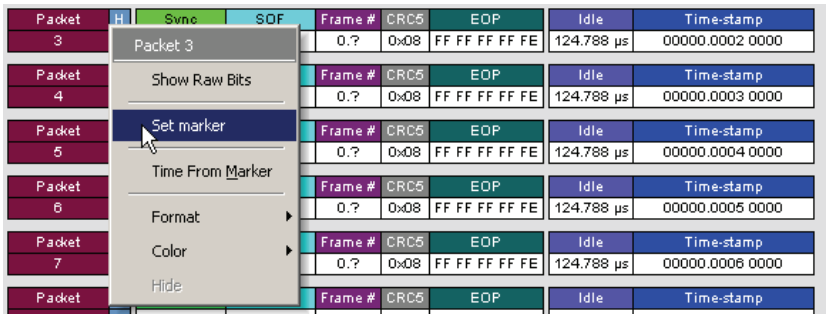
Rather than mis-identfying the signal, the software requires you to determine direction (or note an error condition, which experience has shown is rare). In most cases, you can assume the direction based on the sequence of events that occurred.

# 5.2 Set Marker

You can define a unique Marker for each packet.

To place a marker on a packet:

**Step 1** Right-click **Packet #** for the packet to mark, to display the Packet menu:




**Step 2** Select **Set Marker**.

You see the **Edit Marker Comment** window.

**Step 3** Enter a comment about the packet.

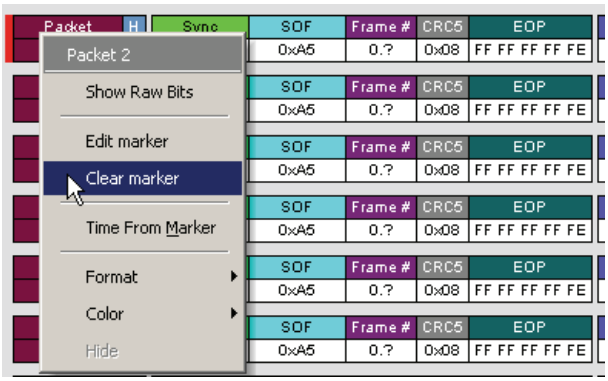
**Step 4** Click **OK**.

A marked packet has a vertical red bar along the left edge of the packet # block:

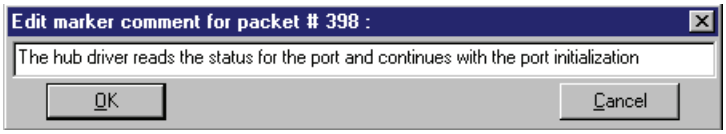
# 5.3 Edit or Clear Marker

To clear or edit the comments associated with a packet marker:

**Step 1** Right-click **Packet #** to display the Packet menu:




**Step 2** To edit the Marker Comment, select **Edit Marker Comment** to display the **Edit marker comment** window. Edit the comment, and then click **OK**:


Edit marker comment for packet # 398 :
The hub driver reads the status for the port and continues with the port initialization
OK
Cancel

**Step 3** To clear a Marker, click **Clear Marker**.

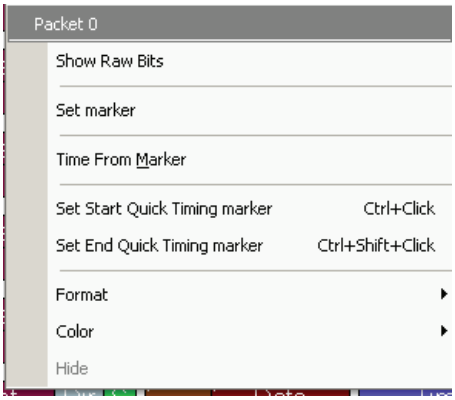
The vertical red Marker bar disappears.

# 5.4 Set or Clear Quick Timing Markers

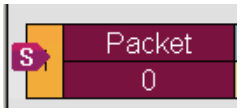
Quick Timing Markers provide immediate time deltas and bandwidth calculations. If the Start is placed on a packet that contains an Address and Endpoint, the bandwidth for that combination displays in the Status Bar below the trace data.

To set or clear quick timing markers:

**Step 1** Right-click **Packet** to display the Packet menu:




**Step 2** To set the start quick timing marker, select **Set Start Quick Timing Marker** to mark the packet with a red **S**.

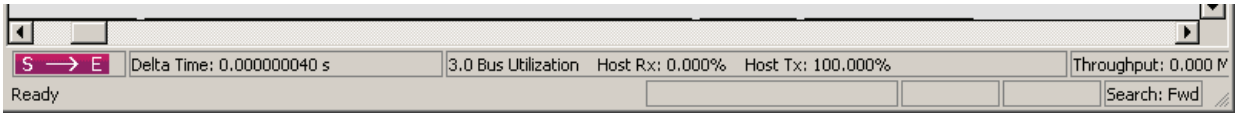



**Step 3** To clear a marker, right-click **Packet** to display the Packet menu, and then click **Clear Quick Timing Marker**.

The red **S** disappears.

**Step 4** To set the end quick timing marker, right-click **Packet** to display the Packet menu, and then select **Set End Quick Timing Marker** to mark the packet with a red **E**.

The time from the start marker appears in the Status Bar as the **Delta Time** from **S -> E**.



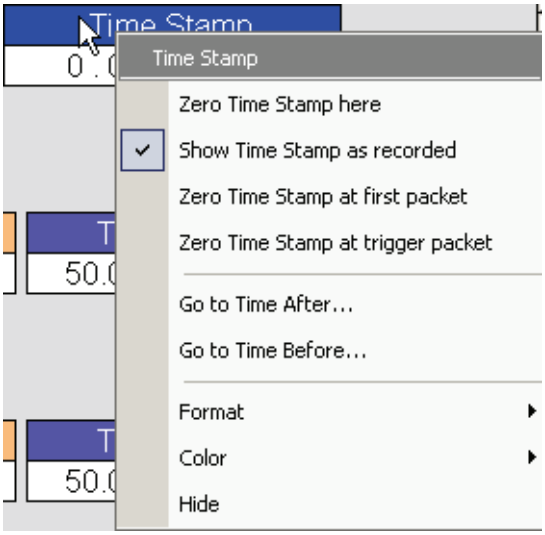
# 5.5 Time Stamp

The Time Stamp field displays the time in “Seconds.Nanoseconds” (decimal).

The Time Stamp is at the beginning of the packet or bus condition. However, the Time Stamp is at the end of Sync for Low and Full Speed packets.

In the General tab of the Display Options, you can set the Time Stamp Position to be **At the end, At the beginning**, or **Merge with Packet/Transaction/Transfer**. See “General Display Options” on page 144.

To change the time stamp, right-click the **Time Stamp** field to display the Time Stamp menu:




You can:

- Place the Zero Time Stamp at this packet
- Show the recorded Time Stamp
- Place the Zero Time Stamp at the first packet
- Place the Zero Time Stamp at the trigger packet.

**Note:** You cannot place the Zero Time Stamp at a packet when in Calendar.

You can also go to the Time After in seconds, or the Time Before in seconds.

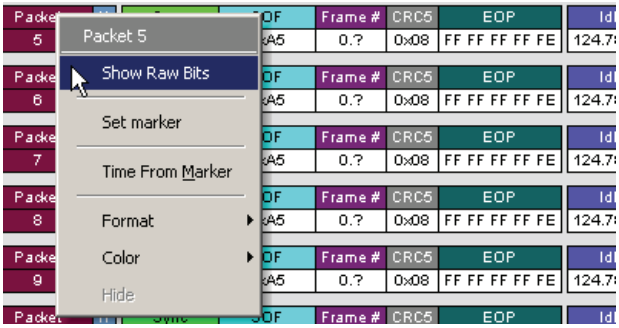
**Note**: Time stamps are corrected to match our more accurate 2.5 ppm clock. After the error due to calculating via 2 ns nominal timing of symbols reaches 8 nsec, the system will correct the next time stamp by using the value obtained from the 2.5 ppm time stamp clock. This can result in “jumps” either forward or backward by this amount of time in captures, and may result in “blank” locations in the Link Tracker view. These should not be construed as mistakes in the traffic, but as a modification necessary for us to provide the most accurate time stamps over the range of a trace.

# 5.6 View Raw Bits (2.0)

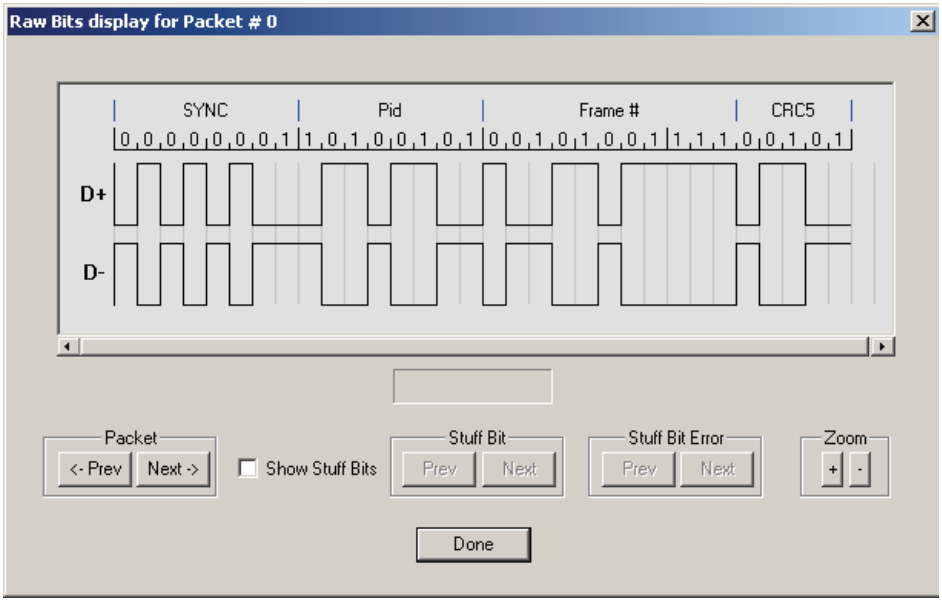
You can expand a specific packet to view the raw bits in detail.

To view raw bits:

**Step 1** Right-click **Packet #** for the packet to view, to display the **Packet** menu:




**Step 2** Select **Show Raw Bits** to display the Raw Bits View for that packet:



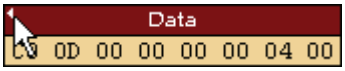

Along the top of the Raw Bits View is a linear strip of the logical bit values with corresponding field demarcations. Bit stuffing is in color. Below the logical bit values is a representation of the D+/D- signaling, complete with NRZ encoding. A scroll bar assists in navigation of larger packets. Use the two buttons under the label **Packet** to view previous or next packets. Two buttons under the label **Zoom** allow you to zoom in or out on packets.

# 5.7 Expanding and Collapsing Data Fields

You can expand a Data field to view it in greater detail or collapse it when you want a more compact view.

## 5.7.1 Using the Expand/Collapse Data Field Arrows

To expand or collapse a Data Field, click the small triangular arrow on the left side of the data field.




## 5.7.2 Double-Clicking to Expand/Collapse Data Fields

You can expand or collapse Data fields by double-clicking anywhere in the data field.

## 5.7.3 Expanding or Collapsing All Data Fields

Expand or collapse all data fields by holding down the button for more than a second.

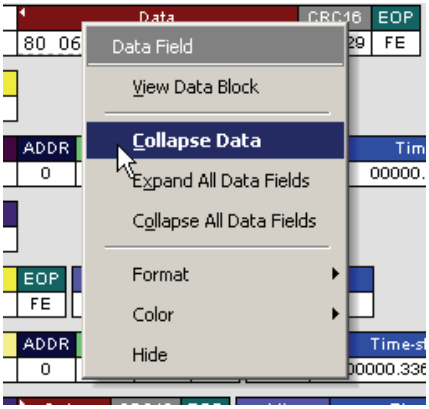
## 5.7.4 Using the Data Field Pop-up Menus

You can expand or collapse data fields by clicking a data field and selecting **Expand Data** or **Collapse Data** from the pop-up menu.

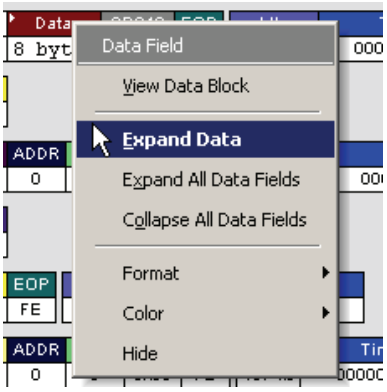
To expand and collapse data using the menu:

**Step 1** Right-click **Data** in the Data packet to expand or collapse to display the Data Field menu.

If your Data Trace View is currently expanded, you see the **Collapse Data** command:




If your Data Trace View is currently collapsed, you see the **Expand Data** command:




**Step 2** Select the **Expand Data** or **Collapse Data** menu item.

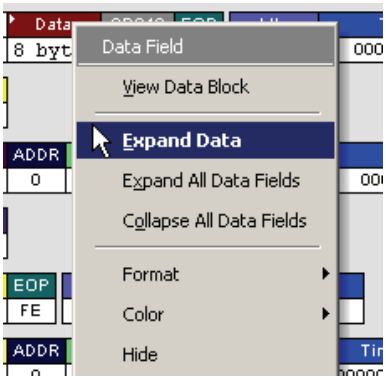
The Trace View repositions, with the selected packet(s) in the format that you specified.

### Expand or Collapse All Data Fields

To expand or collapse all data fields, select **Expand All Data Fields** or **Collapse All Data Fields** from the data field pop-up menus.

# 5.8 Format/Color/Hide Fields

From the field context menu, you can often find Format, Color, and Hide menu selections.




You can change the Format of the cell's value to Hex, Decimal, Binary or ASCII.

You can change the Color of the field header.

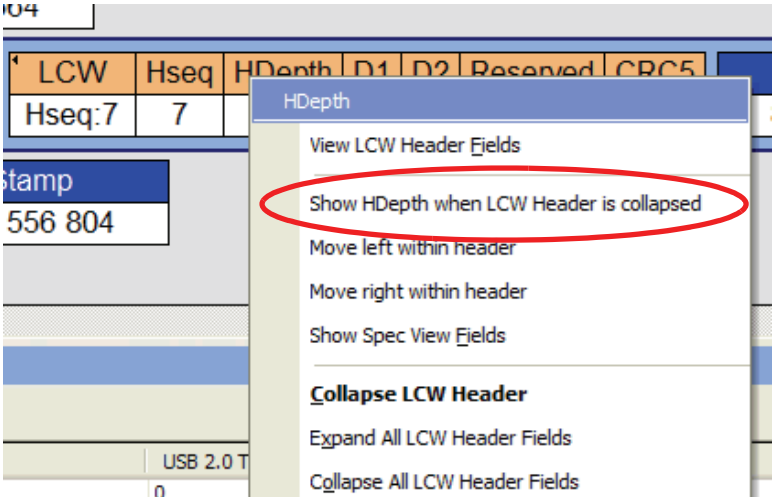
You can Hide ALL instances of the field in the trace, which you can also do in the Display Options dialog (see "Color/Format/Hiding Display Options" on page 146).

To unhide ALL instances of a field, select **View > Unhide cells** and select the field from the list of hidden fields, or right-click in the trace background, select **Unhide cells,** and select the field to unhide from the list. You can also use the Display Options dialog (see "Color/Format/Hiding Display Options" on page 146).

## 5.8.1 Hide/Show Field when Packet Section is Collapsed

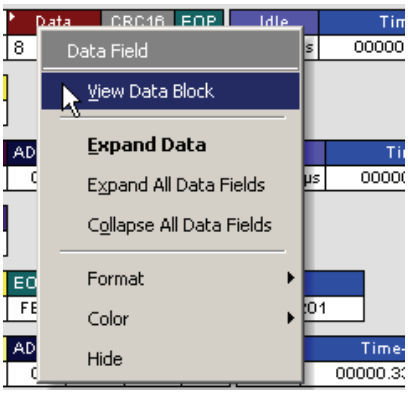
A caret **>** in the upper left of a field shows whether the field is collapsible and expandable (see "Expanding and Collapsing Data Fields" on page 101).

When a field is collapsible/expandable, you can choose whether the field is shown or hidden when its set of fields is in the collapsed state. Thus, you can determine which fields are more critical to view in these two modes. Do NOT confuse this with Hide Fields (see "Format/Color/Hide Fields" above), which hides the field everywhere, without regard to collapse/expand state.



# 5.9 View Data Block

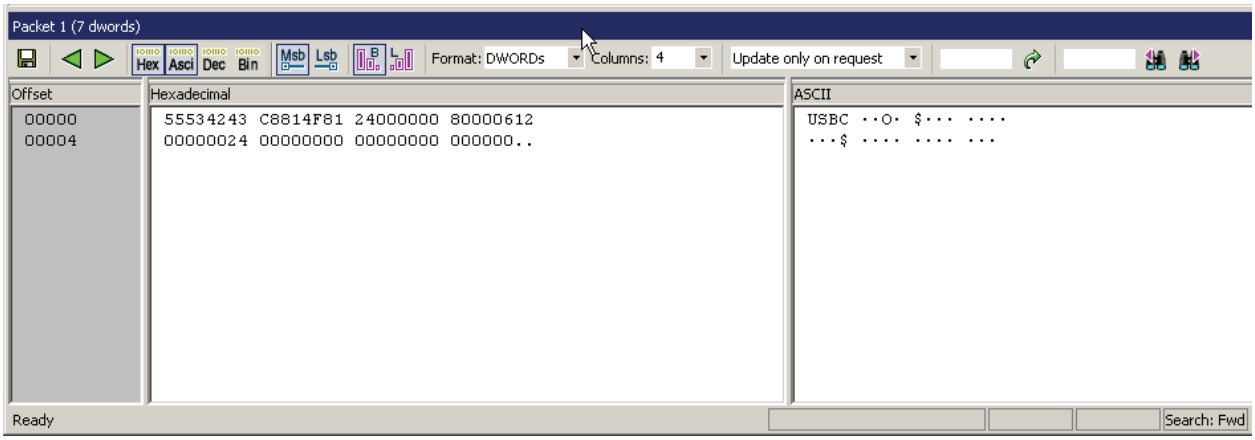
The data field pop-up menu has an option for viewing the raw bits in a data field.




To view these bits:

**Step 1** Click the data field to open the data field pop-up menu.

**Step 2** Select **View Data Block** or the **Data View** button to open the Data Block dialog box.

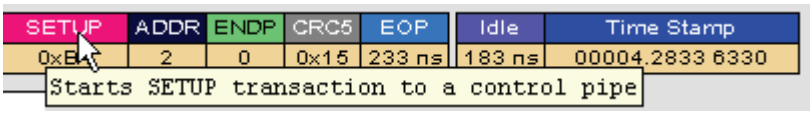



The View Data Block window has options for displaying the raw bits in different formats:

- **Format**: Lets you display data in Hex, Decimal, ASCII or Binary formats
- **Show Per Line**: Lets you control how many bits are displayed per line
- **Bit Order**: Most Significant Bit, Least Significant Bit

# 5.10 Pop-up Tool-tips

Many fields within the trace display pop-up tool-tips when the mouse pointer is suspended over them. These tips provide added details about the field.




# 5.11 Hide SOF Packets (2.0)

You can hide Start-of-Frame (SOF) packets that may be uninteresting in a given context from a Trace View by clicking the Hide SOF Packets button on the Tool Bar:

- Click to hide all SOF packets.

**Note:** This also hides low-speed EOPs.

# 5.12 Hide NAKs

You can hide NAKs that may be uninteresting in a given context from a Trace View by clicking the Hide NAKs button on the Tool Bar:

- Click to hide all NAK packets.

This also hides 3.0 NRDY transactions, if they are virtual equivalents of a 2.0 NAK situation.

# 5.13 Hide Devices

Click the button to open a menu for select any address/endpoint combination to be hidden. Click the Control (CTRL) key to select multiple values. This menu can be moved from its default location and floated in the trace window for later use.

# 5.14 Hide Chirps (2.0)

Click the button to hide any Chirped-J or Chirped-K packets recorded in a USB 2.0 Hi-Speed trace.

# 5.15 Hide Link Commands (Flow Control) (3.0)

Click the button to Hide Link Commands (Flow Control).

## 5.16 Hide ISO Time Stamp Packet (3.0)

Click the button to Hide ISO Time Stamp Packets.

## 5.17 Hide Link Training Sequences (3.0)

Click the button to Hide Link Training Sequences (TS1, TS2, TSEQ).

## 5.18 Hide Inter-Packet Symbols (3.0)

Click the button to Hide Inter-Packet Symbols (unexpected symbols that do not form a legal packet or ordered set).

## 5.19 Hide Logical Idle Packets (3.0)

Click the button to Hide Logical Idle Packets (which only occur when Idle Filtering is Off).

## 5.20 Hide Link Commands (non Flow Control) (3.0)

Click the button to Hide Link Commands (other than Flow Control).

## 5.21 Hide Upstream Packets (3.0)

Click the button to Hide Upstream Packets.

## 5.22 Hide LMP Packets (3.0)

Click the button to Hide LMP Packets.

## 5.23 Hide Downstream Packets (3.0)

Click the button to Hide Downstream Packets.

## 5.24 Hide Electrical Idles (3.0)

Click the to Hide Electrical Idles.

## 5.25 Hide Skip Sequences (3.0)

Click the to Hide Skip Sequences.

## 5.26 Hide LFPS Packets (3.0)

Click the button to Hide LFPS Packets.

## 5.27 Display 2 Only

Click the button to display only USB 2.0 traffic.

## 5.28 Display 3 Only

Click the button to display only USB 3.0 traffic.

# 5.29 Switch to Transactions View

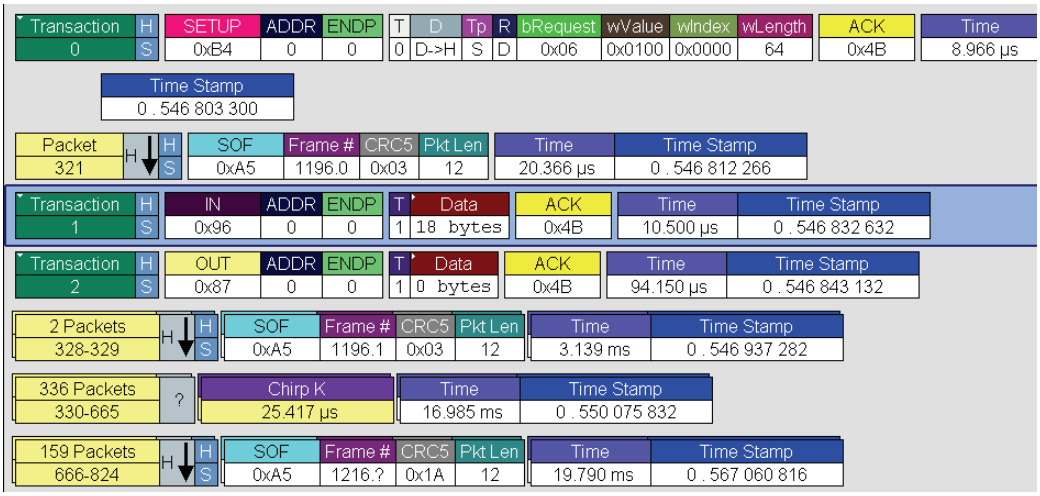
A **Transaction** is defined in the USB specification as the delivery of service to an endpoint. This consists of a token packet, an optional data packet, and an optional handshake packet. The specific packets that make up the transaction vary based upon the transaction type.

The program default display mode is Packet View. Before you can view decoded transactions, you must switch from Packet View to Transactions View.

To select Transactions View:

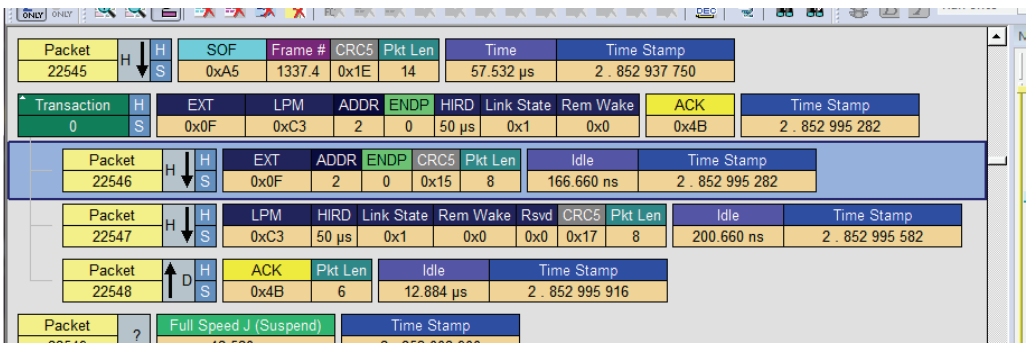
**Step 1** Click on the toolbar.

The Trace View screen is re-drawn to display Transactions.


Transaction 0 SETUP 0xB4 ADDR 0 ENDP 0 T 0 D D->H Tp S R D bRequest 0x06 wValue 0x0100 wIndex 0x0000 wLength 64 ACK 0x4B Time 8.966 µs
Time Stamp 0 . 546 803 300
Packet 321 SOF 0xA5 Frame # 1196.0 CRC5 0x03 Pkt Len 12 Time 20.366 µs Time Stamp 0 . 546 812 266
Transaction 1 IN 0x96 ADDR 0 ENDP 0 T 1 Data 18 bytes ACK 0x4B Time 10.500 µs Time Stamp 0 . 546 832 632
Transaction 2 OUT 0x87 ADDR 0 ENDP 0 T 1 Data 0 bytes ACK 0x4B Time 94.150 µs Time Stamp 0 . 546 843 132
2 Packets 328-329 SOF 0xA5 Frame # 1196.1 CRC5 0x03 Pkt Len 12 Time 3.139 ms Time Stamp 0 . 546 937 282
336 Packets 330-665 Chirp K 25.417 µs Time 16.985 ms Time Stamp 0 . 550 075 832
159 Packets 666-824 SOF 0xA5 Frame # 1216.? CRC5 0x1A Pkt Len 12 Time 19.790 ms Time Stamp 0 . 567 060 816

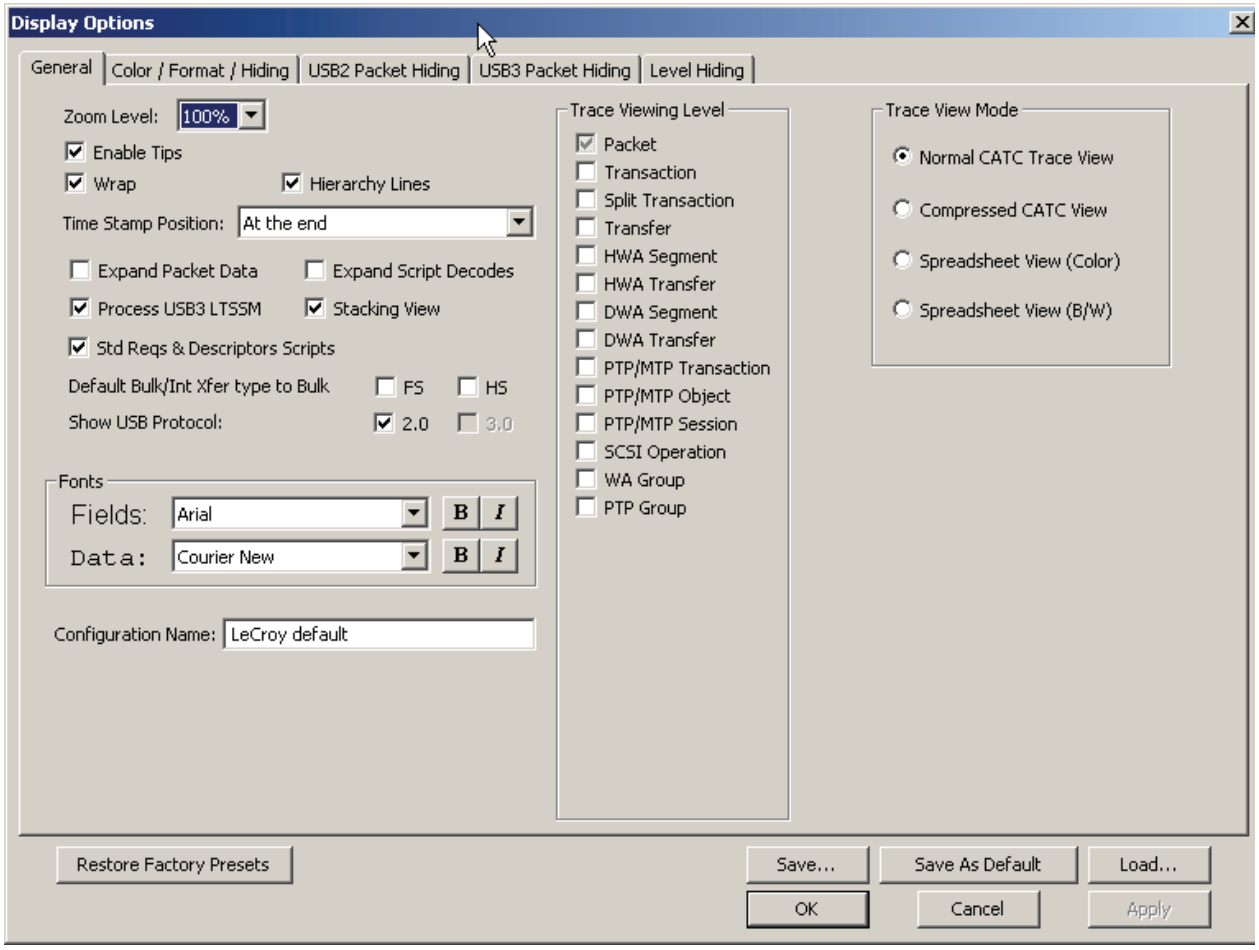
**Note:** This menu selection displays a check next to **Transaction Level** when you have selected it**.** When you want to switch back to Packet View mode, right-click anywhere in the trace window and then left-click **Transaction Level**.

**Note:** This view also shows Extension Transactions, such as the Link Power Management (LPM) transaction defined by the USB 2.0 LPM specification, as shown below.


Packet 22545 SOF 0xA5 Frame # 1337.4 CRC5 0x1E Pkt Len 14 Time 57.532 µs Time Stamp 2 . 852 937 750
Transaction 0 EXT 0x0F LPM 0xC3 ADDR 2 ENDP 0 HIRD 50 µs Link State 0x1 Rem Wake 0x0 ACK 0x4B Time Stamp 2 . 852 995 282
Packet 22546 EXT 0x0F ADDR 2 ENDP 0 CRC5 0x15 Pkt Len 8 Idle 166.660 ns Time Stamp 2 . 852 995 282
Packet 22547 LPM 0xC3 HIRD 50 µs Link State 0x1 Rem Wake 0x0 Rsvd 0x0 CRC5 0x17 Pkt Len 8 Idle 200.660 ns Time Stamp 2 . 852 995 582
Packet 22548 ACK 0x4B Pkt Len 6 Idle 12.884 µs Time Stamp 2 . 852 995 916
Packet Full Speed J (Suspend) Time Stamp

You can also switch to Transaction View from the Menu Bar:

**Step 1** Select **Display Options** under Setup to display the Display Options General window.

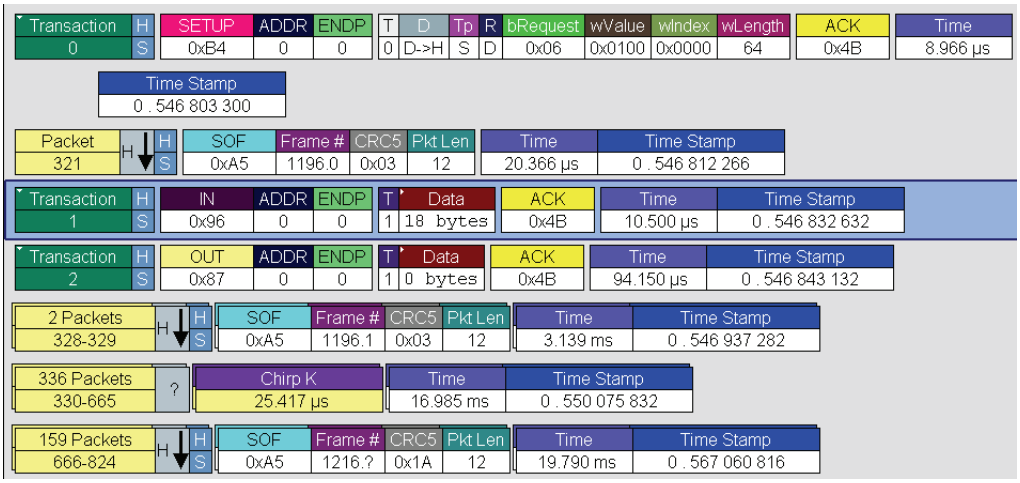



**Step 2** Check **Transaction.**

**Step 3** Click **OK.**

# 5.30 View Decoded Transactions

After you set Display Options, the Trace View screen is re-drawn to display decoded transactions in the colors and format you selected.




When you instruct the Analyzer to display USB transactions, the components of each transaction are collected from the current recording and are grouped and indented below each decoded transaction. Each row shows a transaction with a unique numeration, a label, and color-coded decoding of important data.

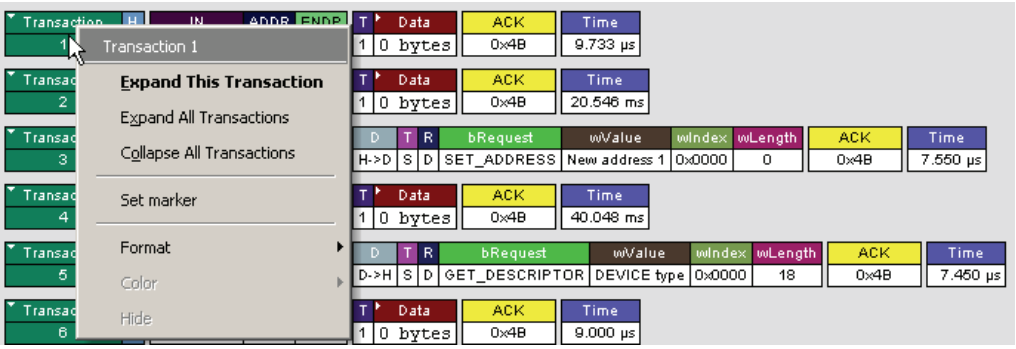
**Note**: If CRC errors are found in a DATAx (2.0) packet or a DP (3.0) packet, the data in that packet will not be promoted to the Transaction, Transfer/, and so on, levels above, since it is assumed that the data will be re-sent. The data count will show as 0 Bytes.

## 5.30.1 Expanded and Collapsed Transactions

You can expand a specific transaction to view its parts, which are grouped and indented below the transaction.

To expand a transaction:

**Step 1** Right-click the transaction number you wish to view to display the Expand Transaction menu:




**Step 2** Select **Expand This Transaction**.

The screen displays the selected transaction in expanded format.

**Note:** The Expand/Collapse transaction feature operates as a toggle: when one format is active, the other appears as an option on the Expand/Collapse drop-down menu.

To collapse a transaction, perform the same operation and select **Collapse This Transaction**.

Note that you can choose to expand or collapse

- **Only** the selected Transaction

  OR

- **All** Transactions

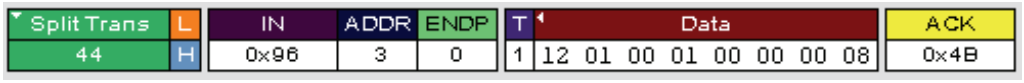
It is not necessary to use the Expand/Collapse Transactions menu to shift between expanded and collapsed views of a transaction. You can double-click the **Transaction number field** to toggle back and forth between collapsed and expanded views.

# 5.31 Switch to Split Transaction View

To select Split Transaction View:

**Step 1** Click the button on the toolbar.

The Trace View screen is re-drawn to display Split Transactions.




You can also switch to Split Transactions View from the Menu Bar:

**Step 1** Select **Display Options** under Setup.

You see the Display Options General window:

**Step 2** Check **Split Transaction.**

# 5.32 Switch to Transfer View

A **Transfer** is defined in the USB specification as one or more transactions between a software client and its function. USB transfers can be one of four kinds: Control, Interrupt, Bulk, and Isochronous. The system can display all four types.

The default display mode is Packet View. Before you can view decoded transfers, you must switch from Packet View (or Transaction View) to Transfer View.

To select Transfer View:

**Step 1** Click on the toolbar.

The Trace View screen is re-drawn to display Transfers.

**Note:** Selecting **Transfer Level** adds a check next to this menu item. If you want to return to Packet View, open the menu and reselect **Transfer Level**. This action removes the check and returns the display to Packet View.

You can also switch to Transfer View from the Menu Bar:

**Step 1** Select **Display Options** under Setup to display the Display Options General window:

**Step 2** Check **Transfer.**

**Step 3** Click **OK.**

# 5.33 View Decoded Transfers

After you set Display Options, the Trace View screen is re-drawn to display decoded transfers in the colors and format you selected.

Transfer 1 H S | Control GET | ADDR 1 | ENDP 0 | bRequest GET_DESCRIPTOR | wValue CONFIGURATION type | wIndex 0x0000 | Descriptors 23 descriptors
Transaction 3 | SETUP 0xB4 | ADDR 1 | ENDP 0 | D D->H | T S | R D | bRequest GET_DESCRIPTOR | wValue CONFIGURATION type | wIndex 0x0000 | wLength 171
Packet 16495 | SETUP 0xB4 | ADDR 1 | ENDP 0 | CRC5 0x17 | Pkt Len 8 | Idle 200 ns | Time Stamp 00002.0675 1688
Packet 16496 | DATA0 0xC3 | Data 80 06 00 02 00 00 AB 00 | CRC16 0xEB26 | Pkt Len 16 | Idle 233 ns | Time Stamp 00002.0675 1708
Packet 16497 | ACK 0x4B | Pkt Len 6 | Time 7.167 µs | Time Stamp 00002.0675 1738
Transaction 4 | IN 0x96 | ADDR 1 | ENDP 0 | T 1 | Data 64 bytes | ACK 0x4B | Time 7.600 µs
Transaction 5 | IN 0x96 | ADDR 1 | ENDP 0 | T 0 | Data 64 bytes | ACK 0x4B | Time 7.500 µs
Transaction 6 | IN 0x96 | ADDR 1 | ENDP 0 | T 1 | Data 43 bytes | ACK 0x4B | Time 9.733 µs
Transaction 7 | OUT 0x87 | ADDR 1 | ENDP 0 | T 1 | Data | ACK 0x4B | Time 525.027 ms
Transfer 2 | Control GET | ADDR 1 | ENDP 0 | bRequest GET_DESCRIPTOR | wValue DEVICE type | wIndex 0x0000 | Descriptors DEVICE descriptor | Time 1.224 sec
Transfer 3 | Control GET | ADDR 1 | ENDP 0 | bRequest GET_DESCRIPTOR | wValue STRING type, Index 1 | wIndex Language ID 0x001B | Descriptors

When you instruct the Analyzer to display USB transfers, the components of each transfer are collected from the current recording and are grouped below each decoded transfer. Each transfer row shows a transfer with a unique numeration, a label, and color-coded decoding of important data.

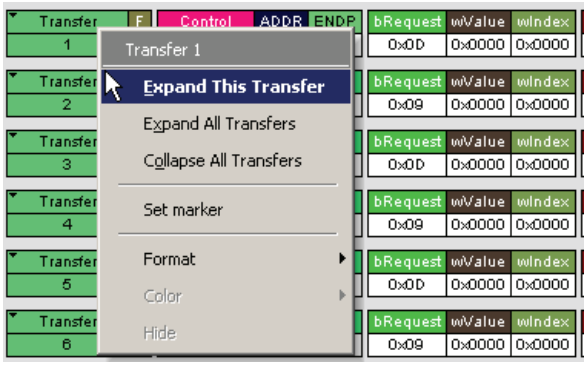
**Note**: If CRC errors are found in a DATAx (2.0) packet or a DP (3.0) packet, the data in that packet will not be promoted to the Transaction, Transfer, and so on, levels above, since it is assumed that the data will be re-sent. The data count will show as 0 Bytes.

## 5.33.1 Expanded and Collapsed Transfers

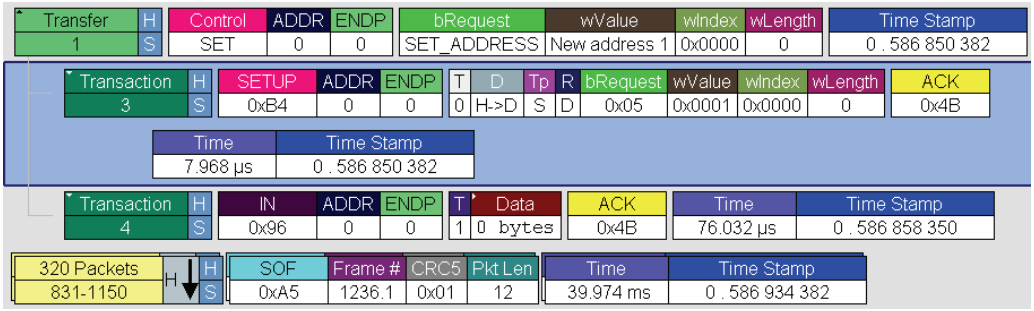
You can expand a specific transfer to view its parts, which are grouped and indented below the transfer.

To expand a transfer:

**Step 1** Right-click the transfer number you wish to view to display the Expand Transfer menu:




**Step 2** Select **Expand This USB Transfer** to display the selected transfer in expanded format.




**Note:** The Expand/Collapse transfer feature operates as a toggle: when one format is active, the other appears as an option on the Expand/Collapse drop-down menu.

To collapse a transfer, perform the same operation and select **Collapse This USB Transfer**.

Note that you can choose to expand or collapse

- **Only** the selected Transfer
  OR
- **All** Transfers

It is not necessary to use the **Expand/Collapse Transfers** menu to shift between expanded and collapsed views of a transfers. You can double-click the **Transfer number field** to toggle back and forth between collapsed and expanded views.

# 5.34 Decoding Protocol-Specific Fields in Transactions and Transfers

When transfers or transactions are displayed, the fields in setup transactions and in control, interrupt, and Bulk transfers do not get decoded (by default) and are shown in hexadecimal values. The exceptions are setup transactions and control transfers for standard USB device requests, which are always decoded.

To show specific decoding for class- and vendor-specific device requests and endpoints, you have to use the decoding association mechanism that is described in Chapter 9 on decoding. When you have performed the association, you see the protocol-specific fields of transfers and transactions decoded in the trace view.

# 5.35 Switch to Host Wire Adapter Segment View

A **Host Wire Adapter Segment** is one or more transfers between a PC and a host wire adapter. To view host wire adapter segments, switch to the Host Wire Adapter Segment trace viewing level.

To select the Host Wire Adapter Segment trace viewing level:

- Click

on the toolbar.
OR
- Select **View > HWA Segment Level**.
OR
- Select **Setup > Display Options** to display the Display Options window, check **HWA Segment**, and then click **OK.**

# 5.36 Switch to Host Wire Adapter Transfer View

A **Host Wire Adapter Transfer** is one or more wire adapter segments or one or more transfers between a PC and a host wire adapter. To view host wire adapter transfers, switch to the Host Wire Adapter Transfer trace viewing level.

To select the Host Wire Adapter Transfer trace viewing level:

- Click

on the toolbar.
OR
- Select **View > HWA Transfer Level**.
OR
- Select **Setup > Display Options** to display the Display Options window, check **HWA Transfer**, and then click **OK.**

# 5.37 Switch to Device Wire Adapter Segment View

A **Device Wire Adapter Segment** is one or more transfers between a PC and a device wire adapter. To view device wire adapter segments, switch to the Device Wire Adapter Segment trace viewing level.

To select the Device Wire Adapter Segment trace viewing level:

- Click

on the toolbar.
OR
- Select **View > DWA Segment Level**.
OR
- Select **Setup > Display Options** to display the Display Options window, check **DWA Segment**, and then click **OK.**

# 5.38 Switch to Device Wire Adapter Transfer View

A **Device Wire Adapter Transfer** is one or more wire adapter segments or one or more transfers between a PC and a device wire adapter. To view device wire adapter transfers, switch to the Device Wire Adapter Transfer trace viewing level.

To select the Device Wire Adapter Transfer trace viewing level:

- Click

on the toolbar.
OR
- Select **View > DWA Transfer Level**.
OR
- Select **Setup > Display Options** to display the Display Options window, check **DWA Transfer**, and then click **OK.**

# 5.39 Switch to PTP Transactions

The Analyzer supports the Picture Transfer Protocol (PTP) and also supports the Media Transfer Protocol (MTP), which is an extension of PTP. The Analyzer can track PTP transactions, object transfers, and sessions.

A **transaction** is a standard sequence of phases for invoking an action. In PTP, an Initiator-initiated action provides input parameters, responses with parameters, and binary data exchange, and is a single **PTP Transaction**. Also, a single Asynchronous Event sent through the interrupt pipe is a single PTP Transaction.

The PTP Transaction trace viewing level is the lowest PTP level.

To view PTP transactions, switch to the PTP Transaction trace viewing level:

- Click on the toolbar.
  OR
- Select **View > PTP Transaction Level**.
  OR
- Select **Setup > Display Options** to display the Display Options window, check **PTP Transaction**, and then click **OK.**

# 5.40 Switch to PTP Object Transfers

A logical object on a device has a unique 32-bit identifier (**object handle**). The object handle is also unique for the session (defined below). An **object transfer** contains all the transactions for an object handle. In PTP, all of an object handle's PTP Transactions are a single **PTP Object Transfer**.

A PTP Object Transfer can include both PTP Transactions that involve an Initiator-initiated action (for example, **GetObject**, **DeleteObject**, and **GetObjectInfo** transactions) and PTP Transactions that involve a single Asynchronous Event sent through the interrupt pipe.

The PTP Object Transfer trace viewing level is the middle PTP level.

To view PTP object transfers, switch to the PTP Object Transfer trace viewing level:

- Click on the toolbar.
  OR
- Select **View > PTP Object Level**.
  OR
- Select **Setup > Display Options** to display the Display Options window, check **PTP Object**, and then click **OK.**

# 5.41 Switch to PTP Sessions

A **session** is a state of persisting communication between a device and a host during which the connection is continuous and the login and other communication parameters do not change. A session begins with an **OpenSession** operation, which establishes the communications connection and parameters, and ends with a **CloseSession** operation.

A session contains all object transfers (and their transactions), plus all transactions that do not belong to object transfers, between an OpenSession operation and a CloseSession operation. For PTP, all PTP Object Transfers and all PTP Transactions that occur from the OpenSession operation to the CloseSession operation is a single **PTP Session**.

The PTP Session trace viewing level is the highest PTP level.

To view PTP sessions, switch to the PTP Session trace viewing level:

- Click

on the toolbar.
OR
- Select **View > PTP Session Level**.
OR
- Select **Setup > Display Options** to display the Display Options window, check **PTP Session**, and then click **OK.**

# 5.42 Switch to SCSI Operations

To view SCSI operations, switch to SCSI Operations viewing level:

- Click

on the toolbar.
OR
- Select **View > SCSI Operation Level**.
OR
- Select **Setup > Display Options** to display the Display Options window, check **SCSI Operation**, and then click **OK.**

## 5.42.1 SCSI Metrics

The SCSI Metrics are:

- Address
- **Number Of Transfers**: Total number of transfers that compose the SCSI operation
- **Response Time**: Time to transmit on the USB link, from the beginning of the first transfer in the SCSI operation to the end of the last transfer in the SCSI operation
- **Latency**: Time from the transmission of the SCSI command to the first data transmitted for the SCSI IO operation
- **Data To Status Time**: Time between the end of data transmission for the SCSI operation and the status transfer
- **Payload**: Number of payload bytes transferred by the SCSI operation

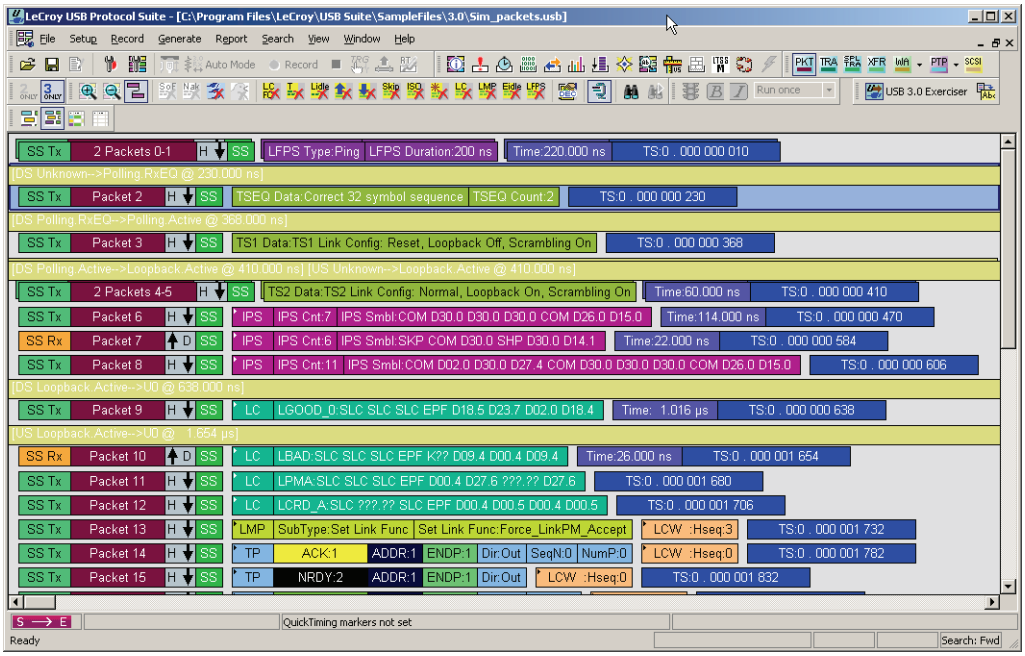
# 5.43 Compressed CATC Trace View

The Compressed CATC Trace view shows fields in the format “Attribute : Value”, whereas the normal CATC View shows the attribute name on top and the value below.

The Compressed CATC Trace view has almost all the information of the normal CATC View and behaves mostly the same way, while displaying more information on each window.

To can compress the CATC Trace:

- Click on the toolbar.
  OR
- Select **Trace Views > Compressed CATC Trace.**

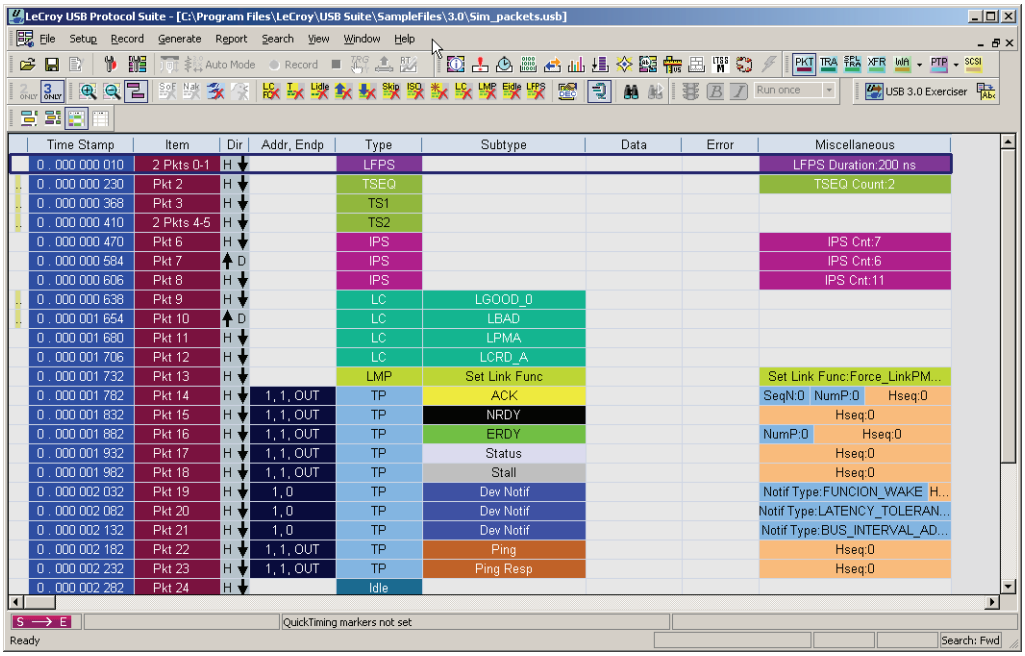

LeCroy USB Protocol Suite - [C:\Program Files\LeCroy\USB Suite\SampleFiles\3.0\Sim_packets.usb]
File Setup Record Generate Report Search View Window Help
USB 3.0 Exerciser
SS Tx 2 Packets 0-1 H SS LFPS Type:Ping LFPS Duration:200 ns Time:220.000 ns TS:0 . 000 000 010
[DS Unknown-->Polling.RxEQ @ 230.000 ns]
SS Tx Packet 2 H SS TSEQ Data:Correct 32 symbol sequence TSEQ Count:2 TS:0 . 000 000 230
[DS Polling.RxEQ-->Polling.Active @ 368.000 ns]
SS Tx Packet 3 H SS TS1 Data:TS1 Link Config: Reset, Loopback Off, Scrambling On TS:0 . 000 000 368
[DS Polling.Active-->Loopback.Active @ 410.000 ns] [US Unknown-->Loopback.Active @ 410.000 ns]
SS Tx 2 Packets 4-5 H SS TS2 Data:TS2 Link Config: Normal, Loopback On, Scrambling On Time:60.000 ns TS:0 . 000 000 410
SS Tx Packet 6 H SS IPS IPS Cnt:7 IPS Smbl:COM D30.0 D30.0 D30.0 COM D26.0 D15.0 Time:114.000 ns TS:0 . 000 000 470
SS Rx Packet 7 D SS IPS IPS Cnt:6 IPS Smbl:SKP COM D30.0 SHP D30.0 D14.1 Time:22.000 ns TS:0 . 000 000 584
SS Tx Packet 8 H SS IPS IPS Cnt:11 IPS Smbl:COM D02.0 D30.0 D27.4 COM D30.0 D30.0 D30.0 COM D26.0 D15.0 TS:0 . 000 000 606
[DS Loopback.Active-->U0 @ 638.000 ns]
SS Tx Packet 9 H SS LC LGOOD_0:SLC SLC SLC EPF D18.5 D23.7 D02.0 D18.4 Time: 1.016 µs TS:0 . 000 000 638
[US Loopback.Active-->U0 @ 1.654 µs]
SS Rx Packet 10 D SS LC LBAD:SLC SLC SLC EPF K?? D09.4 D00.4 D09.4 Time:26.000 ns TS:0 . 000 001 654
SS Tx Packet 11 H SS LC LPMA:SLC SLC SLC EPF D00.4 D27.6 ??? ?? D27.6 TS:0 . 000 001 680
SS Tx Packet 12 H SS LC LCRD_A:SLC ??? ?? SLC EPF D00.4 D00.5 D00.4 D00.5 TS:0 . 000 001 706
SS Tx Packet 13 H SS LMP SubType:Set Link Func Set Link Func:Force_LinkPM_Accept LCW :Hseq:3 TS:0 . 000 001 732
SS Tx Packet 14 H SS TP ACK:1 ADDR:1 ENDP:1 Dir:Out SeqN:0 NumP:0 LCW :Hseq:0 TS:0 . 000 001 782
SS Tx Packet 15 H SS TP NRDY:2 ADDR:1 ENDP:1 Dir:Out LCW :Hseq:0 TS:0 . 000 001 832
S → E
QuickTiming markers not set
Ready
Search: Fwd

- Click on the toolbar to return to the normal CATC Trace View, or Select **Trace Views > CATC Trace.**

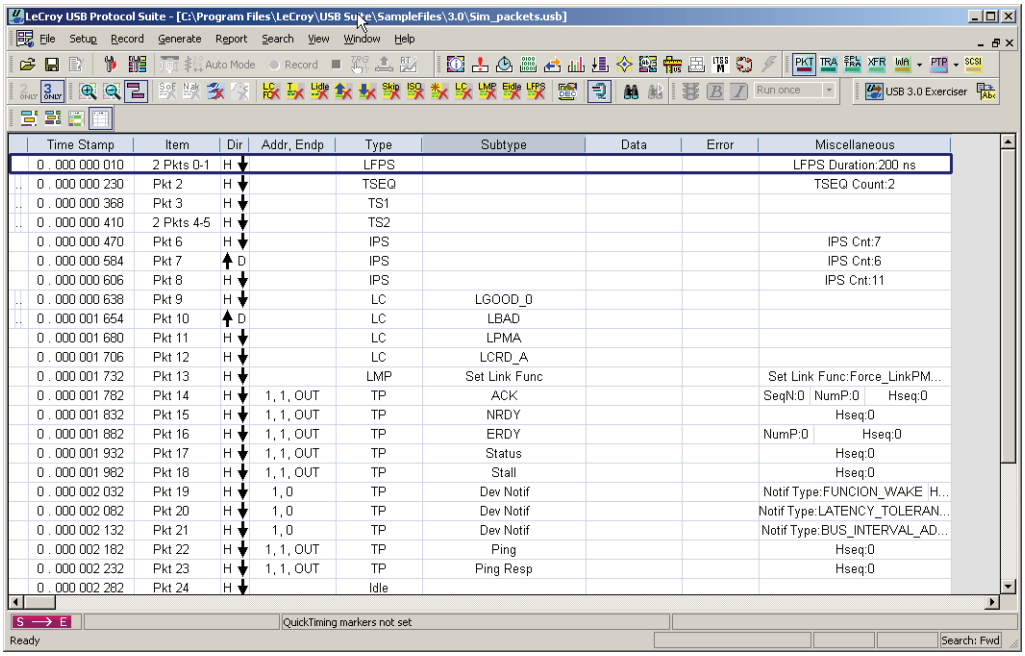
# 5.44 Spreadsheet View

You can view the CATC Trace as a spreadsheet in color or black and white.

- Click on the toolbar, or
- Select **Trace Views > Spreadsheet (Color)**.


LeCroy USB Protocol Suite - [C:\Program Files\LeCroy\USB Suite\SampleFiles\3.0\Sim_packets.usb]
File Setup Record Generate Report Search View Window Help
Time Stamp Item Dir Addr, Endp Type Subtype Data Error Miscellaneous
0 . 000 000 010 2 Pkts 0-1 H LFPS LFPS Duration:200 ns
0 . 000 000 230 Pkt 2 H TSEQ TSEQ Count:2
0 . 000 000 368 Pkt 3 H TS1
0 . 000 000 410 2 Pkts 4-5 H TS2
0 . 000 000 470 Pkt 6 H IPS IPS Cnt:7
0 . 000 000 584 Pkt 7 D IPS IPS Cnt:6
0 . 000 000 606 Pkt 8 H IPS IPS Cnt:11
0 . 000 000 638 Pkt 9 H LC LGOOD_0
0 . 000 001 654 Pkt 10 D LC LBAD
0 . 000 001 680 Pkt 11 H LC LPMA
0 . 000 001 706 Pkt 12 H LC LCRD_A
0 . 000 001 732 Pkt 13 H LMP Set Link Func Set Link Func:Force_LinkPM...
0 . 000 001 782 Pkt 14 H 1, 1, OUT TP ACK SeqN:0 NumP:0 Hseq:0
0 . 000 001 832 Pkt 15 H 1, 1, OUT TP NRDY Hseq:0
0 . 000 001 882 Pkt 16 H 1, 1, OUT TP ERDY NumP:0 Hseq:0
0 . 000 001 932 Pkt 17 H 1, 1, OUT TP Status Hseq:0
0 . 000 001 982 Pkt 18 H 1, 1, OUT TP Stall Hseq:0
0 . 000 002 032 Pkt 19 H 1, 0 TP Dev Notif Notif Type:FUNCION_WAKE H...
0 . 000 002 082 Pkt 20 H 1, 0 TP Dev Notif Notif Type:LATENCY_TOLERAN...
0 . 000 002 132 Pkt 21 H 1, 0 TP Dev Notif Notif Type:BUS_INTERVAL_AD...
0 . 000 002 182 Pkt 22 H 1, 1, OUT TP Ping Hseq:0
0 . 000 002 232 Pkt 23 H 1, 1, OUT TP Ping Resp Hseq:0
0 . 000 002 282 Pkt 24 H Idle
QuickTiming markers not set
Ready
Search: Fwd

- Click on the toolbar, or
- Select **Trace Views > Spreadsheet (B/W)**.


LeCroy USB Protocol Suite - [C:\Program Files\LeCroy\USB Suite\SampleFiles\3.0\Sim_packets.usb]
File Setup Record Generate Report Search View Window Help
Time Stamp Item Dir Addr, Endp Type Subtype Data Error Miscellaneous
0 . 000 000 010 2 Pkts 0-1 H LFPS LFPS Duration:200 ns
0 . 000 000 230 Pkt 2 H TSEQ TSEQ Count:2
0 . 000 000 368 Pkt 3 H TS1
0 . 000 000 410 2 Pkts 4-5 H TS2
0 . 000 000 470 Pkt 6 H IPS IPS Cnt:7
0 . 000 000 584 Pkt 7 D IPS IPS Cnt:6
0 . 000 000 606 Pkt 8 H IPS IPS Cnt:11
0 . 000 000 638 Pkt 9 H LC LGOOD_0
0 . 000 001 654 Pkt 10 D LC LBAD
0 . 000 001 680 Pkt 11 H LC LPMA
0 . 000 001 706 Pkt 12 H LC LCRD_A
0 . 000 001 732 Pkt 13 H LMP Set Link Func Set Link Func:Force_LinkPM...
0 . 000 001 782 Pkt 14 H 1, 1, OUT TP ACK SeqN:0 NumP:0 Hseq:0
0 . 000 001 832 Pkt 15 H 1, 1, OUT TP NRDY Hseq:0
0 . 000 001 882 Pkt 16 H 1, 1, OUT TP ERDY NumP:0 Hseq:0
0 . 000 001 932 Pkt 17 H 1, 1, OUT TP Status Hseq:0
0 . 000 001 982 Pkt 18 H 1, 1, OUT TP Stall Hseq:0
0 . 000 002 032 Pkt 19 H 1, 0 TP Dev Notif Notif Type:FUNCION_WAKE H...
0 . 000 002 082 Pkt 20 H 1, 0 TP Dev Notif Notif Type:LATENCY_TOLERAN...
0 . 000 002 132 Pkt 21 H 1, 0 TP Dev Notif Notif Type:BUS_INTERVAL_AD...
0 . 000 002 182 Pkt 22 H 1, 1, OUT TP Ping Hseq:0
0 . 000 002 232 Pkt 23 H 1, 1, OUT TP Ping Resp Hseq:0
0 . 000 002 282 Pkt 24 H Idle
QuickTiming markers not set
Ready
Search: Fwd

## 5.44.1 Columns

To add a column, right-click a column header, select **Add Column,** and then select the column name. You can also add a column by dragging the attribute field (in the left column) from the Detail View into the Spreadsheet View.

To delete a column, right-click a column header and then select **Remove Column**.

To reposition a column, drag the column header to the new position.

To resize columns, select the column divider and drag the divider to the right or left.

## 5.44.2 Rows

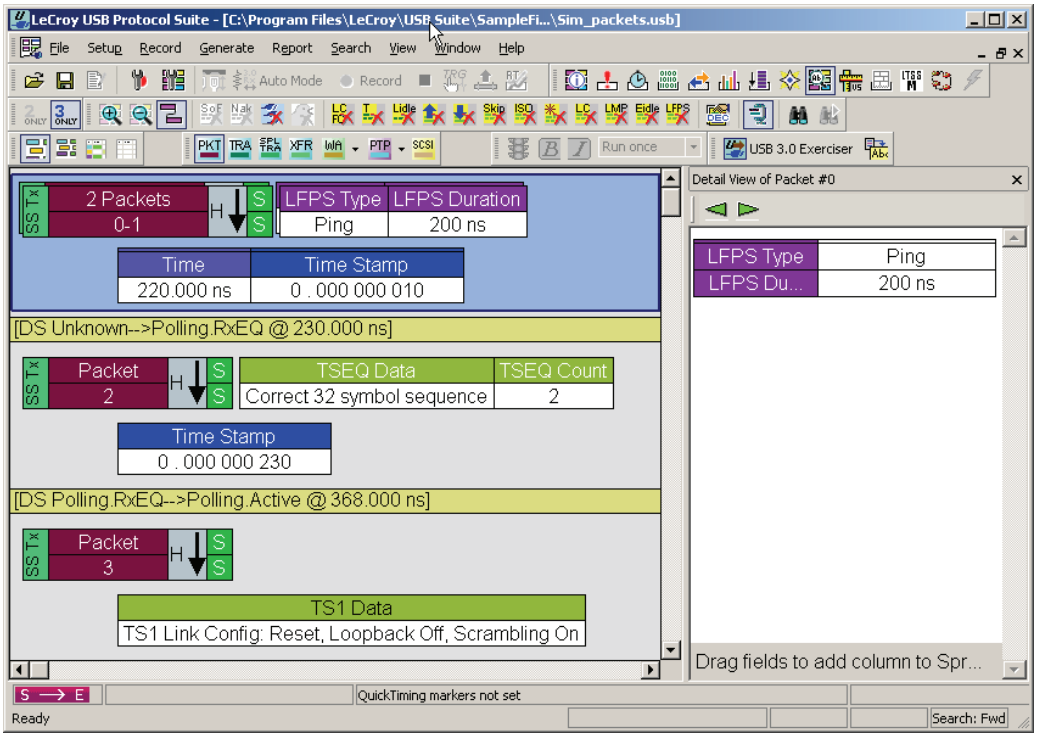
To manipulate rows, right-click the left-most column gray area to display the following commands:

| | |
|---|---|
| Display Options | Opens the Display Options menu (see “Display Options” on page 143). |
| Real-time Statistics | Allows you to view traffic statistics as they occur. See “Real Time Monitoring” on page 217. |
| Trace Views | Displays CATC Trace, Compressed CATC Trace, Spreadsheet (Color), or Spreadsheet (B/W). |
| Unhide cells | Unhide Filtered Traffic, Unhide VBus Power, or Unhide ALL |
| Zoom In | Increases the size of the displayed elements. |
| Zoom Out | Decreases the size of the displayed elements. |
| Wrap | Wraps displayed packets within the window. |
| Show USB 2 Traffic Only | Displays only USB 2.0 traffic. |
| Show USB 3 Traffic Only | Displays only USB 3.0 traffic. |
| Hiding USB 2 Traffic | Hides.<br>• SOF’s: Start of Frames<br>• NAK’s: NAK’ed Transactions<br>• Devices: Packets belonging to specified devices by address and endpoint<br>• Chirps: Chirp-K and Chirp-J Bus conditions (these are recorded only) |

| | |
|---|---|
| Hiding USB 3 Traffic | Hides:<br>• Link Commands (Flow Control)<br>• Link Training Sequences (TS1, TS2, TSEQ)<br>• Logical Idle Packets<br>• Upstream Packets<br>• Downstream Packets<br>• Skip Sequences<br>• ISO Time Stamp Packets<br>• Inter-Packet Symbols<br>• Link Commands (Other than Flow Control)<br>• LMP Packets<br>• Electrical Idles<br>• LFPS Packets<br>• LTSSM Transition Indicators |
| View Layers Mode | Display All Layers, Application Layers, or Lower USB Layers. |
| Stacking View | Puts a group of packets in one row, to shorten display. |
| Apply Decoding Scripts | Decoding scripts set the values of the display and recording options for optimum views of trace information from specific vendors or classes of data. This menu option allows you to select the vendor or class of data for the request recipients and endpoints listed in the Request Recipients and Endpoints menu. You can keep the settings across recordings.<br>See “Decode Requests” on page 155. |
| Packet Level | Displays Packets. |
| Transaction Level | Displays Transactions. |
| Split Transaction Level | Displays Split Transactions. |
| Transfer Level | Displays Transfers. |
| WA Group | **HWA Segment Level** displays Host Wire Adapter Segments.<br>**HWA Transfer Level** displays Host Wire Adapter Transfers.<br>**DWA Segment Level** displays Device Wire Adapter Segments.<br>**DWA Transfer Level** displays Device Wire Adapter Transfers. |
| PTP Group | **PTP Transaction Level** displays PTP Transactions<br>**PTP Object Transfer Level** displays PTP Objects<br>**PTP Session Level** displays PTP Sessions |
| SCSI Operation Level | Displays SCSI Operation Level |
| Refresh Decoding | Forces the software to re-decode transactions and transfers. Useful if you have applied a decoding mapping which helps fully decode a sequence of transfers, as is the case with Mass Storage decoding. |

## 5.44.3 Detail View and Spreadsheet View

In the Spreadsheet View, double-click a packet, transaction, or transfer, or select a field and then select **Report > Detail View** or click or on the toolbar, to display the Detail View.



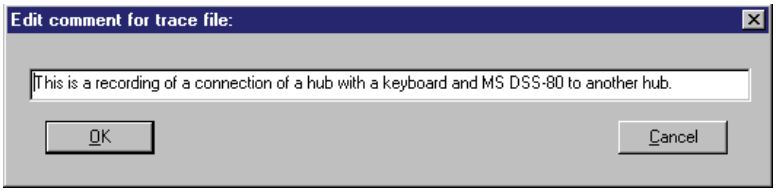

To put a Detail View header in the Spreadsheet View, drag the header to a column divider in the Spreadsheet View.

# 5.45 Edit Comment

You can create, view, or edit the 100-character comment field associated with each Trace file. These comments are visible in the Windows® Explorer if the Comments attribute is included in the Details view.

**Step 1** Select **Edit Comment** under **File** on the Menu Bar.

You see the **Edit comment for trace file** window:


Edit comment for trace file:
This is a recording of a connection of a hub with a keyboard and MS DSS-80 to another hub.
OK
Cancel

**Step 2** Create, view, or edit the comment.

**Step 3** Click **OK**.

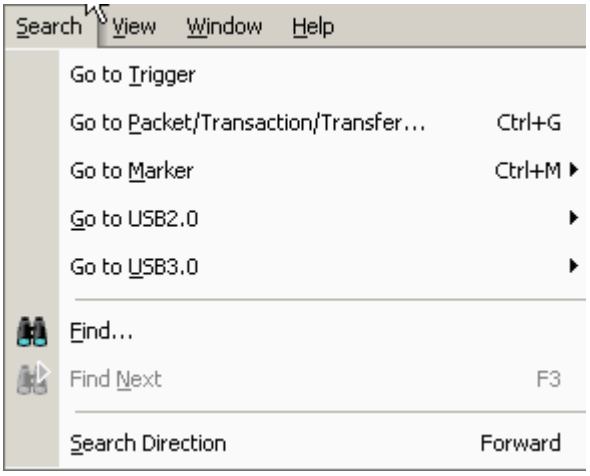
You can view comments in Windows Explorer by selecting the Comments attribute.

# Chapter 6: Searching Traces

The Search feature provides several options for searching through recorded traffic, allowing you to find specific packets based on triggering status, packet number, marking, or content.

To view the Search options:

- Click **Search** in the Menu bar to display the Search drop-down menu:




## 6.1 Go to Trigger

**Note:** **Go to Trigger** is enabled only when a trigger has created the traffic file.

To display a Trigger Event:

- Select **Go to Trigger** under **Search** on the Menu Bar.

The Trace View is repositioned to the first packet following the Trigger event. This packet is at the top of the screen.

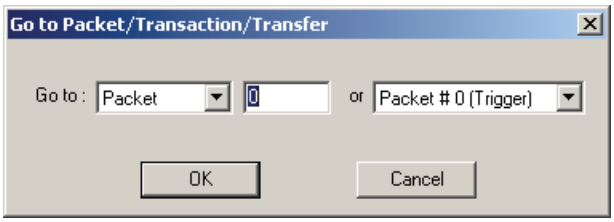
The resulting item will be shown as selected in the view.

Packet Selection works with Go to Trigger.

# 6.2 Go to Packet/Transaction/Transfer

To display a specific packet:

**Step 1** From the menu bar, select the command **Search > Go to Packet/Transaction/Transfer** to display the Go to Packet/Transaction/Transfer window:




**Step 2** Select the desired viewing level (packet, transaction etc.) from the drop-down menu next to the words **Go to**.

**Step 3** Enter the number of the packet you want to display.

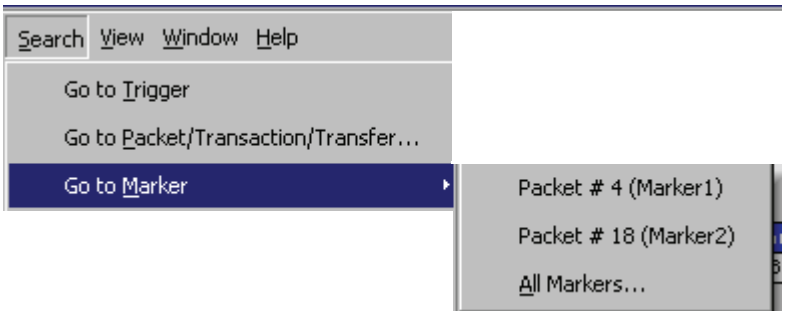
**Step 4** Click **OK.** The Trace View is repositioned with the selected packet at the top of your screen. The resulting item will be shown as selected in the view.

# 6.3 Go to Marker

To instruct the Analyzer to display a marked packet:

**Step 1** Select **Go to Marker** under **Search** on the Menu Bar.

You see a drop-down menu listing the marked packets in that Trace View:




**Step 2** Select the desired packet from the displayed list. The Trace View is repositioned with the selected packet at the top of your screen. The resulting item will be shown as selected in the view.

**Note:** The **Go to Marker** feature functions in conjunction with the **Set Marker** feature. The comments within the parentheses following each marked packet are added or edited with the **Set Marker** feature. Please refer to “Set Marker” on page 95.

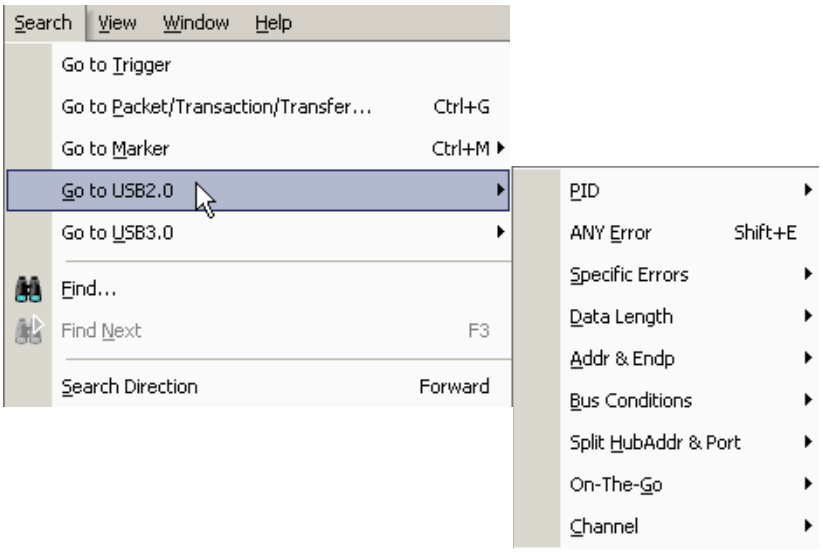
You can use **Ctrl+M** to go immediately to the All Markers dialog.

Packet Selection works with Go to Marker.

# 6.4 Go To USB2.0

The Go To USB2.0 feature takes you directly to an event in a Trace.

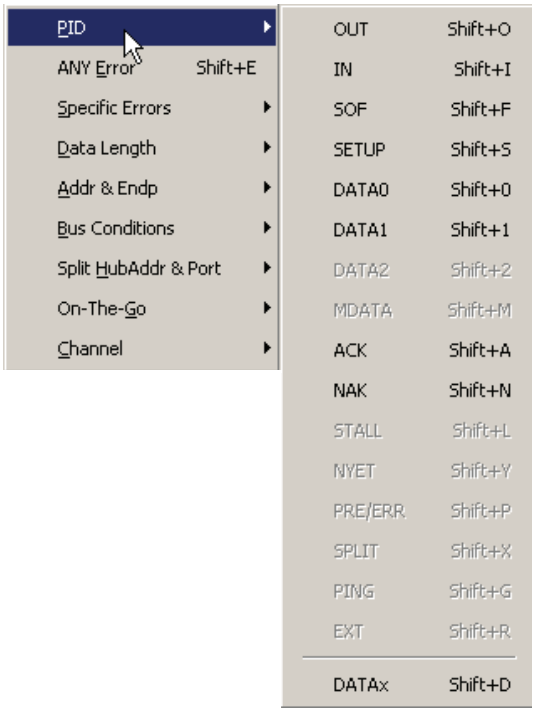
**Step 1** Select Go To USB2.0 under Search on the Menu Bar to display the Go To USB2.0 drop-down menu. For 2.0 data, the menu is:




**Step 2** Select the event you want to go to and enter the necessary information.

The resulting item will be shown as selected in the view.

## 6.4.1 Packet IDs (PIDs)



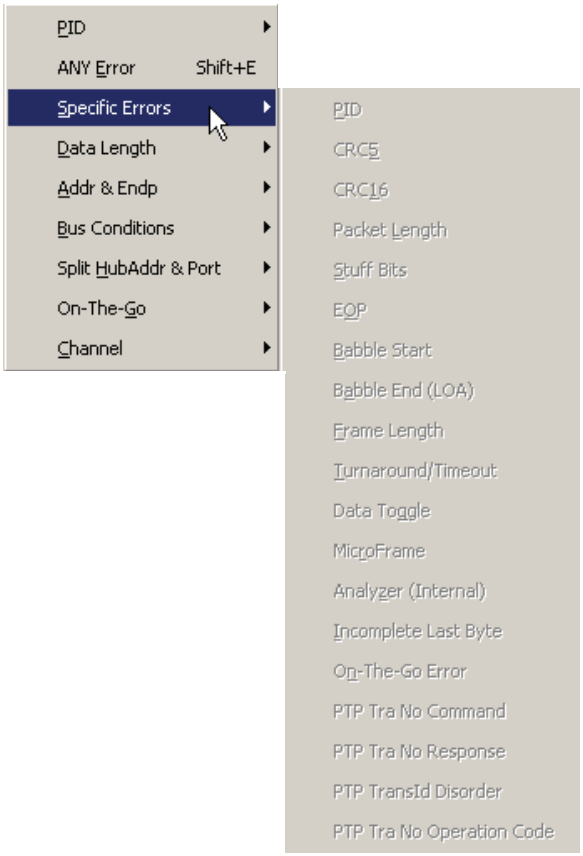

Select the type of packet to which you want to go.

## 6.4.2 ANY Error

Repositions the trace to show the next instance of any error.

### 6.4.3 Errors

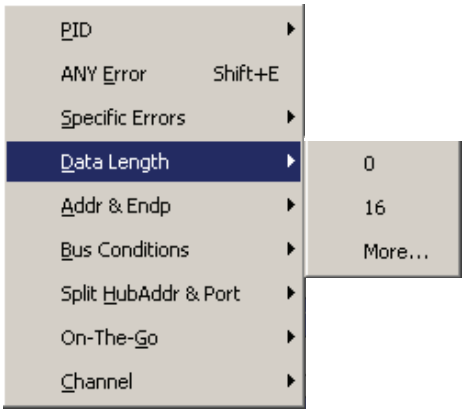
The Errors menu allows you to search for five different types of error: PID, CRC5, CRC16, Packet Length, and Stuff Bits. Menu items appear in bold if they are present in the trace or are grayed out if not present in the trace, as shown in the example below.




You can press **Shift+E** to go to the first error of any type.

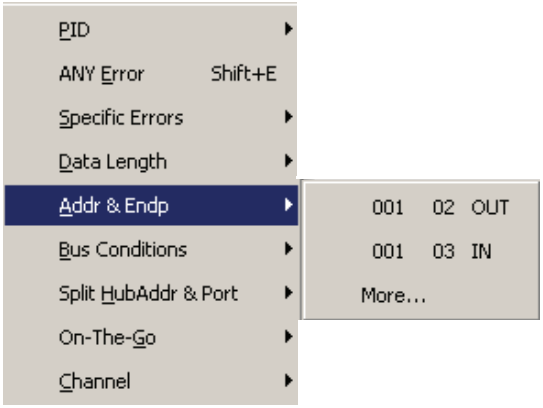
## 6.4.4 Data Length

Allows you to search for data packets of particular lengths. Lengths are displayed in Bytes in a drop down menu as shown below. Selecting a length causes the display to move to the next instance of that packet length.



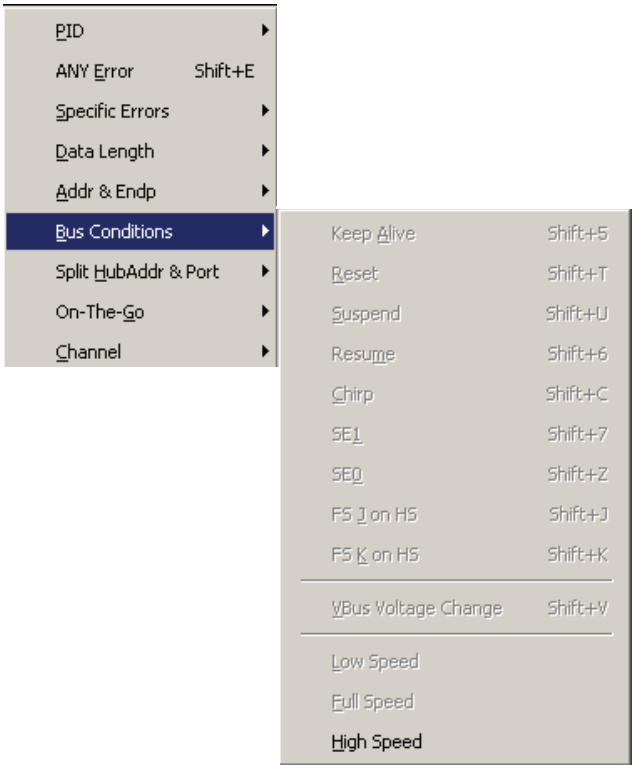

## 6.4.5 Addr & Endp

The Addr & Endp feature allows you to search for the next packet which contains a particular address and endpoint. All available address endpoint combinations are displayed in the pull down menu.



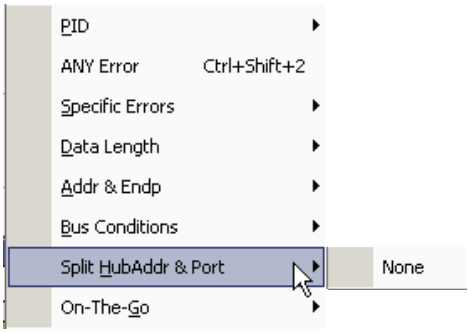
## 6.4.6 Bus Conditions

Allows you to search by bus conditions such as traffic speed, reset, and suspend. All available bus conditions are displayed in the pull down menu.




## 6.4.7 Split HubAddr & Port

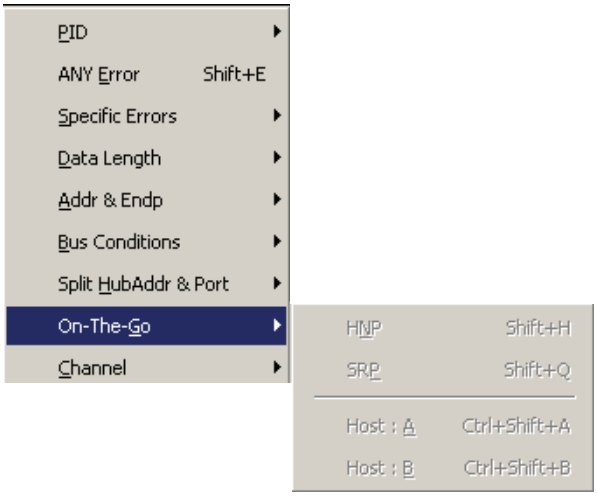
Allows you to go to a split hub address and port.



## 6.4.8 On-the-Go

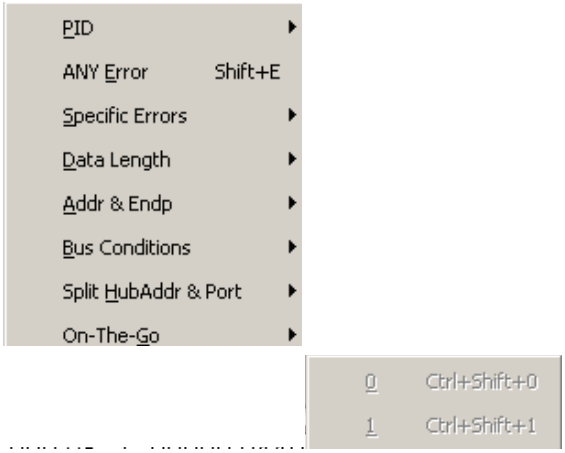
Allows you to search for On-the-go attributes. The On-the-Go submenu contains entries for:

- **HNP**: Host Negotiation Protocol
- **SRP**: Session Request Protocol
- **Host: A**: Hosts with an A plug
- **Host: B**: Hosts with a B plug




## 6.4.9 Channel

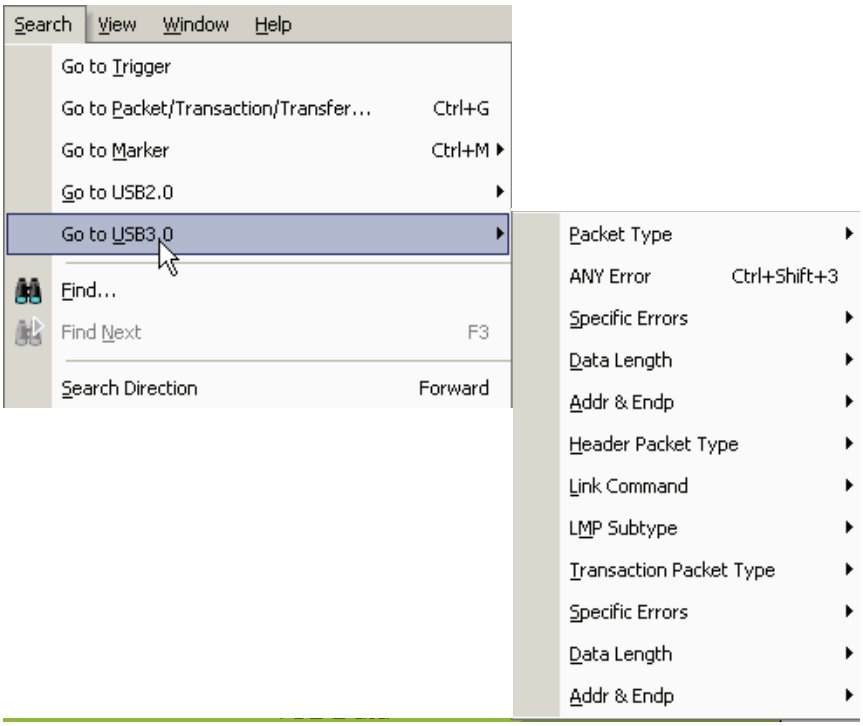
Allows you to search for traffic by 1 (Classic-Speed) or 0 (Hi-Speed).



# 6.5 Go To USB3.0

The Go To USB3.0 feature takes you directly to an event in a Trace.

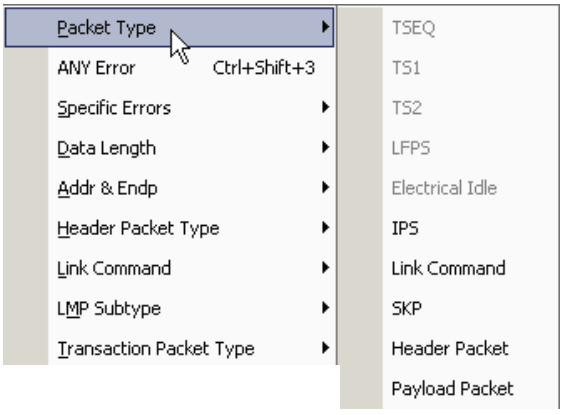
**Step 1** Select **Go To USB3.0** under Search on the Menu Bar to display the Go To USB3.0 drop-down menu. For 3.0 data, the menu is:




**Step 2** Select the event you want to go to and enter the necessary information.

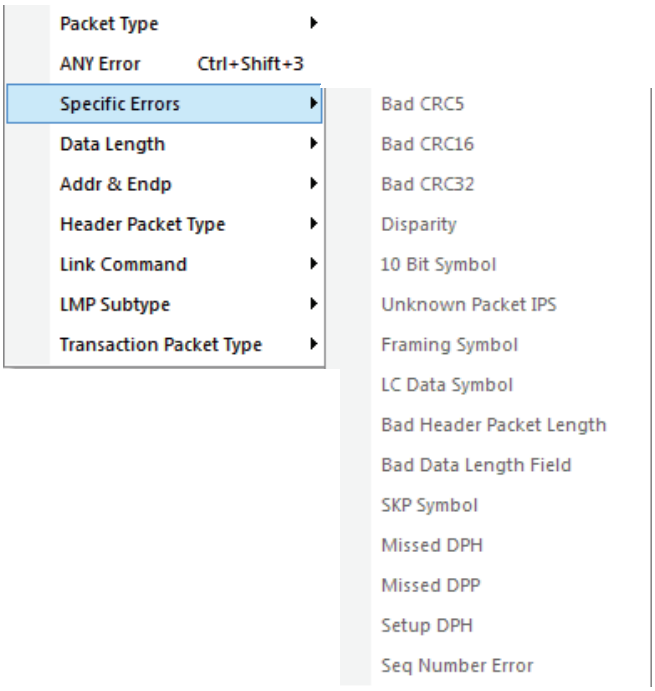
The resulting item will be shown as selected in the view.

## 6.5.1 Packet Type




Select the Packet Type to which you want to go.

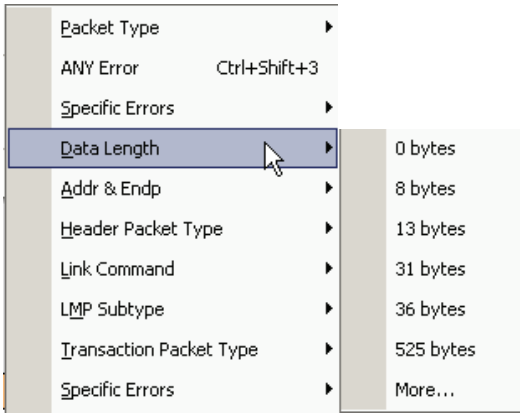
## 6.5.2 Specific Errors




Select the specific error to which you want to go.

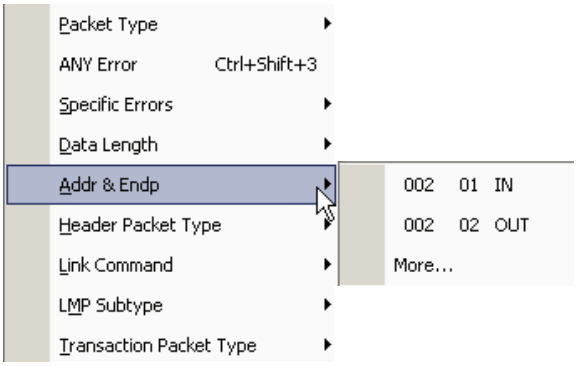
**Note:** **Seq Number Error** refers to Transaction Sequence Numbers (0 to 31), not to Link Control Word (LCW) sequences.

## 6.5.3 Data Length



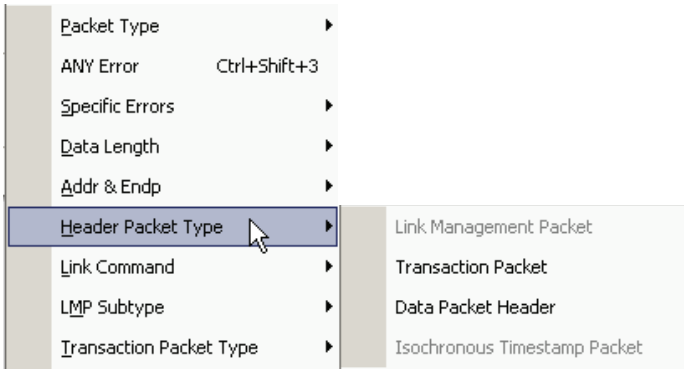

Select the data length to which you want to go.

## 6.5.4 Address and Endpoint



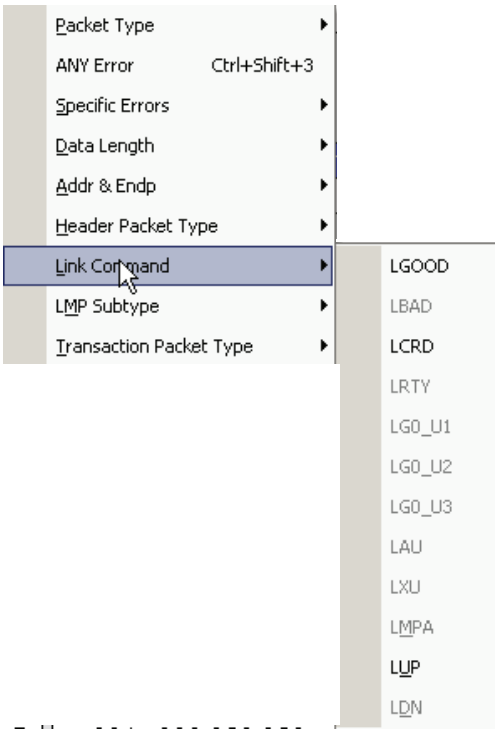

Select the address and endpoint to which you want to go.

## 6.5.5 Header Packet Type



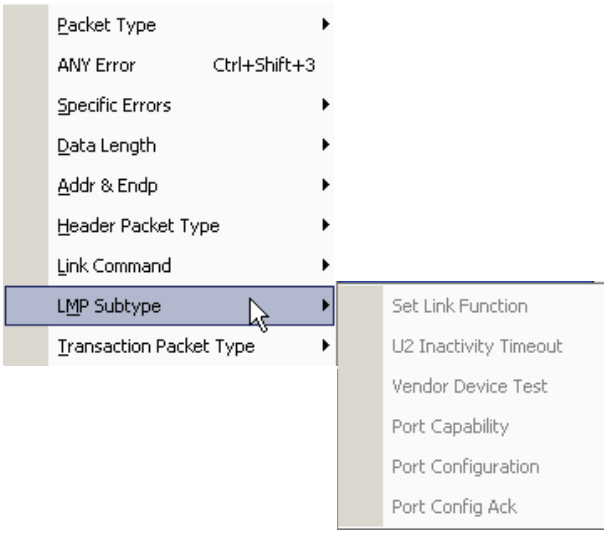

Select the header packet type to which you want to go.

## 6.5.6 Link Command



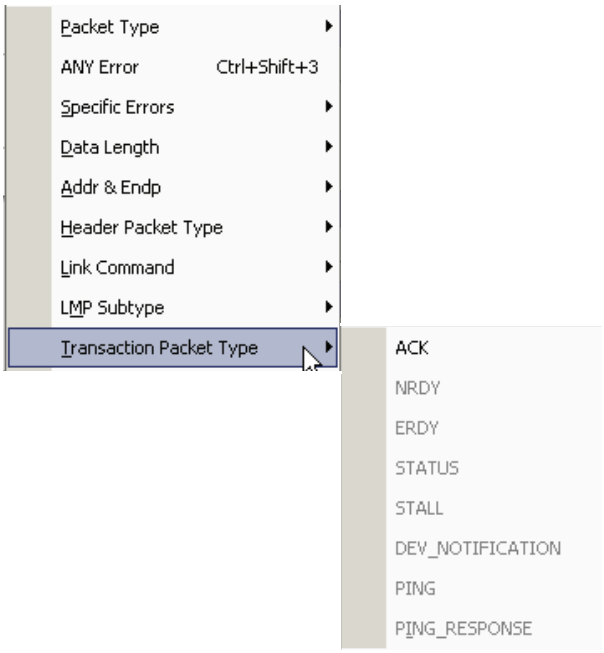

Select the link command to which you want to go.

## 6.5.7 LMP Subtype




Select the LMP Subtype to which you want to go.

### 6.5.8 Transaction Packet Type

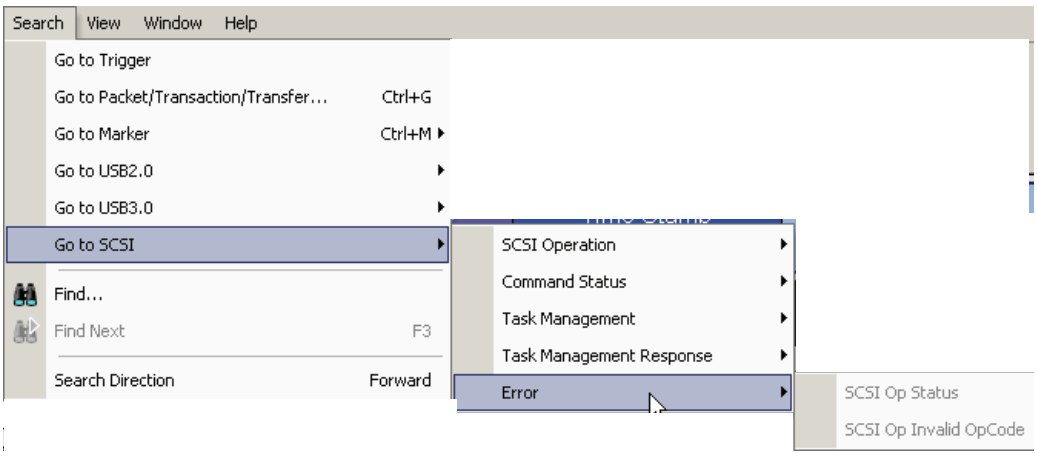



Select the Transaction Packet Type to which you want to go.

## 6.6 Go To SCSI

The Go To SCSI feature takes you to a SCSI Operation, Command Status, Task Management, Task Management Response, or Error.

### 6.6.1 Error



# 6.7 Find

**Find** allows searches on an open trace using one or more criteria. You can search by packet, transactions, split transaction, transfer, packet type, and fields within packets.

To run **Find**, select **Search > Find** or by click on the toolbar.

Searches can combine criteria using the options **Intersection** and **Union**.
**Intersection** creates AND statements such as "Find all packets with *x* and *y*."
**Union** creates OR statements such as "Find all packets with *x* OR *y*."

You can also perform searches in which packets or events are excluded from a trace, using the **Exclusion** option.

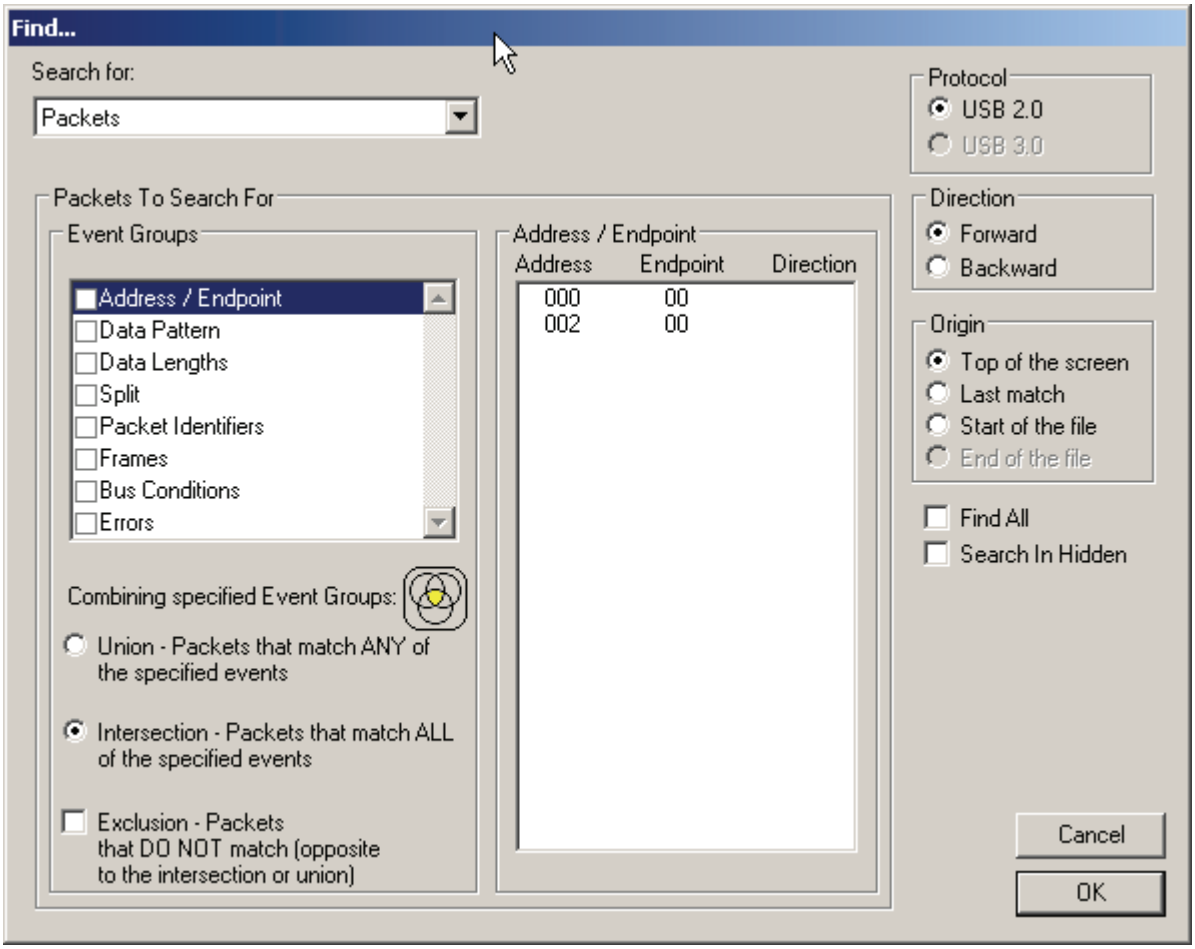
To perform a search:

**Step 1** Select **Find...** under **Search** on the Menu Bar

OR

Click in the Tool Bar.

You see the User-Defined Find Events screen:



**Step 2** If the file has both USB 2.0 and USB 3.0 traffic, select either of these technologies in the Protocol area (upper right): **USB 2.0** or **USB 3.0**.

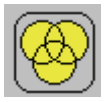
**Step 3** Select **Packets, Transactions**, **Split Transactions**, **Transfers, HWA Segments, HWA Transfers, DWA Segments, DWA Transfers, PTP/MTP Transactions, PTP/MTP Objects**, or **PTP/MTP Sessions** from the top left list box to list that type of event in the Events Group box.

**Step 4** Select one or more events from the **Events Group** box:

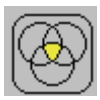
- Address/Endpoint
- Address/RPipe
- Bus Conditions
- Command Status
- Data Lengths
- Data Pattern
- Errors
- Frames
- Handshake
- Header Packet Types
- Link Command Types
- LMP Subtypes
- Object Counts
- Object Handler
- Object Format Type
- On-the-Go Protocol
- Operation Code
- Packet Identifiers
- Packet Types (Header, PHY, Event, Transaction)
- Result Status
- SCSI Command
- Split
- Task Management
- Task Management Response
- Transaction Packet Types
- Transfer Lengths

**Step 5** Select one of the following options:

- **Union:** Find all packets matching ANY of the specified events.



- **Intersection:** Find packets matching ALL of the specified events.



- **Exclusion:** Exclude packets matching any of the specified events.
  **Exclusion** works with the other two options:
  Select **Union** *AND* **Exclusion** (=Exclude packets with ANY of the following fields) or
  **Intersection** *AND* **Exclusion** (=Exclude packets with ALL of the following fields.)

**Step 6** Optionally set the search **Direction** and **Origin**.

**Step 7** Optionally check to **Search in Hidden.** This option looks for the selected items even if you have currently hidden them.

**Step 8** Optionally check to **Find All.** This option opens a new Trace View window that contains ONLY the items for which you are searching. Subsequent searches or actions cannot modify this window, so it never contains any other packets.
Use this option only when you want to check how many packets a specific search criterion puts in the Main Trace View.

**Step 9** Click **OK**.

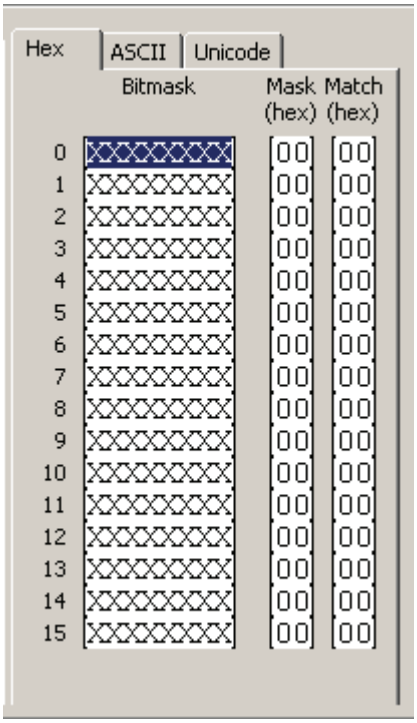
After the search finishes, the program displays the packets meeting the search criteria.

The resulting item will be shown as selected in the view.

Packet Selection works with Find.

### 6.7.1 Data Pattern Mask and Match

If you select Data Pattern as the Event Group in the Find dialog, you can set the Bitmask, Mask, and Match for each bit,




Bitmask and Match always correlate. When you set Bitmask or Match. the other changes to maintain their correlation.

**Note:** If you set Bitmask/Match before setting Mask, the Mask changes to the default mask. You must change to the Mask that you want.

If you set an appropriate Mask before setting Bitmask/Match, the Mask does not change automatically to a default mask if you change Bitmask/Match.

# 6.8 Find Next

To apply the previous **Find** parameters to the next search:

- Select **Find Next** under **Search** on the Menu Bar.
  OR
- Click on the Tool Bar.

# 6.9 Search Direction

Toggles the search forward or backwards. The current direction is indicated in the menu.

# 6.10 Protocol

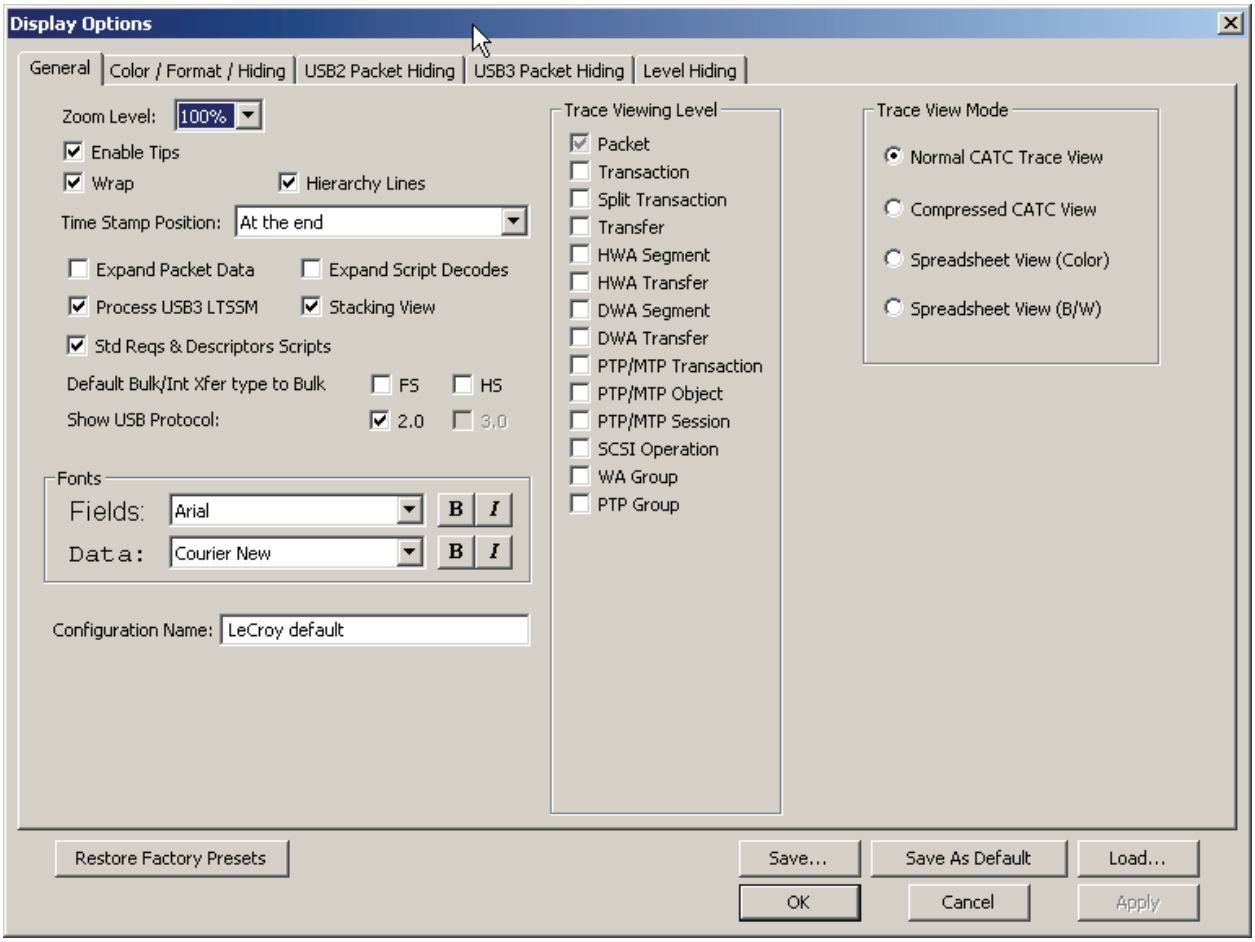
Select **USB 2.0** or **USB 3.0** for the technology to use for a mixed file.

# Chapter 7: Display Options

You can select what information to display in Trace Views using the Display Options window.

To open the Display Options window:

- Select **Display Options** under Setup on the Menu Bar.
  OR
- Click on the Tool Bar.:




You can select General, Color/Format/Hiding, and Level Hiding display options. The following sections describe these display options.

# 7.1 General Display Options

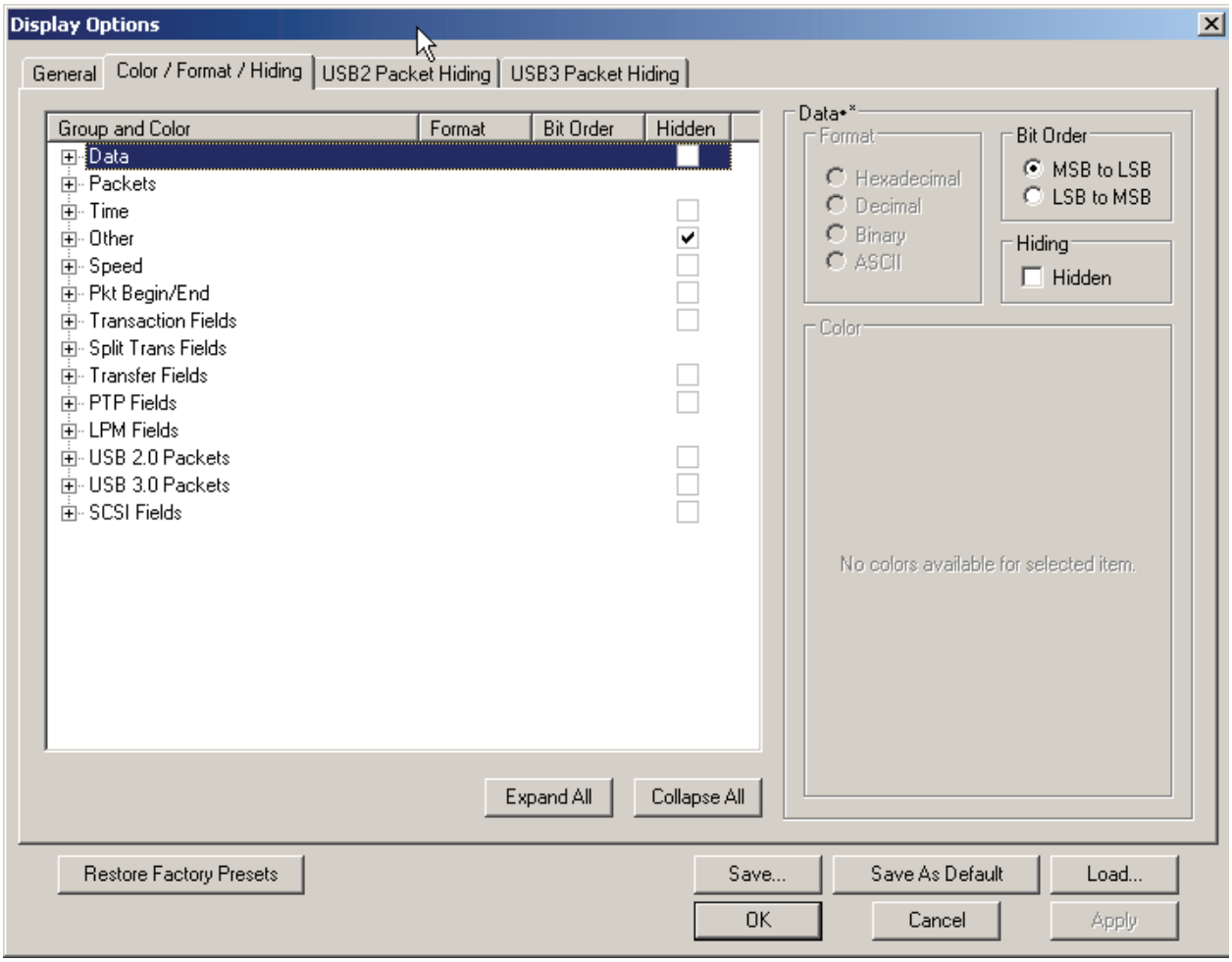
You specify the main Trace View information types and settings using General Display Options (see figure on previous page):

- **Zoom Level**: Zooms out from 100% (default) to 10% or zooms in from 100% to 200%.
- **Enable Tips**: Pops up text when you position the cursor over a field.
- **Wrap**: Wraps lines of traffic information instead of truncating lines at the right edge of the display.
- **Hierarchy Lines**: Displays lines on the left side of Trace View showing the hierarchy from Packets to Transactions to Split Transactions to Transfers if you show higher-level decodes.
- **Timestamp Position**: Aligns the Timestamp field **At the beginning** (in a column on the left side of the Trace View), **At the end** (in a column on the left side of the Trace View), or **Merge with Packet/Transaction/Translation**. Selecting this option allows easier comparison with previous or following timestamps.
- **Expand Packet Data**: Displays packet data fields in expanded mode. If this option is not selected, packet data fields display in collapsed mode, and you can expand them manually.
- **Expand Script Decodes**: Displays decoded transfer fields in expanded mode. If this option is not selected, decoded transfer fields display in collapsed mode, and you can expand them manually.
- **Process USB3 LTSSM**: Enables the software processing needed for the LTSSM views. Disable if you do not need link state information.
- **Stacking View**: Puts a group of packets in one row, to shorten display. Stacking conserves space in the trace view by displaying repeating items (or item groups) as one item, along with the number of repeats.
  For USB 2.0, stacking items (or item groups) can be SOF, Chirp (merges J's and Ks into one stacked display unit), or NAK'ed (split) Transaction.
  For USB 3.0, stacking items (or item groups) can be TSEQ, TS1 with same Link Functionality, TS2 with same Link Functionality, LFPS with same Type, LUP, LDN, or NAK'ed Transaction.
  **Note:** Items are grouped regardless of any intervening Skip Sequence, Electrical Idle, or Logical Idle symbols. If any of these occur during a stream of the repeating stacking item, they are not displayed.
- **Std Reqs & Descriptors Scripts**: Use dynamically loaded **.DEC** files (rather than **.REQ** and **.DSC** files) for decoding Class and Vendor requests or endpoints.
- **Default Bulk/Int Xfer type to Bulk on**: Select **FS** and/or **HS.**
  In most cases, the USB Protocol Suite can determine whether an endpoint is an Interrupt or Bulk endpoint and apply the proper decoding. However, in some cases, the USB Protocol Suite cannot distinguish traffic from these two Transfer Types and defaults to Interrupt endpoint. For FS and/or HS, you can set the software to default to Bulk endpoint, typically when you know that captured traffic is Bulk, not Interrupt.
  **Note:** In the Trace view, you can change the Transfer Type by right-clicking the **INT** or **BULK** field and selecting the appropriate option.

- **Show Protocol:** Use USB 2.0 or USB 3.0.
- **Trace Viewing Level**: Displays Packet, Transaction, Split Transaction, Transfer, Host Wire Adapter Segment, Host Wire Adapter Transfer, Device Wire Adapter Segment, Device Wire Adapter Transfer, PTP/MTP Transaction, PTP/MTP Object, PTP/MTP Session, SCSI Operation, Wire Adapter Group (all), and PTP Group (all).
- **Trace View Mode**: Displays Normal CATC Trace View, Compressed CATC View, Spreadsheet View (Color), and Spreadsheet View (B/W).
- **Fonts**: Sets the font type and bold or italic style for Fields and Data.
- **Configuration Name**: You can name the current set of Display Options values for use with an **.opt** file. (The options file can have a different name.)
- **Restore Factory Presets**: Sets all Display Options values to the installed values.

# 7.2 Color/Format/Hiding Display Options

To modify the colors, formats, and hiding options, select the **Color/Format/Hiding** tab.

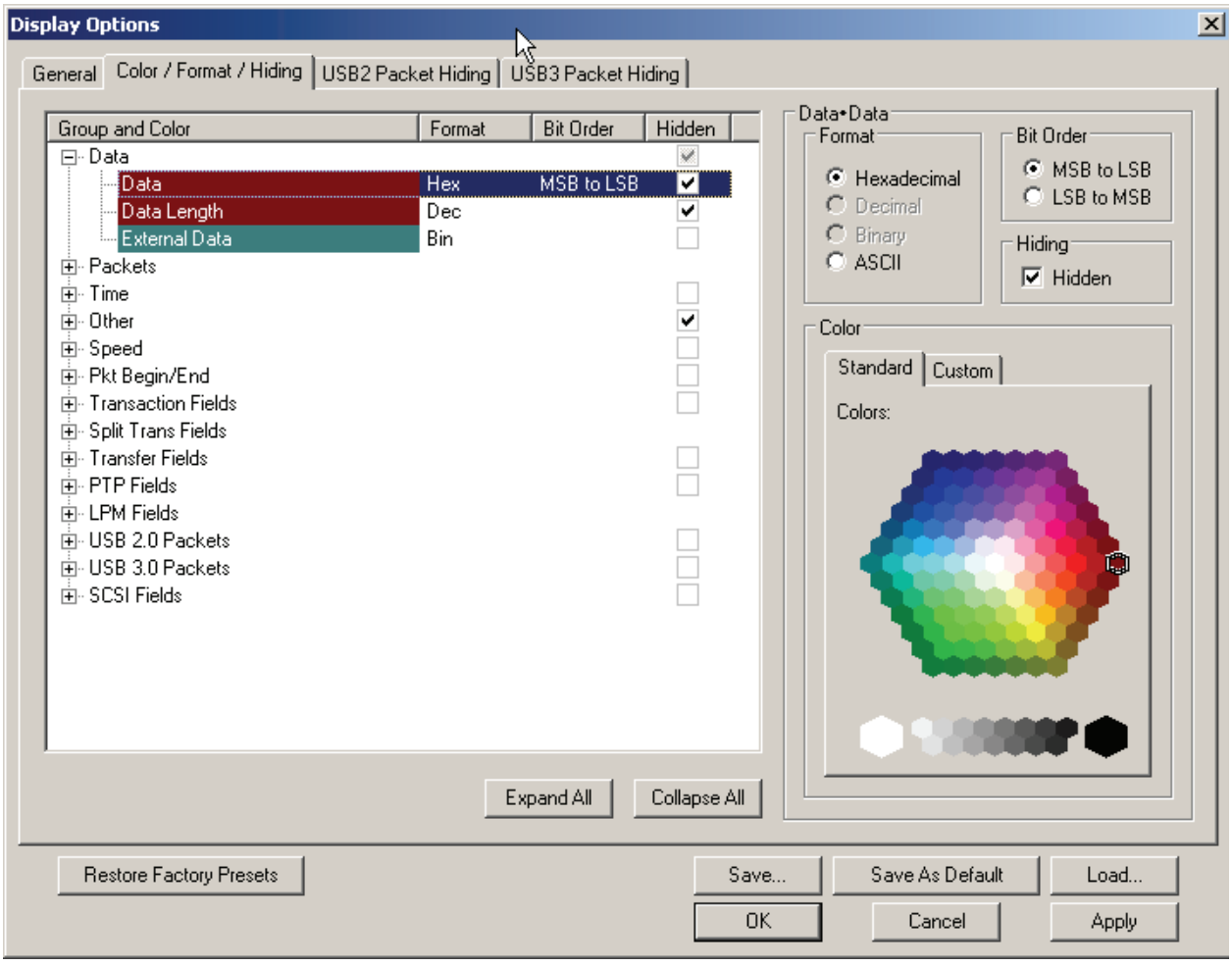


### 7.2.1 Color Display Options

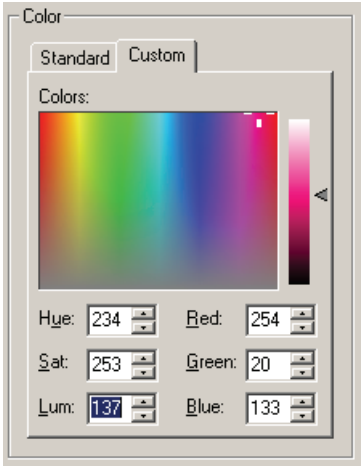
The program uses a default set of colors for each type of data in each group of data. The colors and color combinations are appropriate for most graphic systems. You can alter any color.

To specify a color for an information type, in the Color/Format/Hiding tab, select a row (such as Data) in the Group and Color column and expand it.

Select a data type (such as Data Length) in the Group, then select a color in the Color section, using Standard or Custom colors. Use a bright color for each important field.



To customize colors, use the Custom tab.



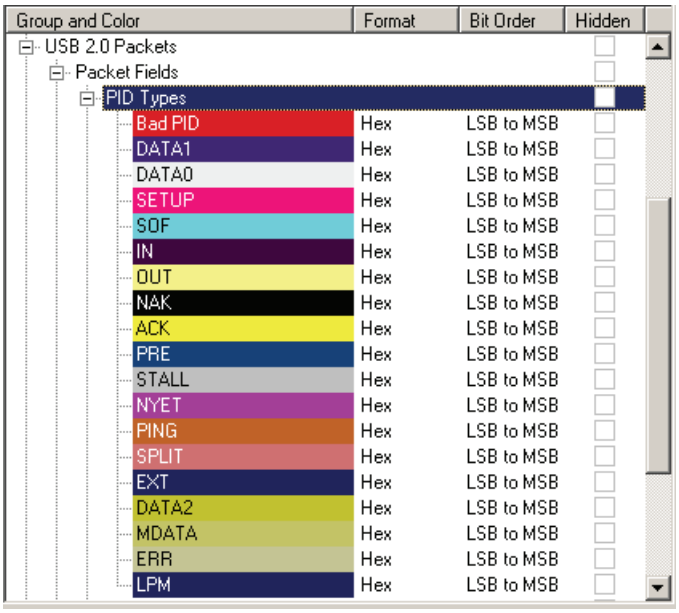

**Note:** You cannot change the color of an Invalid Data (packet error) field. It is permanently set to red.

## 7.2.2 Formats Display Options

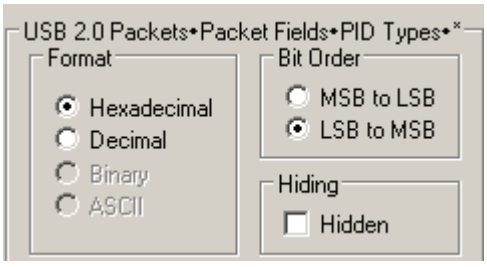
For each type of data in each group of data, the program has a default data format. Examples of number data formats are Bin (binary), Dec (decimal), and Hex (hexadecimal). Examples of date and time data formats are Hex uFrame, Dec uFrame, Date & Time, Time, Bit Time, seconds, microseconds, and nanoseconds. An example of a text data format is ASCII. You can alter some data formats.

To specify a data format for an information type, in the Color/Format/Hiding tab, select a row (such as Packet Fields) in the Group and Color column and expand it.

Select a data type (such as PID Types) in the Group:


Group and Color
Format
Bit Order
Hidden
USB 2.0 Packets
Packet Fields
PID Types
Bad PID Hex LSB to MSB
DATA1 Hex LSB to MSB
DATA0 Hex LSB to MSB
SETUP Hex LSB to MSB
SOF Hex LSB to MSB
IN Hex LSB to MSB
OUT Hex LSB to MSB
NAK Hex LSB to MSB
ACK Hex LSB to MSB
PRE Hex LSB to MSB
STALL Hex LSB to MSB
NYET Hex LSB to MSB
PING Hex LSB to MSB
SPLIT Hex LSB to MSB
EXT Hex LSB to MSB
DATA2 Hex LSB to MSB
MDATA Hex LSB to MSB
ERR Hex LSB to MSB
LPM Hex LSB to MSB

Select a format in the Format section. The following formats are available for PID Types:




If available, select Bit Order in the Format section. The options are MSB to LSB or LSB to MSB.

### 7.2.3 Hiding Display Options

By default, no data is hidden. You can hide any group of data and any type of data. You can hide transactions, SOFs; NAKs; High, Full, or Low Speed packets; traffic from one or both recording channels; and Addresses and Endpoints.

To hide one or more fields, select the Group and Data type in the Group and Color column, then click the Hidden checkbox in the display or the Hidden checkbox in the Hidden section of the Format section.

# 7.3 USB 2.0 Packet Hiding Options

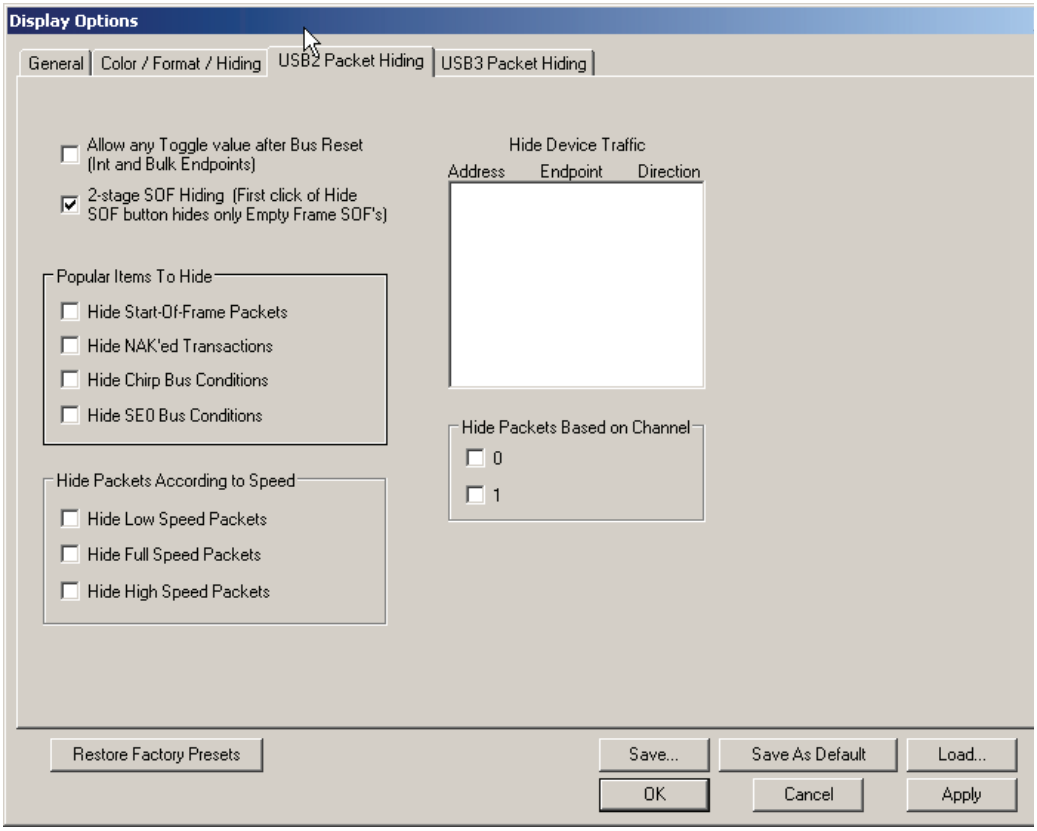
By default, no data packets, transactions, or bus conditions are hidden. You can hide:

- Start of Frame packets
- NAK'ed transactions
- Chirp Bus conditions
- SE0 Bus conditions
- High, Full, or Low Speed packets
- Channel 0 or Channel 1 packets

You can allow any toggle value after bus reset (Int and Bulk Endpoints). Depending on the device, after Bus Reset the endpoint toggle state might or might not be reset. Selecting this option prevents display of a toggle violation error.

You can have 2-stage SOF hiding. You can display all SOFs, hide all SOFs, or hide empty SOFs (show only SOFs with endpoint traffic and hide empty frames). Selecting this option allows you to hide empty SOFs with one click of the Hide SOF button or hide all SOFs with two clicks of the Hide SOF button.

Select the **USB2 Packet Hiding** tab, then select the data types to hide.

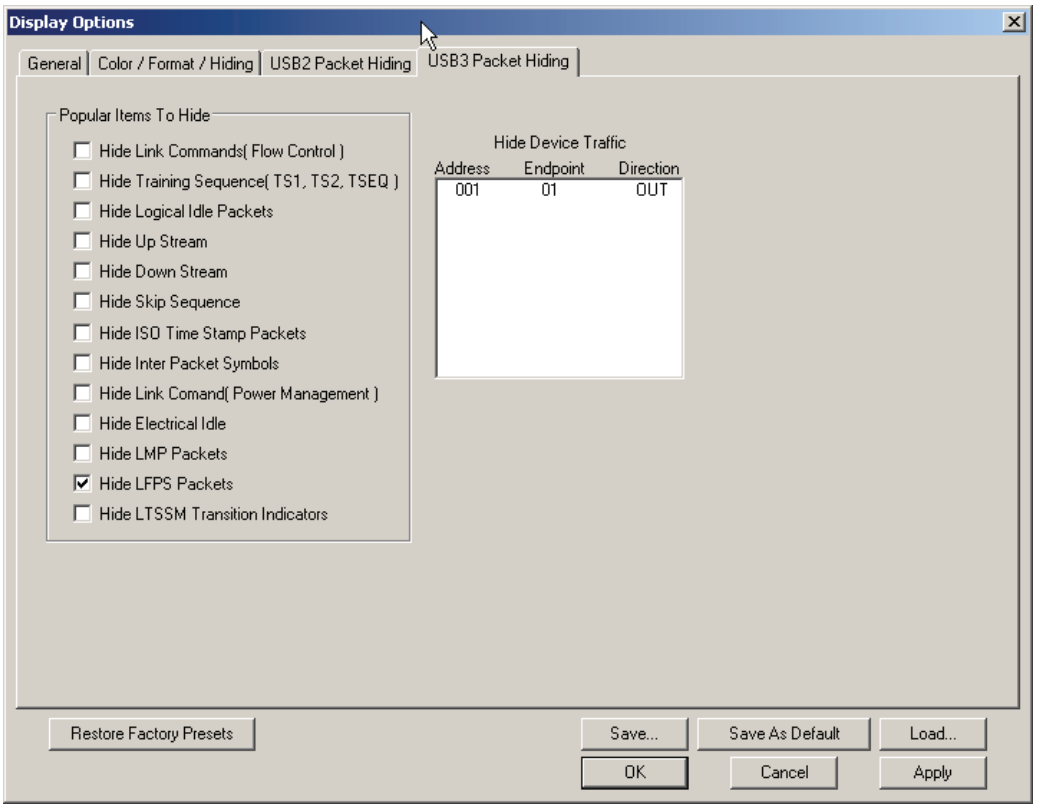


# 7.4 USB 3.0 Packet Hiding Options

By default, no data packets, transactions, or bus conditions are hidden. You can hide:

- Link Commands (Flow Control)
- Training Sequences (TS1, TS2, TSEQ)
- Logical Idle Packets
- Upstream Packets
- Downstream Packets
- Skip Sequences
- ISO Time Stamp Packets
- Inter-Packet Symbols (unexpected packets)
- Link Commands (Power Management)
- Electrical Idles
- LMP Packets
- LFPS Packets

Select the **USB3 Packet Hiding** tab, then select the data types to hide



# 7.5 Saving Display Options

You can save a set of Display Options values, make a set the default settings, or use a saved set of values with the commands at the bottom of the **Display Options** window:

- To save the current Display Options values in an options file for use in future sessions, click **Save**. Enter a file name without a file name extension. The program adds the **.opt** extension. (The file must have an **.opt** file name extension.)
- To load a previously saved **.opt** file, click **Load** and select a file name.
- To save the current Display Options values in the **default.opt** options file for use as the default display options, click **Save as Default**. (Do not delete the **default.opt** file.)
- To apply the current Display Options values, click **Apply**. The Display Options window remains open.
- To apply the current Display Options values and close the Display Options window, click **OK**.
- To cancel unsaved changes to display values and exit the Display Options window, click **Cancel**.

# Chapter 8: Decode Requests

## 8.1 Class and Vendor Definition Files

LeCroy Analyzers use script files to decode class and vendor requests. The script files are read when the application is initialized. After reading, the Analyzer decodes class and vendor requests as instructed by the files.

**.DEC files** represent the new method of decoding. DEC stands for “decoder” and describes both Class and Vendor requests in a C-like language. Each **.dec** file stores an endpoint or request decode. When the application starts, these files are loaded dynamically. Subdirectories are supported.

**Note:** The **.dec** files listed in the following table are in the **Scripts** directory under the installation directory:

| USB Decode | USB Decoder Name | USB-IF Codes | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Base Class | Sub Class | Proto-col ID |
| **Audio Class decoding 2.0**<br>AudioClass\Audio1.0Requests.dec<br>AudioClass\Audio2.0Requests.dec | Audio | **01h** | | |
| **Communications and CDC Control** | Communication | **02h** | | |
| Direct Line Control Model | Communication | **02h** | 01h | |
| Abstract Control Model | Communication | **02h** | 02h | |
| Telephone Control Model | Communication | **02h** | 03h | |
| Multi-Channel Control Model | Communication | **02h** | 04h | |
| CAPI Control Model | Communication | **02h** | 05h | |
| Ethernet Networking Control Model | Communication | **02h** | 06h | |
| ATM Networking Control Model | Communication | **02h** | 07h | |
| Wireless Handset Control Model | Communication | **02h** | 08h | |
| Device Management Model | Communication | **02h** | 09h | |
| Mobile Direct Line Model | Communication | **02h** | 0Ah | |
| OBEX Model | Communication | **02h** | 0Bh | |
| Communication Device Subclass/EEM<br>Communications\CommRequests.dec<br>Communications\CommInterrupt.dec<br>Communications\CommCDCEEM.dec | Communication | **02h** | 0Ch | |

| USB Decode | USB Decoder Name | USB-IF Codes | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Base Class | Sub Class | Protocol ID |
| **HID** (Human Interface Device)<br>HUT (HID extension)<br>Monitor (HID extension)<br>Physical Interface (force-feedback extension to HID)<br>Point of Sale Devices (HID extension)<br>Power (HID extension)<br>Hid\hid.dec<br>Hid\Hid_Req.dec | HID<br>HID<br>HID<br>HID<br>HID<br>HID | **03h**<br>Extension<br>Extension<br>Extension<br>Extension<br>Extension | | |
| **Physical**<br>Hid\hid.dec<br>Hid\Hid_Req.dec | HID | **05h** | | |
| **Still Imaging Class**<br>StillImageClass\PTPStillImageBulkIn.dec<br>StillImageClass\PTPStillImageBulkOut.dec<br>StillImageClass\PTPStillImageRequests.dec<br>StillImageClass\PTPStillInterrupt.dec | PTP<br>Still Image | **06h** | 01h | 01h |
| **Printer**<br>Printer\Printer_req.dec | Printer | **07h** | 01h | xxh |
| **Mass Storage** | Mass Storage | **08h** | | |
| SCSI/Bulk Protocol<br>MassStorageClass\MS_BulkOnly_Requests.dec<br>MassStorageClass\MS_BulkOnlySCSIInEndpoint.dec<br>MassStorageClass\MS_BulkOnlySCSIOutEndpoint.dec<br>MassStorageClass\MS_BulkOnlySCSIOutEndpoint.dec | Mass Storage<br>SCSI Bulk | **08h** | 06h | 50h |
| UFI (floppy)/CBI Protocol<br>MassStorageClass\MS_UFI_CBI_Requests.dec<br>MassStorageClass\MS_UFI_CBI_BulkInEndp.dec<br>MassStorageClass\MS_UFI_CBI_BulkOutEndp.dec<br>MassStorageClass\MS_UFI_CBI_InterruptEndp.dec | MassStrg Class<br>UFI CBI | **08h** | 04h | 00h |
| **Hub support**<br>HubClass\HubClassRequests.dec<br>HubClass\HubClassStatusEndpoint.dec | Hub Class | **09h** | | |

| USB Decode | USB Decoder Name | USB-IF Codes | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Base Class | Sub Class | Protocol ID |
| **Picture Transfer Protocol** (**PTP**)<br>[Photographic and Imaging Manufacturers Association (PIMA) 15740 and ISO 15740]<br>StillImageClass\PTPStillImageBulkIn.dec<br>StillImageClass\PTPStillImageBulkOut.dec<br>StillImageClass\PTPStillImageRequests.dec<br>StillImageClass\PTPStillInterrupt.dec | PTP<br>Still Image | Extension | | |
| **Communications Device Class (CDC) Data**<br>Communications\CDCDataBulkIn_wCTE.dec<br>Communications\CDCDataBulkIn_wPW.dec<br>Communications\CDCDataBulkIn_wPW_wCTE.dec<br>Communications\CDCDataBulkOut_wCTE.dec<br>Communications\CDCDataBulkOut_wPW.dec<br>Communications\CDCDataBulkOut_wPW_wCTE.dec<br>Communications\CDCDataIsochIn_wCTE.dec<br>Communications\CDCDataIsochIn_wPW.dec<br>Communications\CDCDataIsochIn_wPW_wCTE.dec<br>Communications\CDCDataIsochOut_wCTE.dec<br>Communications\CDCDataIsochOut_wPW.dec<br>Communications\CDCDataIsochOut_wPW_wCTE.dec | CDC | **0Ah** | xxh | |
| **Smart Card (CCID)**<br>SmartCard\CCIDBulkIn.dec<br>SmartCard\CCIDBulkOut.dec<br>SmartCard\CCIDInterrupt.dec<br>SmartCard\CCID_req.dec<br>SmartCard\ICCDBulkIn.dec<br>SmartCard\ICCDBulkOut.dec<br>SmartCard\ICCDInterrupt.dec<br>SmartCard\ICCD_req_Ver.A.dec<br>SmartCard\ICCD_req_Ver.B.dec | CCID and ICCD | **0Bh** | 00h | <br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br>01h<br>02h |
| **Video Class (UVC) decoding 1.1 (currently at 1.0)** | | **0Eh** | | |
| VIDEO CONTROL | Video | **0Eh** | 01h | 00h |
| VIDEO STREAMING | Video | **0Eh** | 02h | 00h |
| VIDEO INTERFACE COLLECTION<br>VideoClass\VideoBulkIn.dec<br>VideoClass\VideoBulkOut.dec<br>VideoClass\VideoInterrupt.dec<br>VideoClass\VideoIsochIn.dec<br>VideoClass\VideoIsochOut.dec<br>VideoClass\Video1.0Requests.dec<br>VideoClass\Video1.1Requests.dec | Video | **0Eh** | 03h | 00h |

| USB Decode | USB Decoder Name | USB-IF Codes | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Base Class | Sub Class | Protocol ID |
| **Wireless Controller** | | **E0h** | | |
| BT | HCI | **E0h** | 01h | 01h |
| UWB | WA Radio Control | **E0h** | 01h | 02h |
| Remote Network Driver Interface Specification (RNDIS) | Remote NDIS | **E0h** | 01h | 03h |
| Host Wire Adapter | Wire Adapter Class | **E0h** | 02h | 01h |
| Device Wire Adapter<br>WireAdapter\WA_DataInEndpoint.dec<br>WireAdapter\WA_DataOutEndpoint.dec<br>WireAdapter\WA_NotifEndpoint.dec<br>WireAdapter\WA_Requests.dec<br>WireAdapter\WA_Radio_Requests.dec<br>WireAdapter\WA_RadioNotifEndpoint.dec | Wire Adapter Class | **EFh** | 02h | 02h |
| **Miscellaneous Device Class** | | **EFh** | | |
| Interface Association Descriptor | Standard, so no decoder method needed | **EFh** | 02h | 01h |
| Wire Adapter Multifunction Peripheral programming interface | Wire Adapter Class | **EFh** | 02h | 02h |
| Cable Based Association Framework (CBAF) Requests<br>Standard\StandardRequests.dec<br>IEEE\IEEECompanies.dec<br>Virtual\VirtualDATAIn.dec<br>Virtual\VirtualDATAOut.dec<br>Virtual\VirtualUARTIn.dec<br>Virtual\VirtualUARTOut.dec<br>AssociationFrameworks\WUSB_CableBasedAssociation.dec | Association Frameworks | **EFh** | 03h | 01h |
| IrDA Bridge | IrDA Bridge | **FEh** | 02h | 00h |
| ATAPI | ATAPI | **08h** | 02h | 50h |
| IP | IP | | | |
| HTTP | HTTP | | | |
| Personal Healthcare Devices<br>PersonalHealthcare\PersonalHealthcareRequest.dec<br>PersonalHealthcare\PersonalHealthcareDescriptors.inc<br>PersonalHealthcare\PersonalHealthcareDataBulkIn.dec<br>PersonalHealthcare\PersonalHealthcareDataBulkOut.dec<br>PersonalHealthcare\PersonalHealthcareDataBulk.inc | Personal Healthcare | **0Fh** | | |
| Content Security Devices<br>ContentSecurity\ContentSecurityRequest.dec<br>ContentSecurity\ContentSecurityDescriptors.inc<br>ContentSecurity\ContentSecurityInterrupt.dec | Content Security | **0Dh** | | |

You can create your own **.dec** file for a Class or Vendor Request. For more information on the format of these Script Decoder files and the Script Decoding language, read the ***Script Decoder Manual***.

# 8.2 Class/Vendor Decoding Options

The software will automatically assign decoders based on the enumeration sequence in a recorded file. If the enumeration sequence is not captured, or if software assigns an incorrect decoder, you may manually select a decoder.

You can permanently assign a class or vendor decoding for an address and/or endpoint or interface in a trace file. Once assigned, the decoding occurs automatically when you display transactions.

## 8.2.1 Mapping Request Recipient to Class/Vendor Decoding

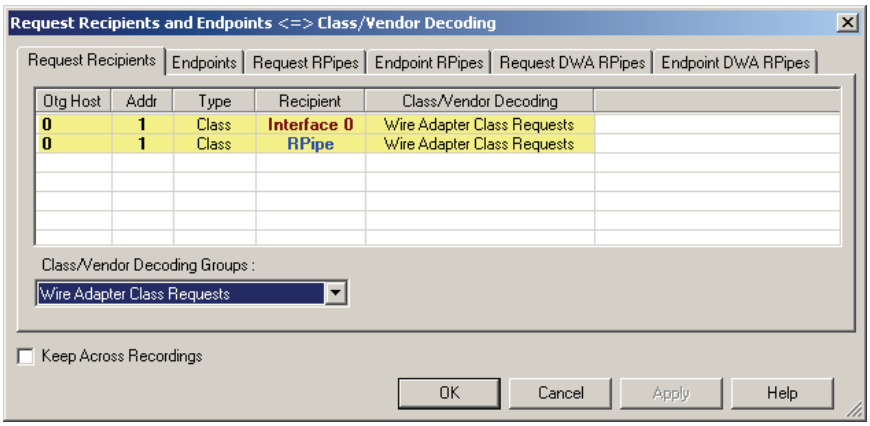
To assign a decoding group to a request recipient,

**Step 1** Click the **Apply Decoding Scripts** button on the Toolbar.

OR

Right-click the **Control Transfer** field to display the USB Device Request menu:

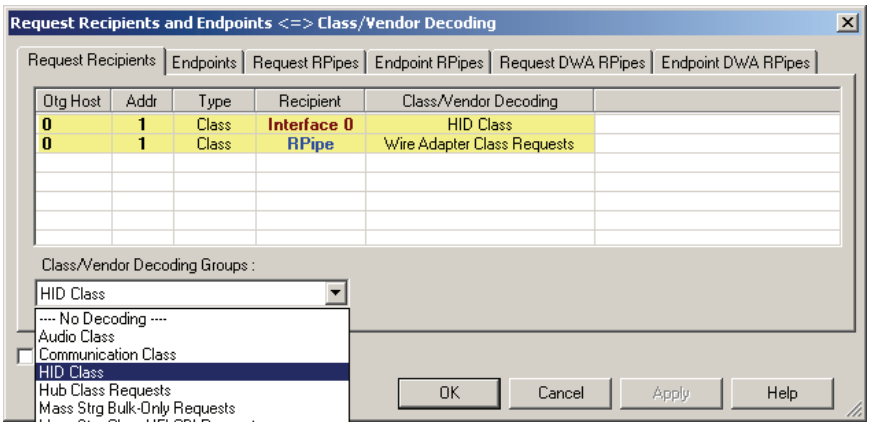
**Step 2** Select **Map Request Recipients to Class/Vendor Decoding** to display the Request Recipient and Endpoints dialog box:




The Recipient field shows all Class and Vendor Request Recipients found in the trace file. The display shows the Host, Address, and Type (Class or Vendor) for the recipient. On the right are the names of Class/Vendor Decoding groups currently assigned to recipients. If blank, no decoding is assigned for a recipient.

**Step 3** Select a recipient.

**Step 4** Display the **Class/Vendor Decoding Groups** drop-down menu.




The drop-down menu lists the defined Class/Vendor request decoding groups. The Class/Vendor Decoding Groups are:

- No Decoding
- Audio 1.0 Class Requests
- Audio 2.0 Class Requests
- Audio Class Requests
- CCID Requests
- Communication Class Requests
- HCI Command
- HID Class
- HID Class Requests
- Hub Class Requests
- ICCD Ver. A Requests
- ICCD Ver. B Requests
- IrDA Bridge Class Requests
- Mass-Strg Bulk-Only Requests
- Mass-Strg Class UFI CBI Requests
- Printer Class Requests
- RNDIS Communication Class Requests
- Standard Requests
- Still Image/PTP/MTP/PictBridge Class Requests
- Video 1.0 Class Requests
- Video 1.1 Class Requests
- Video Class Requests
- Wire Adapter Radio Control Request
- Wire Adapter Class Requests
- WUSB CBAF Requests

**Step 5** Select a decoding group.

OR

Select **No Decoding** if you do not want any specific decoding.

**Step 6** Repeat the previous steps for additional recipients.

**Step 7** To retain a mapping from trace to trace DURING an application session, select the **Keep Across Recordings** checkbox.

**Step 8** Click **OK**.

## 8.2.2 Mapping Endpoint to Class/Vendor Decoding

To assign a Class/Vendor Endpoint decoding,

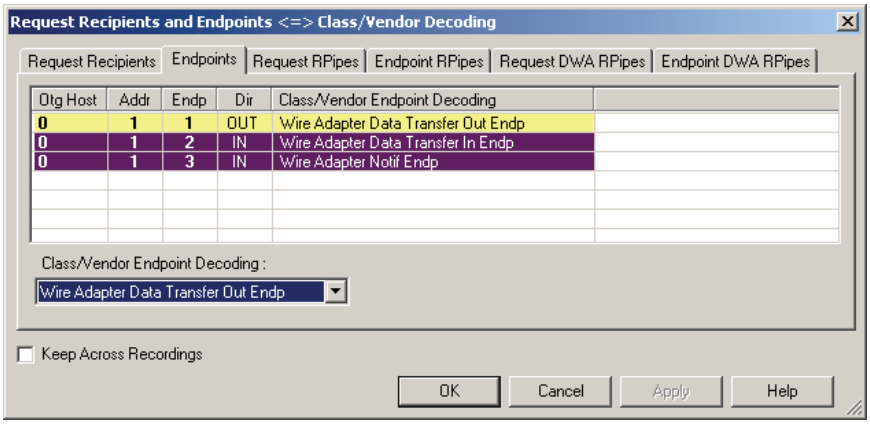
**Step 1** Click the **Apply Decoding Scripts** button on the Toolbar.

OR

Right-click the **Bulk/Int Transfer** field to display the USB Device Request menu.

**Step 2** Select **Map Endpoint to Class/Vendor Decoding** to display the Request Recipients and Endpoints dialog box.

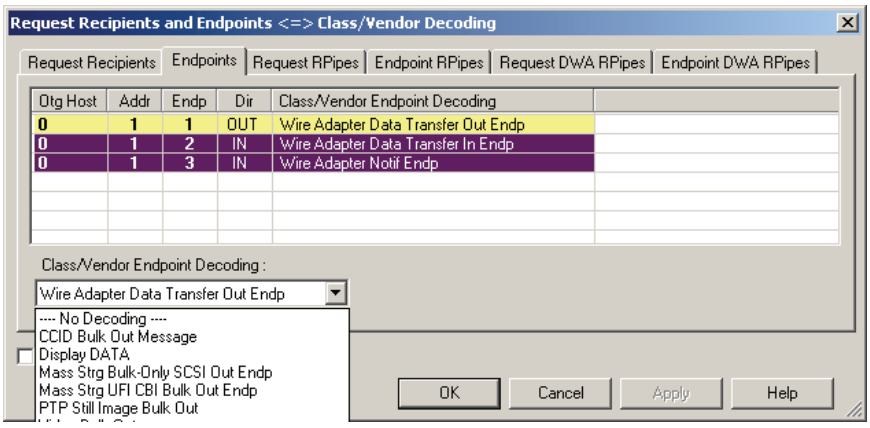
**Step 3** Click the **Endpoints** tab to display the **Endpoints** dialog box.




The Endpoint field (Endp) shows all Endpoints found in the trace file. The displays shows the Host, Address, and Direction for the recipient. On the right are the names of Class/Vendor Endpoint Decoding groups currently assigned to endpoints. If blank, no decoding is assigned for a recipient.

**Step 4** Select an endpoint.

**Step 5** Display the **Class/Vendor Endpoint Decoding** drop-down menu:




The Class/Vendor Endpoint Decoding options for an OUT endpoint are:

- No Decoding
- ATAPI MMC4 Out Endp
- ATAPI SPC3 Out Endp
- ATAPI SSC2 Out Endp
- CCID Bulk Out Message
- CCD Data Bulk Out w/ Cmd Wrapper
- CCD Data Bulk Out w/ Prot & Cmd Wrapper
- CCD Data Bulk Out w/ Prot Wrapper
- CCD Data Isoch Out w/ Cmd Wrapper
- CCD Data Isoch Out w/ Prot & Cmd Wrapper
- CCD Data Isoch Out w/ Prot Wrapper
- Display DATA
- HCI data out
- HCI SCO out
- HTTP Out Endp
- ICCD Bulk Out Message
- IP_ET0800 (Internet Protocol) Out Endp
- IPv6_ET0800 (Internet Protocol) Out Endp
- IrDA Bridge Out Endp
- Mass Strg Bulk-Only SCSI Out Endp
- Mass Strg UFI_CBI Bulk Out Endp
- RNDIS_PACKET_MSG Bulk Out
- Still Image/PTP/MTP/PictBridge Bulk Out
- TCP (Transmission Control Protocol) Out Endp
- Video Bulk Out
- Video Isoch Out
- Virtual UART
- Wire Adapter Data Transfer Out Endp

The Class/Vendor Endpoint Decoding options an IN or Interrupt endpoint are:

- No Decoding
- ATAPI MMC4 In Endp
- ATAPI SPC3 In Endp
- ATAPI SSC2 In Endp
- CCID Bulk In Message
- CCD Data Bulk In w/ Cmd Wrapper
- CCD Data Bulk In w/ Prot & Cmd Wrapper
- CCD Data Bulk In w/ Prot Wrapper
- CCD Data Isoch In w/ Cmd Wrapper
- CCD Data Isoch In w/ Prot & Cmd Wrapper
- CCD Data Isoch In w/ Prot Wrapper
- Communication Class Interrupt Notification
- Display DATA
- HCI data in
- HCI event
- HCI SCO in
- HID In Endp
- HTTP In Endp
- Hub Class Status Change Endp
- ICCD Bulk In Message
- ICCD Interrupt Message
- IP_ET0800 (Internet Protocol) In Endp
- IPv6_ET0800 (Internet Protocol) In Endp
- IrDA Bridge In Endp
- Mass Strg Bulk-Only SCSI In Endp
- Mass Strg CBI Interrupt Endp
- Mass Strg UFI_CBI Bulk In Endp
- Mass Strg UFI_CBI Interrupt Endp
- RNDIS_PACKET_MSG Data In
- Still Image/PTP/MTP/PictBridge Bulk In
- Still Image/PTP/MTP/PictBridge Interrupt
- TCP (Transmission Control Protocol) In Endp
- Video Bulk In
- Video Interrupt
- Video Isoch In
- Virtual UART
- Wire Adapter Radio Notif Endp
- Wire Adapter Data Transfer In Endp
- Wire Adapter Notif Endp

**Step 6** Select the type of decoding.

OR

Select **No Decoding** if you do not want any specific decoding.

**Step 7** Repeat the previous steps for any additional endpoints you would like to map.

**Step 8** To retain a mapping from trace to trace DURING an application session, select the **Keep Across Recordings** checkbox.

**Step 9** Click **OK**.

### 8.2.3 Mapping Request RPipe to Class/Vendor Decoding

Before mapping Request RPipes to Class/Vendor Decoding, you must first assign the following endpoint decoders:

- Wire Adapter Data Out
- Wire Adapter Data In
- Wire Adapter Notif

To assign a decoding group to a Request RPipe:

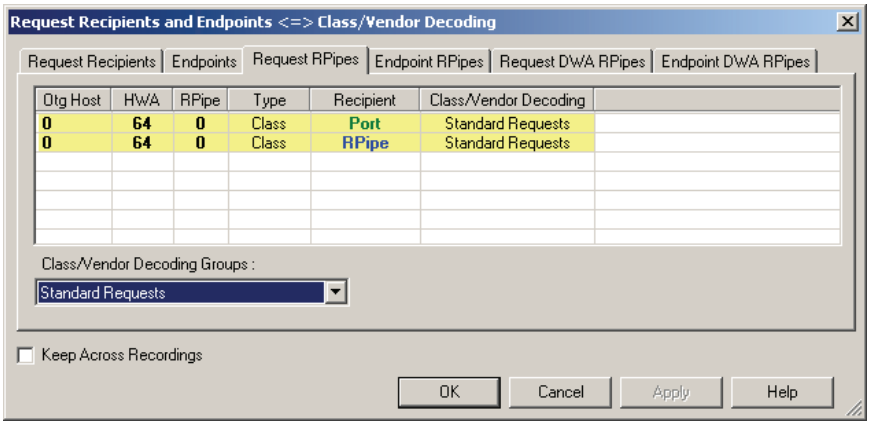
**Step 1** Click the **Apply Decoding Scripts** button on the Toolbar.

OR

Right-click the **Control Transfer** field to display the USB Device Request menu.

**Step 2** Select **Map RPipe to Class/Vendor Decoding** to display the Request Recipient and Endpoints dialog box.

**Step 3** Click the **Request RPipes** tab to display the Request RPipes dialog box:




The Recipient field shows all Class and Vendor Request recipients found in the trace file. The RPipe field shows all Class and Vendor Request RPipes found in the trace file. The displays shows the Otg Host, HWA address, and Type (Class or Vendor) for the recipient. On the right are the names of Class/Vendor Decoding groups currently assigned to recipients. If blank, no decoding is assigned for a recipient.

**Step 4** Select a recipient.

**Step 5** Display the **Class/Vendor Decoding Groups** drop-down menu. The Class/Vendor Decoding Groups are the same as for Request Recipients.

**Step 6** Select a decoding group.

OR

Select **No Decoding** if you do not want any specific decoding.

**Step 7** Repeat the previous steps for additional recipients.

**Step 8** To retain a mapping from trace to trace DURING an application session, select the **Keep Across Recordings** checkbox.

**Step 9** Click **OK**.

## 8.2.4 Mapping Endpoint RPipe to Class/Vendor Decoding

To assign a Class/Vendor Endpoint RPipes decoding:

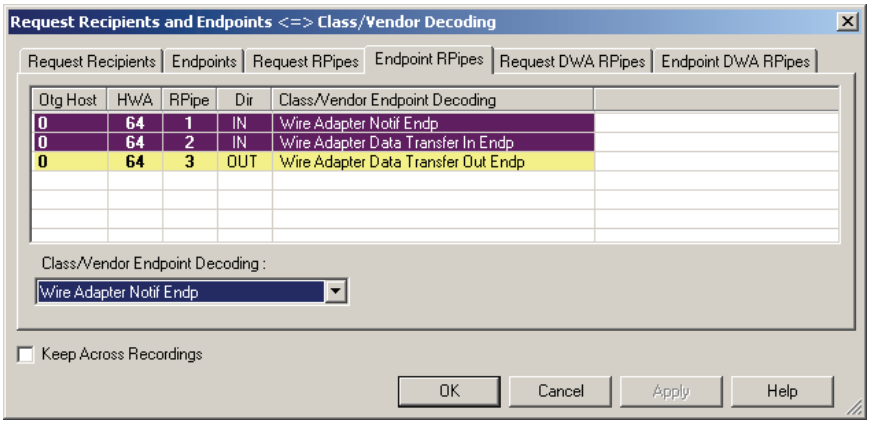
**Step 1** Click the **Apply Decoding Scripts** button on the Toolbar.

OR

Right-click the **Bulk/Int Transfer** field to display the USB Device Request menu.

**Step 2** Select **Map Endpoint RPipe to Class/Vendor Decoding** to display the Request Recipients and Endpoints dialog box.

**Step 3** Click the **Endpoint RPipes** tab to display the Endpoint RPipes dialog box:




The RPipe field shows all RPipes found in the trace file. The displays shows the Otg Host, HWA address, and Direction for the recipient. On the right are the names of Class/Vendor Endpoint Decoding groups currently assigned to endpoints. If blank, no decoding is assigned for a recipient.

**Step 4** Select an endpoint RPipe.

**Step 5** Display the **Class/Vendor Endpoint Decoding** drop-down menu. The Class/Vendor Endpoint Decoding options are the same as for Endpoints.

**Step 6** Select the type of decoding.

OR

Select **No Decoding** if you do not want any specific decoding.

**Step 7** Repeat the previous steps for any additional RPipes you would like to map.

**Step 8** To retain a mapping from trace to trace DURING an application session, select the **Keep Across Recordings** checkbox.

**Step 9** Click **OK**.

## 8.2.5 Mapping Request DWA RPipe to Class/Vendor Decoding

Before mapping Request DWA RPipes to Class/Vendor Decoding, you must first assign the following endpoint decoders:

- Wire Adapter Data Out
- Wire Adapter Data In
- Wire Adapter Notif

To assign a decoding group to a Request RPipe:

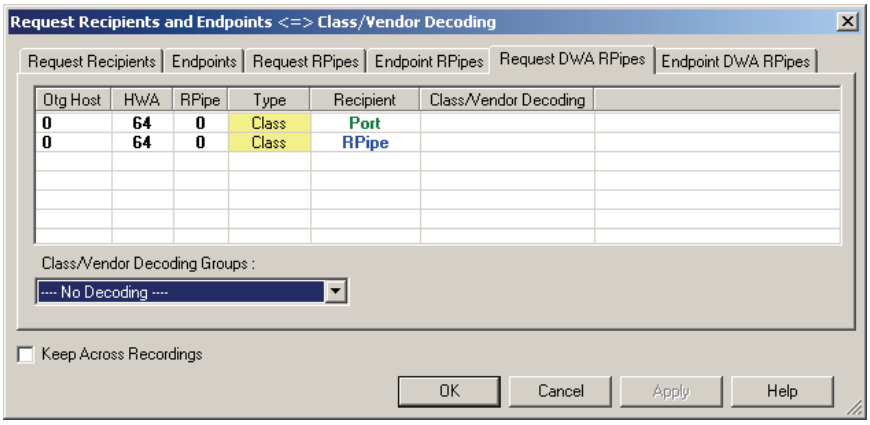
**Step 1** Click the **Apply Decoding Scripts** button on the Toolbar.

OR

Right-click the **Control Transfer** field to display the USB Device Request menu.

**Step 2** Select **Map DWA RPipe to Class/Vendor Decoding** to display the Request Recipient and Endpoints dialog box.

**Step 3** Click the **Request DWA RPipes** tab to display the Request DWA RPipes dialog box:




The Recipient field shows all Class and Vendor Request recipients found in the trace file. The RPipe field shows all Class and Vendor Request RPipes found in the trace file. The displays shows the Otg Host, HWA address, and Type (Class or Vendor) for the recipient. On the right are the names of Class/Vendor Decoding groups currently assigned to recipients. If blank, no decoding is assigned for a recipient.

**Step 4** Select a recipient.

**Step 5** Display the **Class/Vendor Decoding Groups** drop-down menu. The Class/Vendor Decoding Groups are the same as for Request Recipients.

**Step 6** Select a decoding group.

OR

Select **No Decoding** if you do not want any specific decoding.

**Step 7** Repeat the previous steps for additional recipients.

**Step 8** To retain a mapping from trace to trace DURING an application session, select the **Keep Across Recordings** checkbox.

**Step 9** Click **OK**.

## 8.2.6 Mapping Endpoint DWA RPipes to Class/Vendor Decoding

To assign a Class/Vendor Endpoint DWA RPipes decoding:

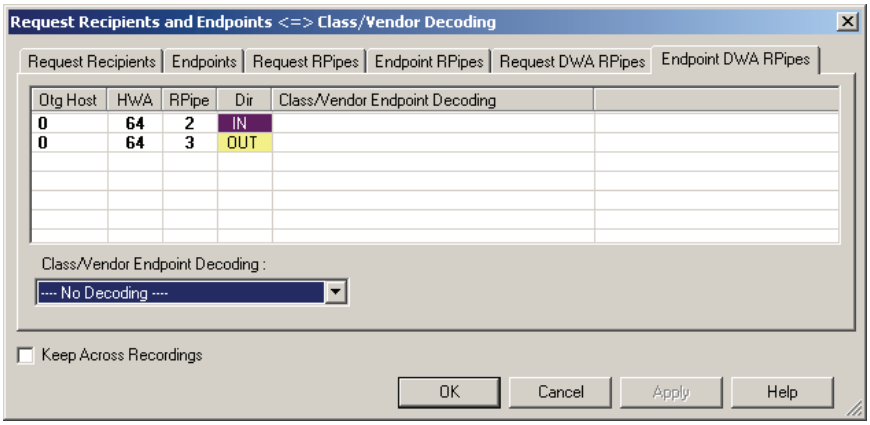
**Step 1** Click the **Apply Decoding Scripts** button on the Toolbar.

OR

Right-click the **Bulk/Int Transfer** field to display the USB/WUSB Device Request menu.

**Step 2** Select **Map Endpoint RPipe to Class/Vendor Decoding** to display the Request Recipients and Endpoints dialog box.

**Step 3** Click the **Endpoint RPipes** tab to display the Endpoint RPipes dialog box:




The RPipe field shows all RPipes found in the trace file. The displays shows the Otg Host, HWA address, and Direction for the recipient. On the right are the names of Class/Vendor Endpoint Decoding groups currently assigned to endpoints. If blank, no decoding is assigned for a recipient.

**Step 4** Select an endpoint DWA RPipe.

**Step 5** Display the **Class/Vendor Endpoint Decoding** drop-down menu. The Class/Vendor Endpoint Decoding options are the same as for Endpoints.

**Step 6** Select the type of decoding.

OR

Select **No Decoding** if you do not want any specific decoding.

**Step 7** Repeat the previous steps for any additional RPipes you would like to map.

**Step 8** To retain a mapping from trace to trace DURING an application session, select the **Keep Across Recordings** checkbox.

**Step 9** Click **OK**.

# 8.3 General Options

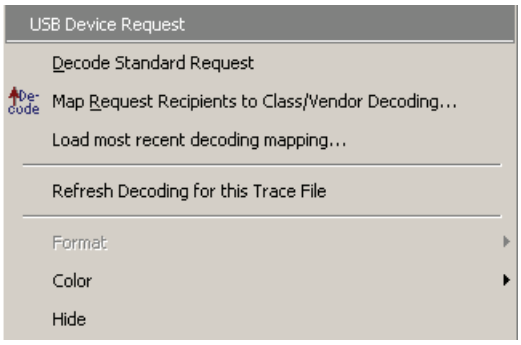
Commands are transferred on USB using special control transfers called USB Device Requests. The Analyzer can decode Device Requests as they are defined in the USB specifications and various Device Class and Vendor specifications.

Each USB Device Request is sent using a Control Transfer. Each Control Transfer starts with a SETUP transaction.

## 8.3.1 Decoding USB Device Requests

To decode a USB Device Request:

**Step 1** Right-click the **Control Transfer** field or the **SETUP** field of the USB Device Request to display the USB Device Request menu:




**Note**:The menus shown in this section are context-sensitive. You may see slightly different menus.

**Step 2** To refresh decoding, click Refresh Decoding for this Trace File. Use this option to reanalyze all transactions.

**Step 3** To use the previous decoding, click **Load most recent decoding mapping**.

This option loads the most recent mapping of endpoints/requests to decoding types that was done on a previous trace. If the endpoints of the new trace are the same as the last one mapped, the mappings are applied to the current trace. This saves the user from having to constantly apply the mapping to a new trace every time the application is restarted and a new trace created.

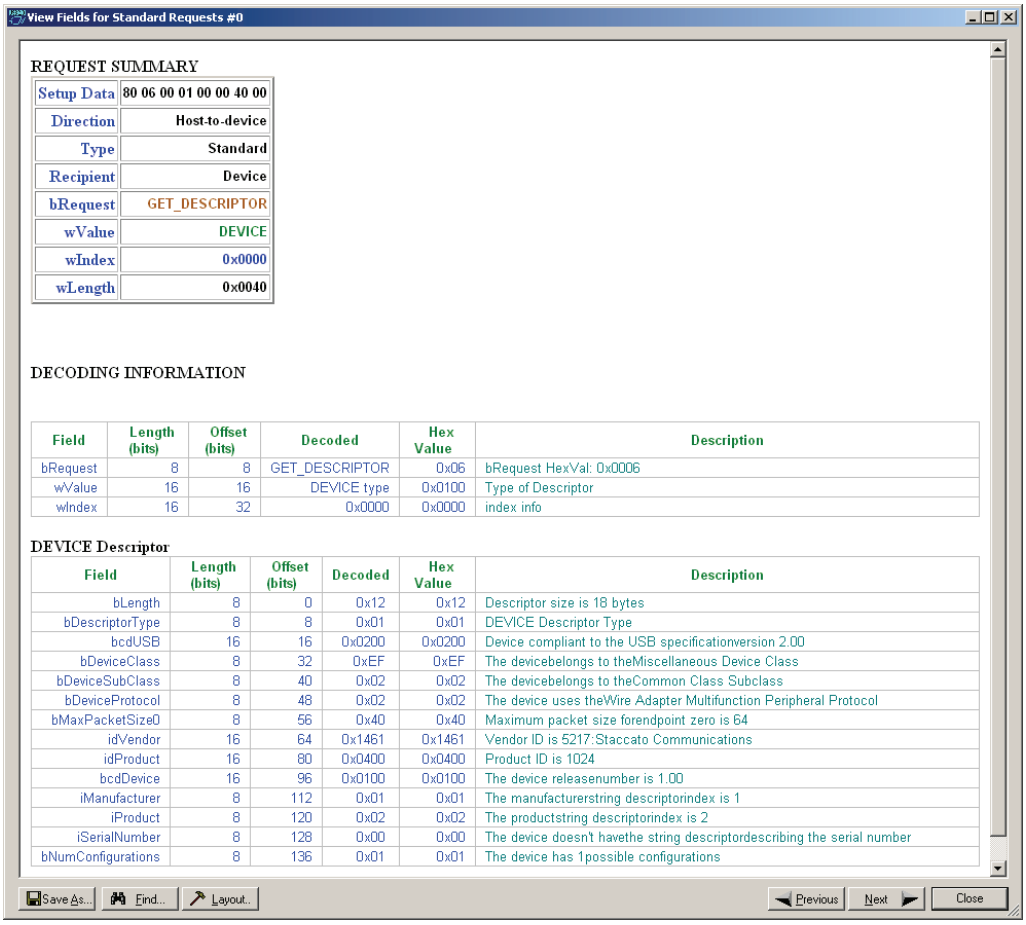
The ability to retain the mapping from trace to trace DURING an application session already exists: the Keep Across Recordings button in the endpoint map dialog. This new feature simplifies the process when the application has been re-started.

**Note**:You can also change the format, color, and hidden status of fields, using the same methods as in Display Options. (See Chapter 6, Display Options.)

## 8.3.2 Decoding Standard Requests

To decode a standard request:

**Step 1** From the USB Device Request menu, select **Decode Standard Request** to display the View Fields for Standard Request text box:


View Fields for Standard Requests #0
REQUEST SUMMARY
Setup Data 80 06 00 01 00 00 40 00
Direction Host-to-device
Type Standard
Recipient Device
bRequest GET_DESCRIPTOR
wValue DEVICE
wIndex 0x0000
wLength 0x0040
DECODING INFORMATION
Field Length (bits) Offset (bits) Decoded Hex Value Description
bRequest 8 8 GET_DESCRIPTOR 0x06 bRequest HexVal: 0x0006
wValue 16 16 DEVICE type 0x0100 Type of Descriptor
wIndex 16 32 0x0000 0x0000 index info
DEVICE Descriptor
Field Length (bits) Offset (bits) Decoded Hex Value Description
bLength 8 0 0x12 0x12 Descriptor size is 18 bytes
bDescriptorType 8 8 0x01 0x01 DEVICE Descriptor Type
bcdUSB 16 16 0x0200 0x0200 Device compliant to the USB specificationversion 2.00
bDeviceClass 8 32 0xEF 0xEF The devicebelongs to theMiscellaneous Device Class
bDeviceSubClass 8 40 0x02 0x02 The devicebelongs to theCommon Class Subclass
bDeviceProtocol 8 48 0x02 0x02 The device uses theWire Adapter Multifunction Peripheral Protocol
bMaxPacketSize0 8 56 0x40 0x40 Maximum packet size forendpoint zero is 64
idVendor 16 64 0x1461 0x1461 Vendor ID is 5217:Staccato Communications
idProduct 16 80 0x0400 0x0400 Product ID is 1024
bcdDevice 16 96 0x0100 0x0100 The device releasenumber is 1.00
iManufacturer 8 112 0x01 0x01 The manufacturerstring descriptorindex is 1
iProduct 8 120 0x02 0x02 The productstring descriptorindex is 2
iSerialNumber 8 128 0x00 0x00 The device doesn't havethe string descriptordescribing the serial number
bNumConfigurations 8 136 0x01 0x01 The device has 1possible configurations
Save As... Find... Layout... Previous Next Close

**Step 2** To find a word in the text box, click the **Find** button. Enter the word in the Find What field. To use a case-sensitive search, check **Match Case**. To find only the exact word, check **Match Whole Word Only.** You can search **Up** or **Down**. To search, click **Find Next.**

**Step 3** To save the View Fields text box as an HTML file, click the **Save As** button, enter a file name in the Save As dialog box, then click **Save**.

**Step 4** To view the previous or next Transfer Control field request of the same request type, click **Previous** or **Next**.

The View Fields for Standard Request dialog box displays field definitions and values of the Standard Request.

For field definitions, please refer to the *Universal Serial Bus Specification, version 2.0.* The USB specification is available from the USB Implementers Forum (USB-IF) at:

USB Implementers Forum
1730 SW Skyline Blvd.
Suite 203
Portland, OR 97221

Tel: +1/503.296.9892
Fax: +1/503.297.1090
Web: http://www.usb.org/

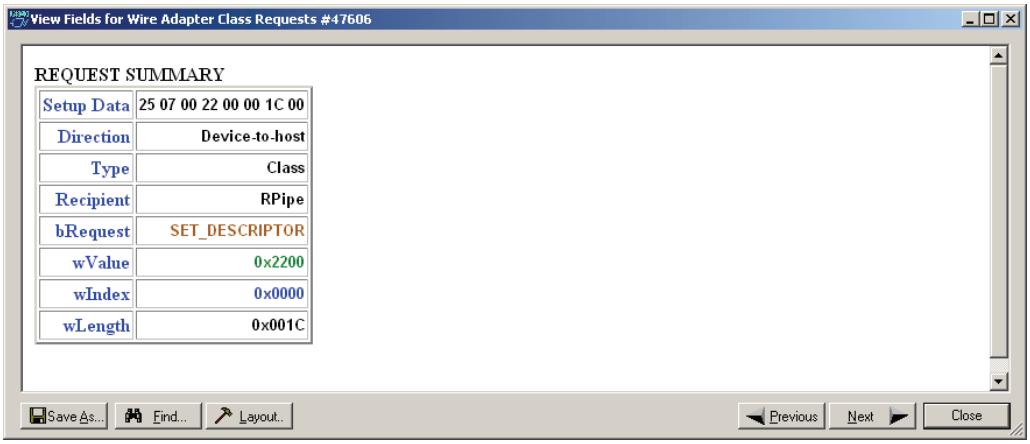
## 8.3.3 Decoding Class Requests

Examples of a class request are Mass-Strg Class UFI CBI Requests, PTP Still Image Class Requests, Video Class Requests, and Wire Adapter Class Requests.

To decode a class request:

**Step 1** From the USB Device Request menu, select **Decode ... Request** to display the View Fields for ... Class Requests text box.

The following figure shows a Wire Adapter Class Requests decoding:




## 8.3.4 Decoding Vendor Requests

To decode a vendor request:

- From the USB Device Request menu, select **Decode ... Request** to display the View Fields for ... Vendor Requests text box.

An example of a vendor request is Command Set.

## 8.3.5 Decoding Undefined USB/WUSB Device Requests

A Decoding Request may not belong to any of the defined decoding groups (Standard, Class, or Vendor).

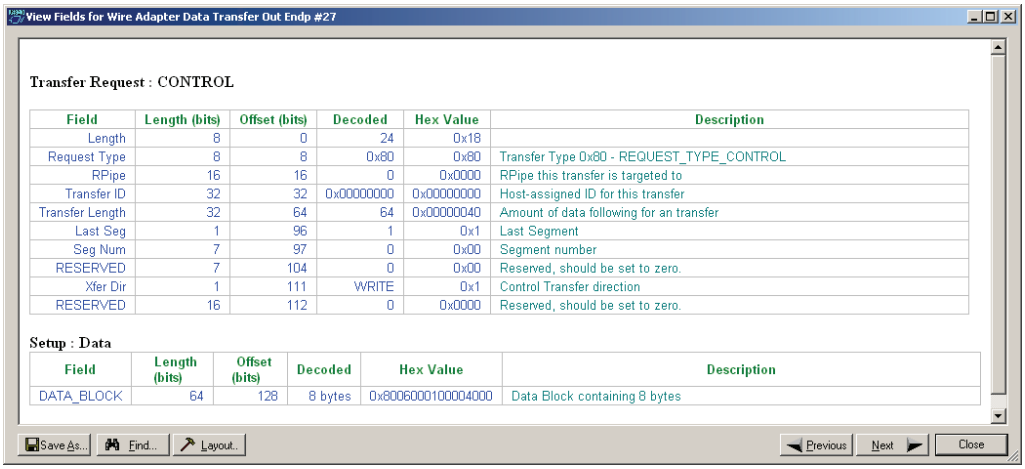
## 8.3.6 Decoding using Endpoint Information

To decode using the endpoint information:

**Step 1** Right-click the **Bulk/Int Transfer** field to display the Bulk/Int Transfer (IN/OUT transaction with data) menu.

**Step 2** Select **Decode as ... Endp** to open a View Fields for ... Endp text box.

The following figure shows a Wire Adapter Data Transfer Out Endp decoding:


View Fields for Wire Adapter Data Transfer Out Endp #27
Transfer Request : CONTROL
Field | Length (bits) | Offset (bits) | Decoded | Hex Value | Description
Length | 8 | 0 | 24 | 0x18 |
Request Type | 8 | 8 | 0x80 | 0x80 | Transfer Type 0x80 - REQUEST_TYPE_CONTROL
RPipe | 16 | 16 | 0 | 0x0000 | RPipe this transfer is targeted to
Transfer ID | 32 | 32 | 0x00000000 | 0x00000000 | Host-assigned ID for this transfer
Transfer Length | 32 | 64 | 64 | 0x00000040 | Amount of data following for an transfer
Last Seg | 1 | 96 | 1 | 0x1 | Last Segment
Seg Num | 7 | 97 | 0 | 0x00 | Segment number
RESERVED | 7 | 104 | 0 | 0x00 | Reserved, should be set to zero.
Xfer Dir | 1 | 111 | WRITE | 0x1 | Control Transfer direction
RESERVED | 16 | 112 | 0 | 0x0000 | Reserved, should be set to zero.
Setup : Data
Field | Length (bits) | Offset (bits) | Decoded | Hex Value | Description
DATA_BLOCK | 64 | 128 | 8 bytes | 0x8006000100004000 | Data Block containing 8 bytes
Save As... | Find... | Layout... | Previous | Next | Close

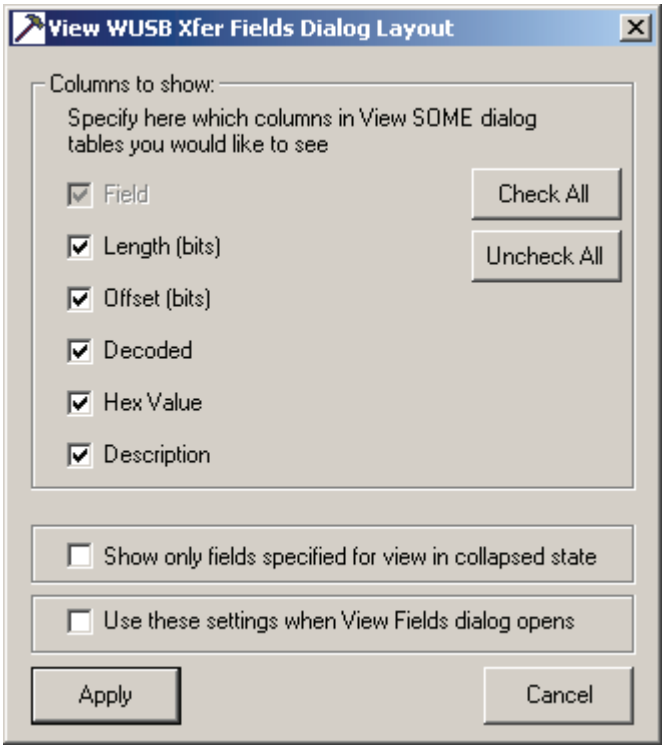
## 8.3.7 Changing the Layout of Decode Requests

In the View ... Fields windows, the Decoding Information and the Descriptor information blocks (following the Request Summary information) have the following columns:

- **Field**: such as bRequest, wValue, wIndex, bLength, bDescriptorType, wTotalLength
- **Length in bits**
- **Offset in bits**
- **Decoded**: hex value typically equal to Hex Value
- **Hex Value**: hex value typically equal to Decoded
- **Description**: short description of field

To change the layout of decode requests display:

**Step 1** Click **Layout** to display the View ... Fields Dialog Layout dialog box:




**Step 2** To display the available columns of data, use the checkboxes for **Length, Offset, Decoded, Hex Value**, and **Description**.

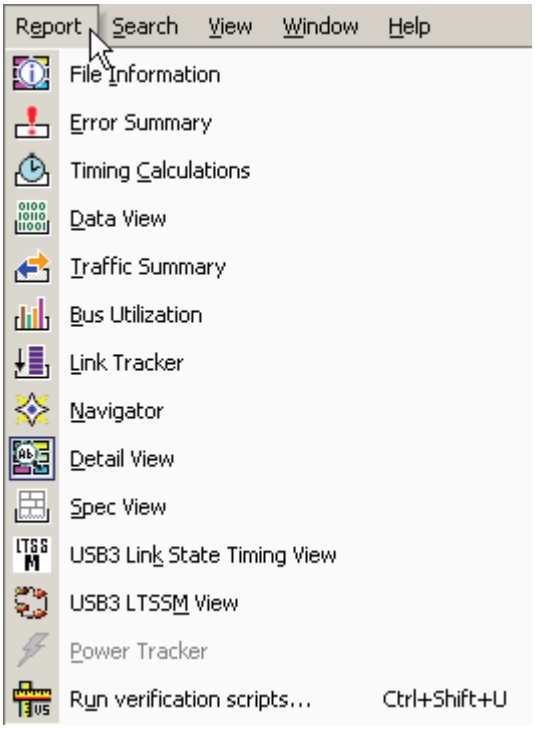
You can **Check All** or **Uncheck All**.

**Step 3** To show only the fields of Collapsed mode, check **Show only fields specified for view in collapsed mode**.

**Step 4** To retain settings for future viewing of Decode Request fields, check **Use these settings when View Fields dialog opens**.

# Chapter 9: Reports

The Report menu provides several reports to assist you in analyzing USB traffic recorded by the Analyzer.




Reports assist you in analyzing traffic recorded by the Analyzer. The available reports are:

- **File Information**: To view general information about the trace file.
- **Error Summary**: To view a count of errors in a trace file.
- **Timing Calculations**: To view timing measured between two events set within the trace file.
- **Data View (Packet Data)**: Shows packet payload contents.
- **Traffic Summary**: To view a summary of protocol-related information in the trace file summary information about a selected group of items in the trace file (such as a count of particular frame or packet types).
- **Bus Utilization**: To display information on bandwidth usage for the transmit and receive channels.
- **Link Tracker (3.0)**: Displays a detailed chronological view of events.
- **Trace Navigator**: Navigates within the trace to view the location of errors and triggers, narrow the range of traffic on display, and jump to any point in the trace.
- **Detail View**: Shows details of selected packet.
- **Spec View (3.0)**: Shows packet header information and other items, in a view that matches the USB 3.0 specification.

- **USB3 Link State Timing View**: Graphically shows how much time the link spends in each link state.
- **USB3 LTSSM View**: Displays the LTSSM diagram depicted in the USB 3.0 specification.
- **Power Tracker** (Voyager M3i only)**:** Displays voltage, current, and power. You can select Hide, Full Screen, Sync by Time, or Real Time Monitor.
- **Run Verification Scripts**: Opens a window to allow you to run verification scripts over the open trace.
- **Real Time Statistics**: To display statistical information for the channels.

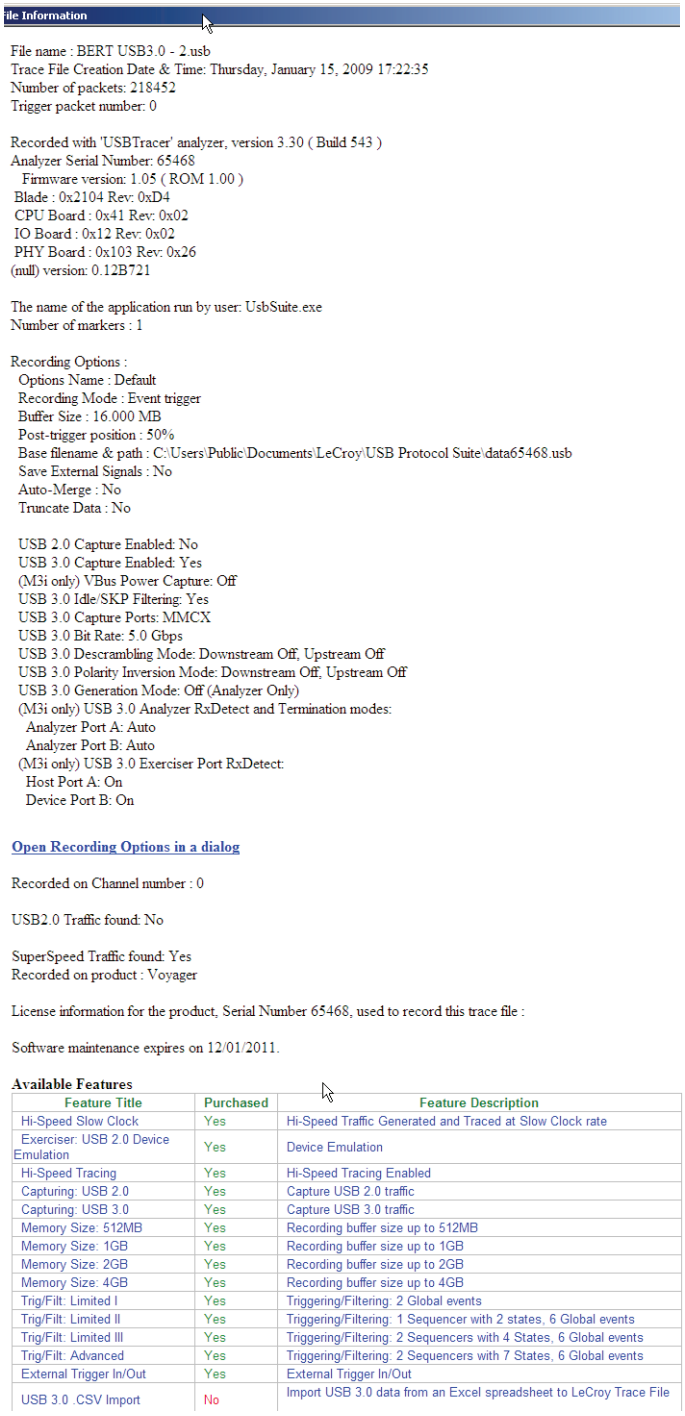
Reports are available from the Report menu and buttons on the Tool bar. Tools are available from the Tools menu.

**Note 1**: Similar to the windows in most Windows™ programs, most report views are dockable and tab-able.

**Note 2**: When you open a report view, the software attempts to apply the user preferences used when you most recently viewed the report.

# 9.1 File Information

To display a File Information report, select **File Information** under **Report** in the Menu Bar, or click in the Tool Bar to display the File Information screen:



ile Information

File name : BERT USB3.0 - 2.usb
Trace File Creation Date & Time: Thursday, January 15, 2009 17:22:35
Number of packets: 218452
Trigger packet number: 0

Recorded with 'USBTracer' analyzer, version 3.30 ( Build 543 )
Analyzer Serial Number: 65468
Firmware version: 1.05 ( ROM 1.00 )
Blade : 0x2104 Rev: 0xD4
CPU Board : 0x41 Rev: 0x02
IO Board : 0x12 Rev: 0x02
PHY Board : 0x103 Rev: 0x26
(null) version: 0.12B721

The name of the application run by user: UsbSuite.exe
Number of markers : 1

Recording Options :
Options Name : Default
Recording Mode : Event trigger
Buffer Size : 16.000 MB
Post-trigger position : 50%
Base filename & path : C:\Users\Public\Documents\LeCroy\USB Protocol Suite\data65468.usb
Save External Signals : No
Auto-Merge : No
Truncate Data : No

USB 2.0 Capture Enabled: No
USB 3.0 Capture Enabled: Yes
(M3i only) VBus Power Capture: Off
USB 3.0 Idle/SKP Filtering: Yes
USB 3.0 Capture Ports: MMCX
USB 3.0 Bit Rate: 5.0 Gbps
USB 3.0 Descrambling Mode: Downstream Off, Upstream Off
USB 3.0 Polarity Inversion Mode: Downstream Off, Upstream Off
USB 3.0 Generation Mode: Off (Analyzer Only)
(M3i only) USB 3.0 Analyzer RxDetect and Termination modes:
Analyzer Port A: Auto
Analyzer Port B: Auto
(M3i only) USB 3.0 Exerciser Port RxDetect:
Host Port A: On
Device Port B: On

Open Recording Options in a dialog

Recorded on Channel number : 0

USB2.0 Traffic found: No

SuperSpeed Traffic found: Yes
Recorded on product : Voyager

License information for the product, Serial Number 65468, used to record this trace file :

Software maintenance expires on 12/01/2011.

**Available Features**

| Feature Title | Purchased | Feature Description |
|---|---|---|
| Hi-Speed Slow Clock | Yes | Hi-Speed Traffic Generated and Traced at Slow Clock rate |
| Exerciser: USB 2.0 Device Emulation | Yes | Device Emulation |
| Hi-Speed Tracing | Yes | Hi-Speed Tracing Enabled |
| Capturing: USB 2.0 | Yes | Capture USB 2.0 traffic |
| Capturing: USB 3.0 | Yes | Capture USB 3.0 traffic |
| Memory Size: 512MB | Yes | Recording buffer size up to 512MB |
| Memory Size: 1GB | Yes | Recording buffer size up to 1GB |
| Memory Size: 2GB | Yes | Recording buffer size up to 2GB |
| Memory Size: 4GB | Yes | Recording buffer size up to 4GB |
| Trig/Filt: Limited I | Yes | Triggering/Filtering: 2 Global events |
| Trig/Filt: Limited II | Yes | Triggering/Filtering: 1 Sequencer with 2 states, 6 Global events |
| Trig/Filt: Limited III | Yes | Triggering/Filtering: 2 Sequencers with 4 States, 6 Global events |
| Trig/Filt: Advanced | Yes | Triggering/Filtering: 2 Sequencers with 7 States, 6 Global events |
| External Trigger In/Out | Yes | External Trigger In/Out |
| USB 3.0 .CSV Import | No | Import USB 3.0 data from an Excel spreadsheet to LeCroy Trace File |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Real-Time Bus Monitoring | Yes | 3.0 Real-Time Statistics graphs |
| Exerciser: USB 2.0 Host Emulation | Yes | USB 2.0 Host Emulation |
| Exerciser: USB 3.0 Host Emulation | Yes | USB 3.0 Host Emulation |
| Exerciser: USB 3.0 Device Emulation | Yes | USB 3.0 Device Emulation |
| Memory Size: 64MB | No | Recording buffer size up to 64 MB |
| Automation API | Yes | Automation API |
| USB 3.0 Slow Clock | Yes | USB 3.0 traffic generated and captured at Slow Clock rate (less than 100 Mbps) |
| USB 3.0 Slow Clock Divider | Yes | USB 3.0 traffic generated and captured at Slow Clock Divider rate (1.25 Gbps and 2.5 Gbps) |
| UASP Decodes | No | USB Attached SCSI Protocol Decodes |
| Compliance | No | USB 3.0 Compliance Suite |
| USB 3.0 SMA Input/Output | Yes | USB 3.0 traffic generated and captured via SMA connectors |
| Host Interface: Gigabit Ethernet | Yes | Gigabit Ethernet link for host interface communications |
| Snapshot Only | No | Minimum Trigger Filter, Snapshot Only |
| Application Layer View | Yes | Decodes Transfer layer and above |
| Low-Layer View | Yes | Decodes Packet, Transaction and Transfer layers and Standard Descriptors |
| LTSSM View | Yes | Link Training and Status State Machine Views |
| Spec View | Yes | Specification View |
| USB 2.0 RTS | Yes | USB 2.0 Real-time Statistics |
| VSE | Yes | Verification Script Engine (trace parser) |
| Capture VBus Power | No | Capture USB VBus Power Information |
| Capture Self-Power | No | Capture External Self-Power Information |
| Class Decodes | Yes | Allow Class Decodes |
| Vendor Decodes | Yes | Allow User-Defined Vendor Decodes |
| Bus Utilization View | Yes | Bus Utilization View |
| Timing Calc | Yes | Timing Calculator |
| .CSV Export | Yes | Export to .CSV Excel file |
| App Layer Trig/Filt | No | Filter NAKs and Pings |

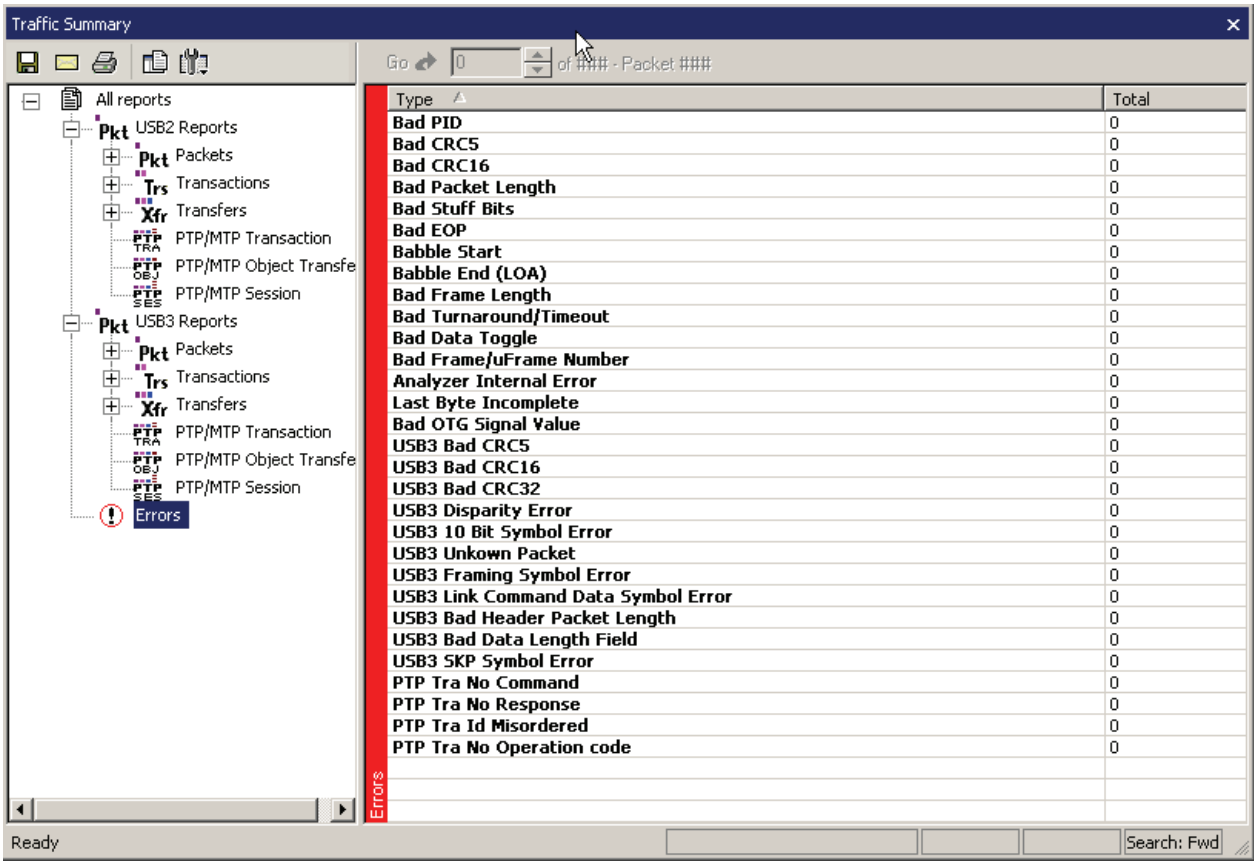
The File Information report provides information about how the recording was made, what the buffer settings were, what the trigger options were, and what version of all the Analyzer hardware was used to make the recording.

The File Information dialog provides a link, **Open Recording Options in a dialog**, so you can load a copy of the recording options that existed when the file was recorded.

# 9.2 Error Summary

The Error Summary details all errors analyzed throughout the recording.

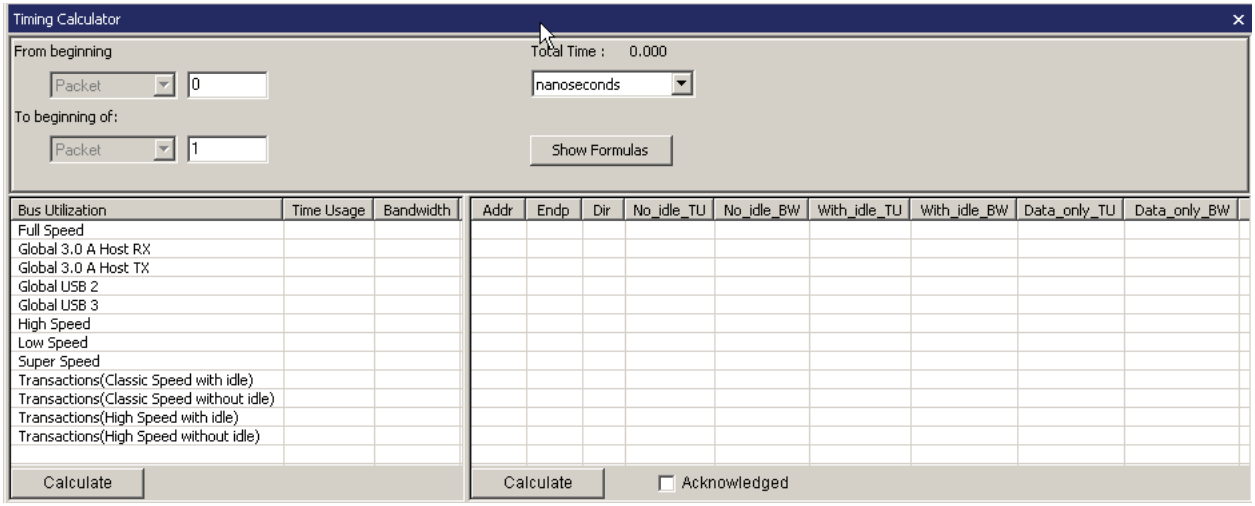
- Select **Error Summary** under **Report** in the Menu Bar
  OR
- Click in the Tool Bar to display the Error screen below the Trace View:



# 9.3 Timing Calculations

The Timing Calculator is used to measure timing between any two packets.

- Select **Timing Calculations** under **Report** in the Menu Bar
  OR
- Click in the Tool Bar to display the Timing Calculator screen:

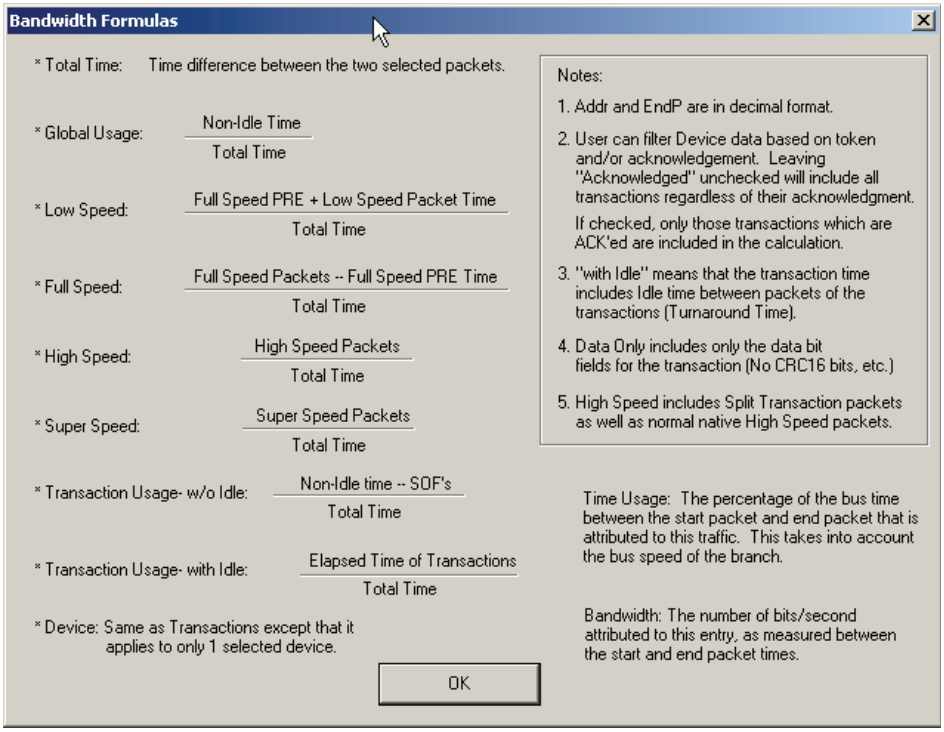



**Step 1** In the **From beginning** field, enter the first packet number or Markers.

**Step 2** In the **To beginning of** field, enter the last packet number or Markers.

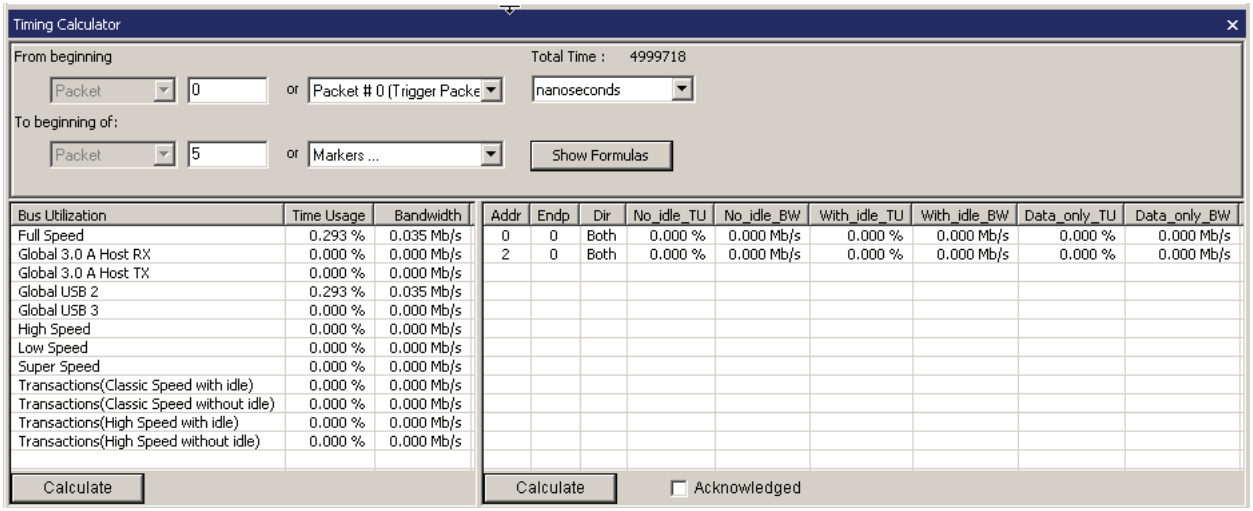
**Step 3** In the **Total Time** field, select **nanoseconds, microseconds, milliseconds**, or **seconds**.

**Step 4** Click the **Show Formulas** button to display the Bandwidth Formulas window, with the formulas used.


Bandwidth Formulas
* Total Time: Time difference between the two selected packets.
* Global Usage: Non-Idle Time / Total Time
* Low Speed: Full Speed PRE + Low Speed Packet Time / Total Time
* Full Speed: Full Speed Packets -- Full Speed PRE Time / Total Time
* High Speed: High Speed Packets / Total Time
* Super Speed: Super Speed Packets / Total Time
* Transaction Usage- w/o Idle: Non-Idle time -- SOF's / Total Time
* Transaction Usage- with Idle: Elapsed Time of Transactions / Total Time
* Device: Same as Transactions except that it applies to only 1 selected device.
OK
Notes:
1. Addr and EndP are in decimal format.
2. User can filter Device data based on token and/or acknowledgement. Leaving "Acknowledged" unchecked will include all transactions regardless of their acknowledgment. If checked, only those transactions which are ACK'ed are included in the calculation.
3. "with Idle" means that the transaction time includes Idle time between packets of the transactions (Turnaround Time).
4. Data Only includes only the data bit fields for the transaction (No CRC16 bits, etc.)
5. High Speed includes Split Transaction packets as well as normal native High Speed packets.
Time Usage: The percentage of the bus time between the start packet and end packet that is attributed to this traffic. This takes into account the bus speed of the branch.
Bandwidth: The number of bits/second attributed to this entry, as measured between the start and end packet times.

**Step 5** Click **Calculate** in the left side to display the Bus Utilization, Time Usage, and Bandwidth. Bus Utilization is:

- Full Speed
- Global 3.0 A Host RX
- Global 3.0 A Host TX
- Global USB 2
- Global USB 3
- High Speed
- Low Speed
- Super Speed
- Transactions (Classic Speed with Idle)
- Transactions (Classic Speed without Idle)
- Transactions (High Speed with Idle)
- Transactions (High Speed without Idle)




Total Time is in the Total Time field.

**Step 6** Click **Calculate** in the right side to display:

- Address
- Endpoint
- Direction
- No Idle Time Usage
- No Idle Bandwidth
- With Idle Time Usage
- With Idle Bandwidth
- Data only Time USage
- Data only Bandwidth

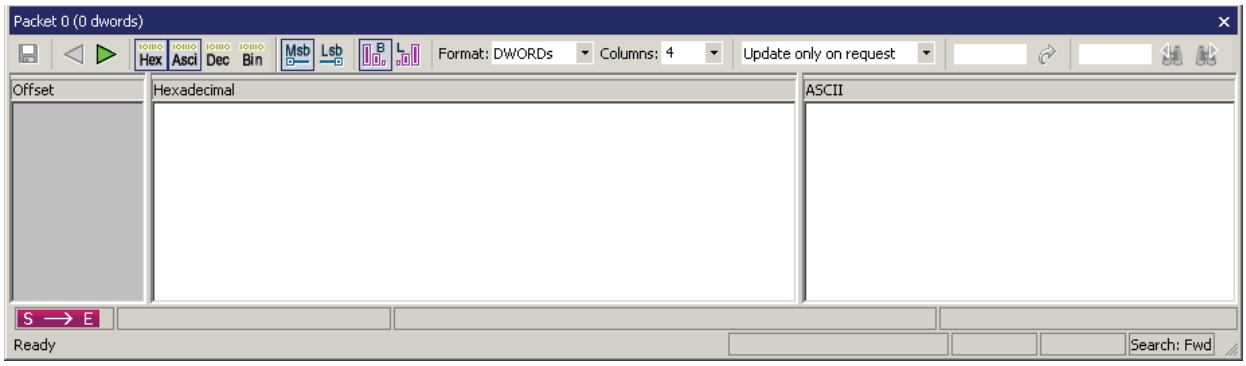
You can also click the **Acknowledged** checkbox.

# 9.4 Data View

The Data View window shows packet information.

To obtain the Data View window, select **Report > Data View**

or click the toolbar icon.




The Data View toolbar buttons allow you to:

- Save
- Go to Previous or Next
- Display Hexadecimal, ASCII, Decimal, or Binary
- Use MSB Format or LSB Format
- Use Big Endian or Little Endian

The Format field allows you to enter the number of BYTEs, WORDs, or DWORDs per line.

The Columns field allows you to set the number of columns.

You can **Update only on request, Update on click**, or **Update on scroll**.

You can enter an offset in the Scroll to Offset field and click the **arrow** to scroll there.

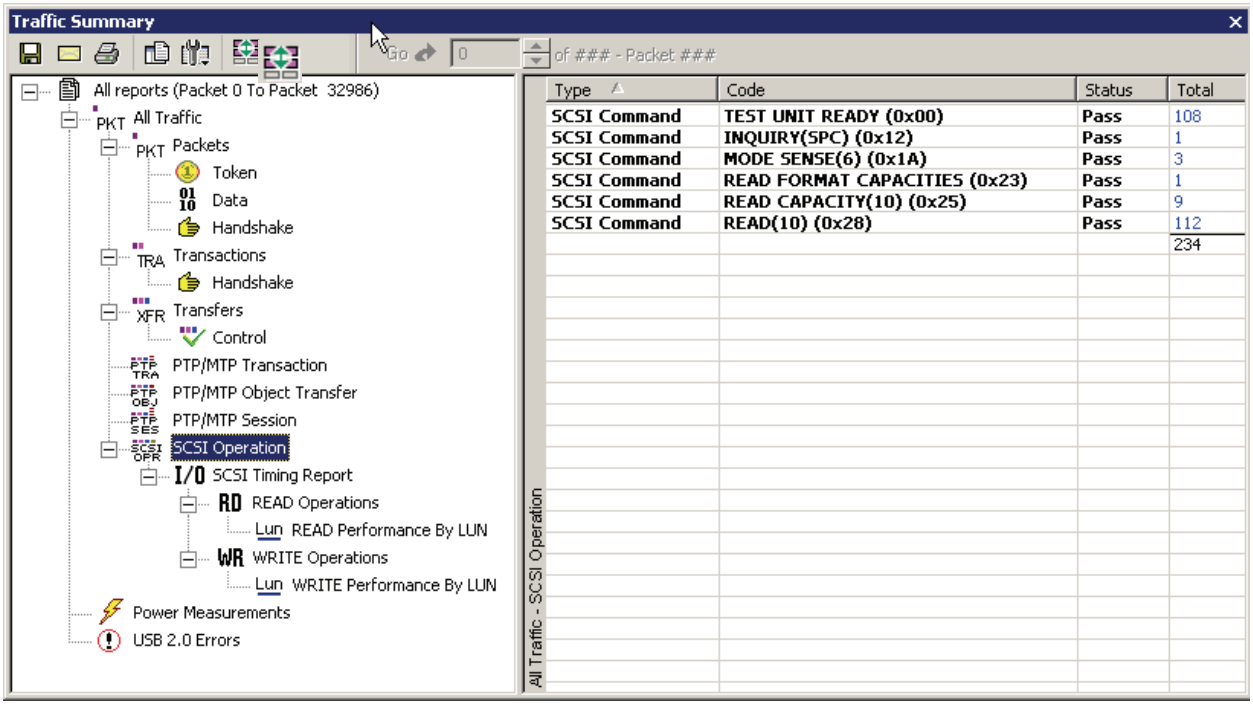
You can enter text in the Search field and click **Search Previous** or **Search Next** to go there.

# 9.5 Traffic Summary

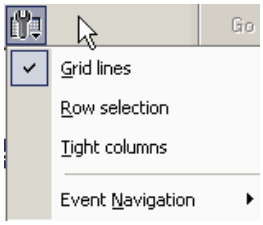
**Traffic Summary** summarizes the numbers and types of packets, transactions etc. that occurred in the open trace.

To run **Traffic Summary**, select **Report >Traffic Summary** or

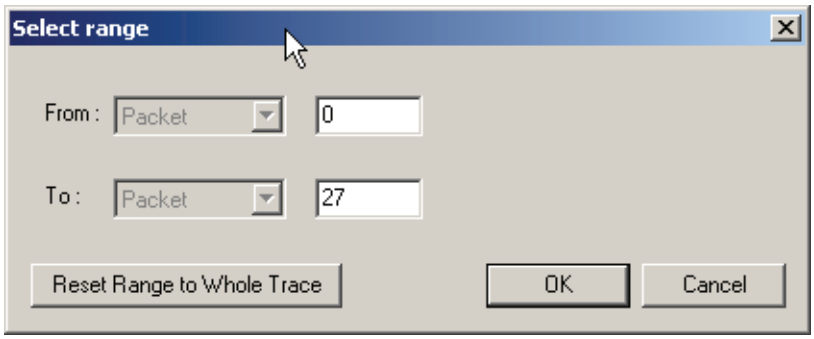
click the button marked . The program prompts you to specify a range of packets, then displays the following window:




The Options menu allows you to show Grid lines, Row selection, and Tight columns. You can have Event Navigation: Skip hidden items, Show hidden items, and Prompt for hidden.



Click to display the Select Range dialog.

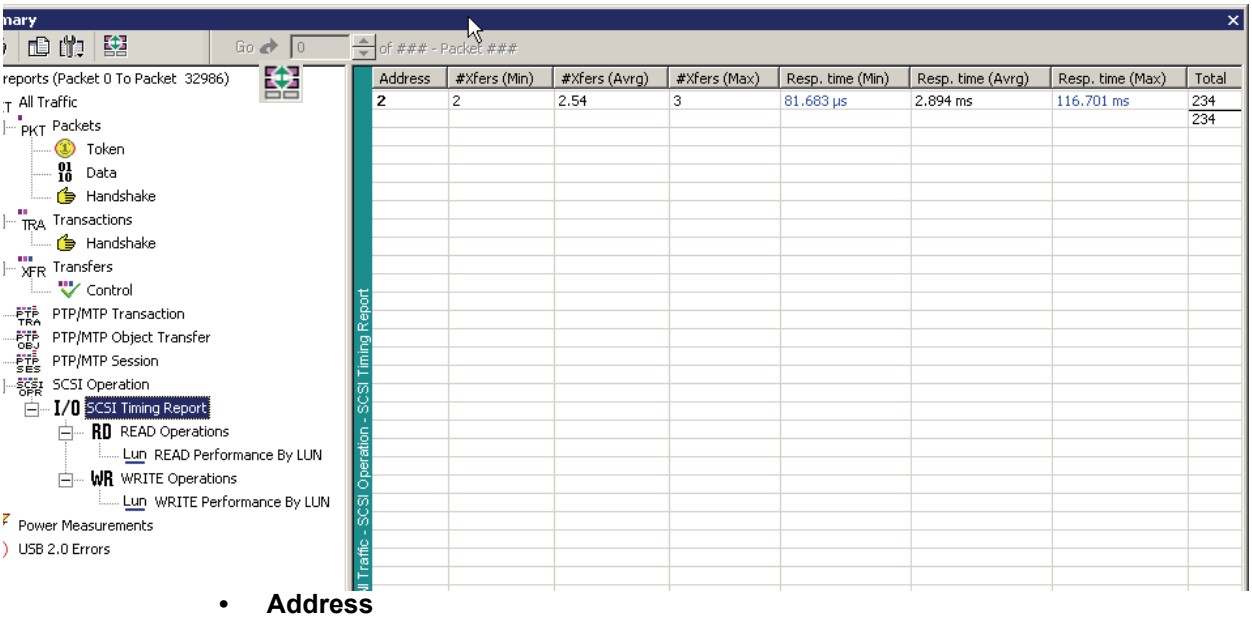



Enter a number **From** and a number **To.**

You can **Reset Range to Whole Trace**.

## 9.5.1 SCSI Metrics

The SCSI Metrics are:




- **Address**
- **Number Of Transfers**: Total number of transfers that compose the SCSI operation
- **Response Time**: Time to transmit on the USB link, from the beginning of the first transfer in the SCSI operation to the end of the last transfer in the SCSI operation
- **Latency**: Time from the transmission of the SCSI command to the first data transmitted for the SCSI IO operation
- **Data To Status Time**: Time between the end of data transmission for the SCSI operation and the status transfer
- **Payload**: Number of payload bytes transferred by the SCSI operation

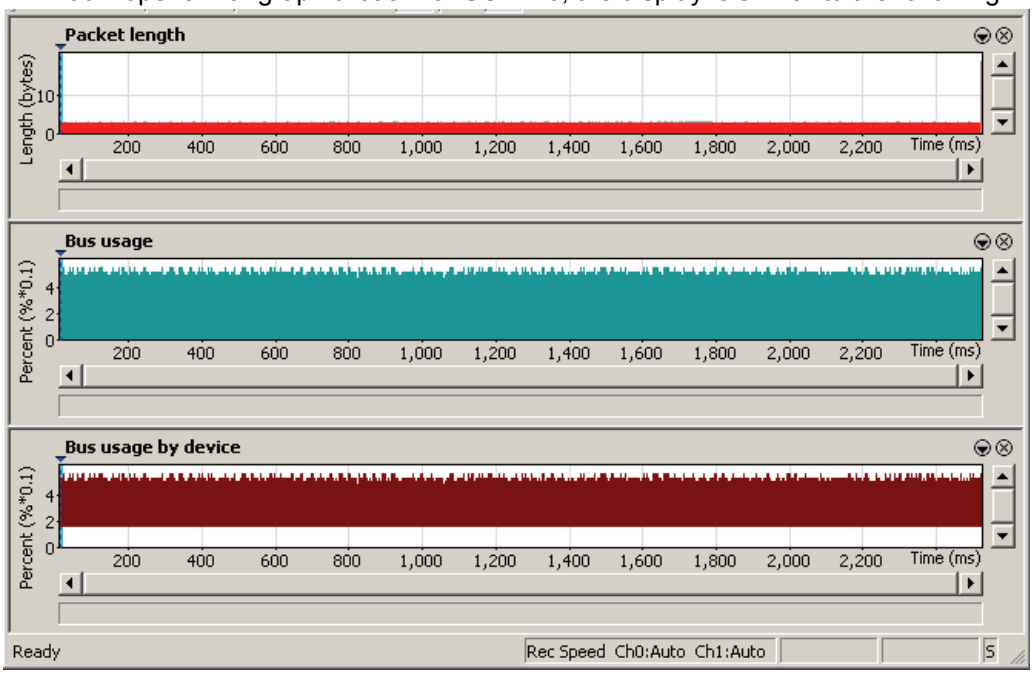
# 9.6 Bus Utilization

The **Bus Utilization** window displays information on bandwidth use for the three recording channels.

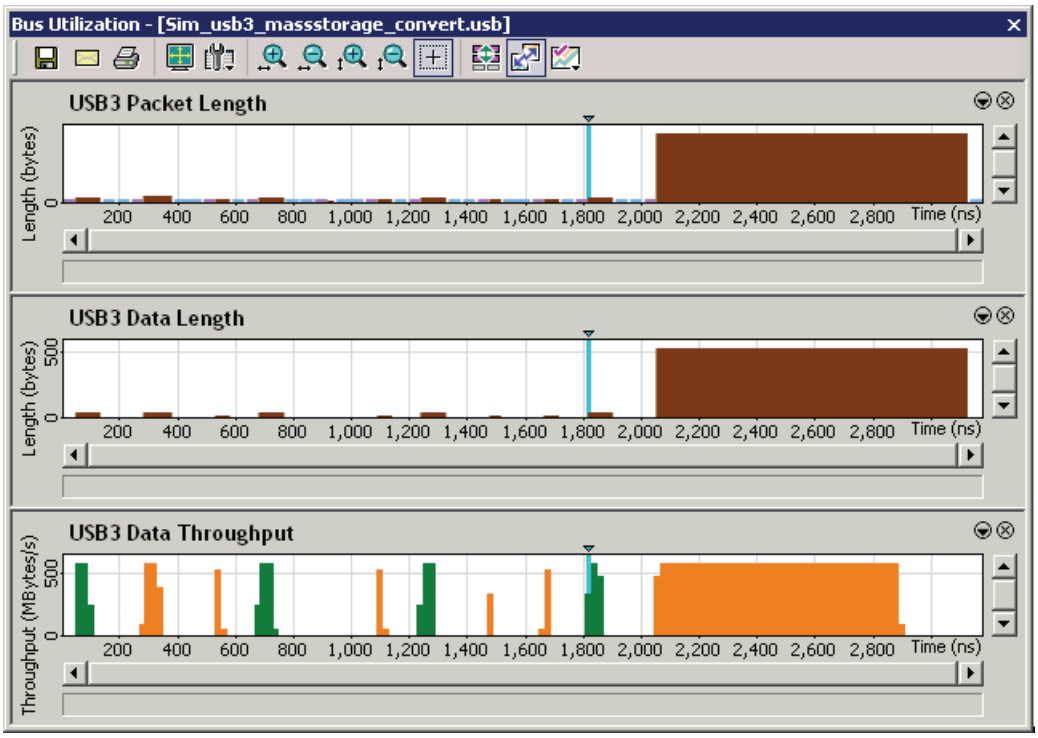
To open the Bus Utilization window, select **Report >Bus Utilization**

or click the button marked .

A window opens with graph areas. For USB 2.0, the display is similar to the following:



For USB 3.0, the display is similar to the following:



## 9.6.1 Bus Utilization Buttons

The Bus Utilization window has a row of buttons for changing the format of the displayed data and for exporting data:

The buttons have the following functions:

Save As - Saves the graphs as a bitmap file (*.bmp)

Email - Creates an email with a *.bmp file attachment of the graphs

Print

Full Screen

View Settings - opens a sub-menu with options for formatting the display. See *9.6.2*"View Settings Menu" below.

Horizontal zoom in

Horizontal zoom out

Vertical zoom in

Vertical zoom out

Click and Drag zoom - Click diagonally to select and zoom in on part of the graph

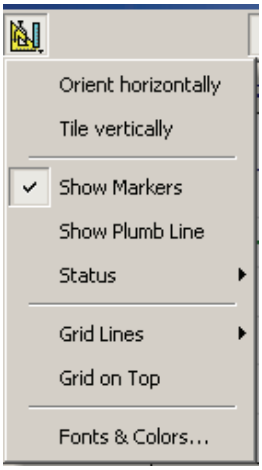
Select Range.

Sync and Graph areas - If two or more graphs are displayed, this button synchronizes the graphs to one another. Once synchronized, the positioning slider of one graph moves the other graphs.

Graph Areas - Presents options for displaying additional graphs of data lengths, packet lengths, and percentage of bus utilized.

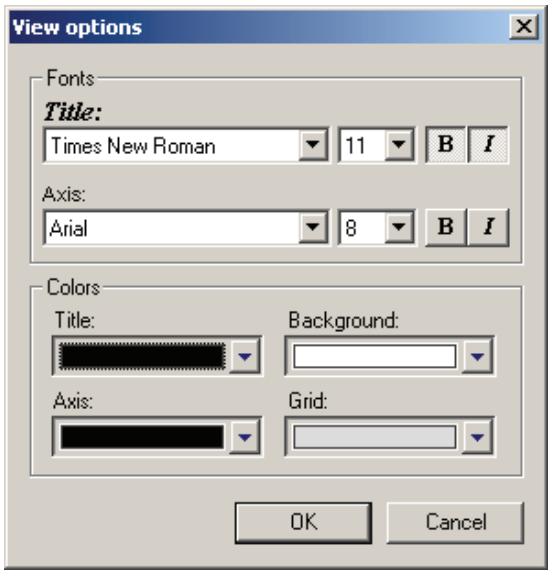
## 9.6.2 View Settings Menu

Clicking the View Settings button causes a menu to open with options for formatting the display.




- **Orient Horizontally**: changes the orientation of bus usage to horizontal. After selecting this option, the menu has Orient Vertically.
- **Tile Vertically**: tiles the two graphs vertically (i.e., side by side). After selecting this option, the menu has Tile Horizontally.
- **Show Markers**: Places "tick" marks along the x axis of each graph.
- Show Plumb Line
- **Status**: Opens a sub-menu with the following options:
  - **Bar**: Displays a status bar at bottom of graph.
  - **Tooltip**: Causes a tooltip to appear if you position your mouse pointer over part of the graph and leave it there for a couple of seconds.
  - **None**: Turns off tooltips and the status bar.
- **Grid Lines**: Opens a sub-menu with the following options:
  - Both: Displays both X and Y axis gridlines
  - X Axis: Displays X axis gridlines
  - Y Axis: Display Y axis gridlines
  - None: Turns off gridlines
- **Grid on Top**: Moves the grid lines above the graph.

- **Fonts and Colors**: Opens a dialog box for setting the colors and fonts used in the graphs:

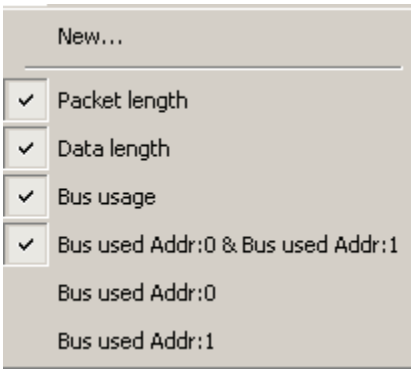


### 9.6.3 Graph Areas Menu

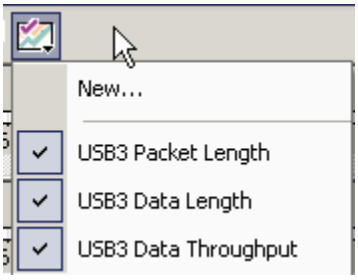
The Graph Areas menu allows you to view different information in the Bus Utilization window.

To view information:

**Step 1** Click the button to open the Graph Areas menu. For USB 2.0. the display is similar to the following:




For USB 3.0. the display is similar to the following:

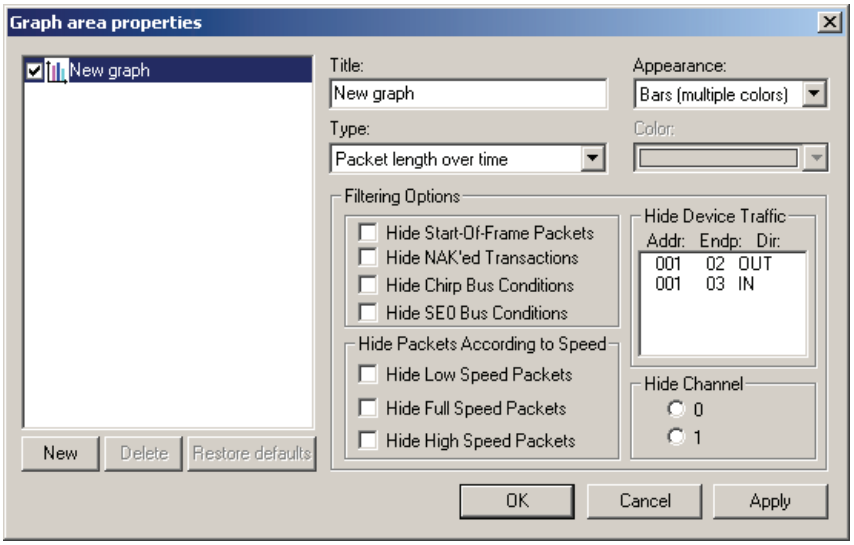



**Step 2** Select the data you want to appear in the Graph Areas window.

**Step 3** To make a new graph, click **New**.

To change the properties in the Bus Utilizations graph:

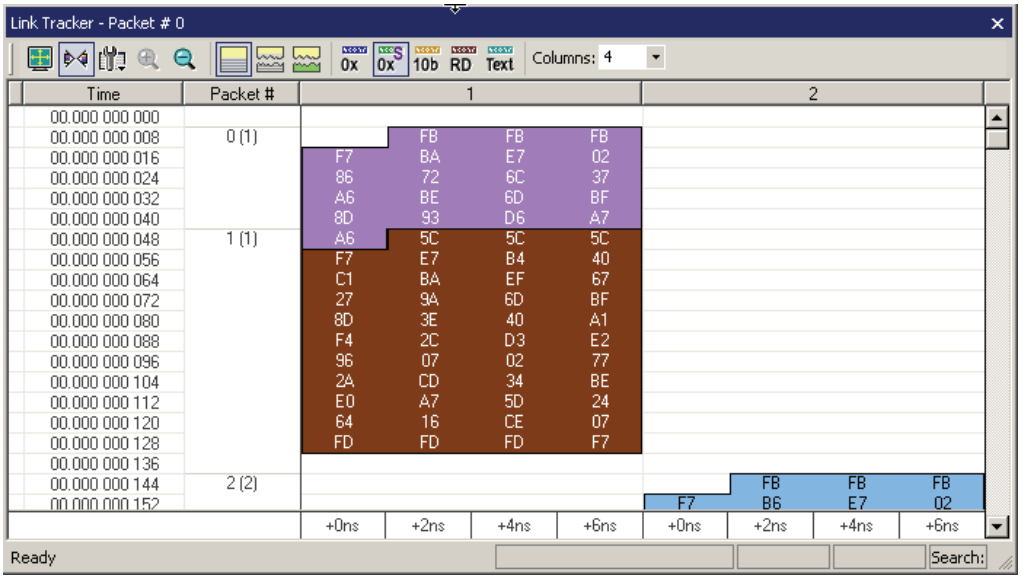
**Step 1** In the **Graph Area** properties dialog box, select what you want your graph to display, then click **OK**.




**Step 2** To make a new graph, click **New**.

# 9.7 Link Tracker (3.0)

The Link Tracker window displays a detailed chronological view of events. Events are shown on a channel-by-channel basis in columns within the window.




You can select the number of columns to view more or less data at one time.

Each time slot in the vertical axis represents the minimum time that a DWORD requires to traverse the bus.

**Toolbar**: Presents buttons for changing the format of the Link Tracker window.

**Main Display Area**: Displays traffic chronologically as it occurred in the recording. The window divides into columns: the first column shows time and traffic is shown on a channel-by-channel basis in the columns on the right.

## 9.7.1 Using the Link Tracker Window

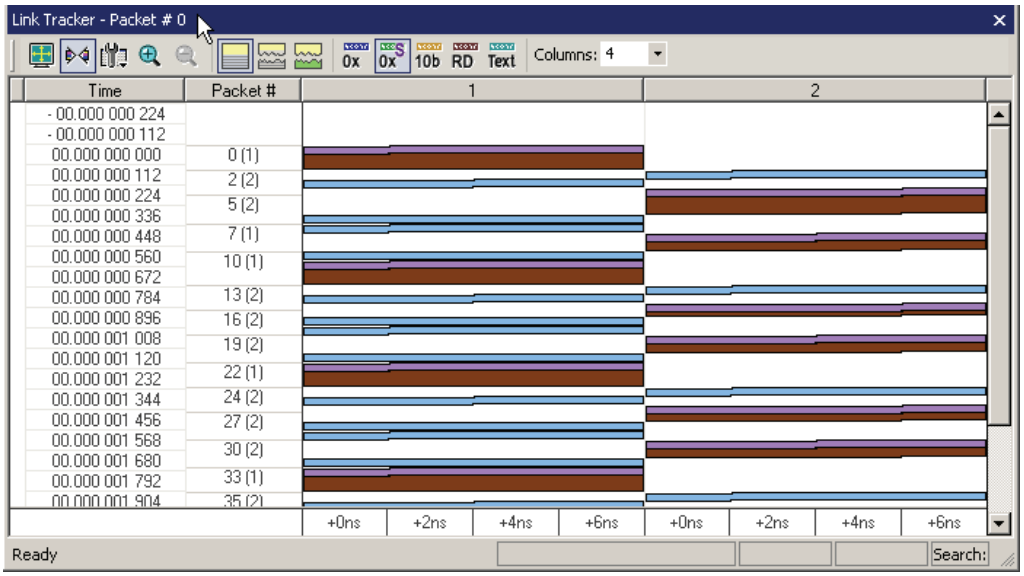
The Link Tracker window can be reformatted in several ways.

### Zooming In and Out

Zooming out can give you a quick, high-level view of a trace. A fully zoomed out trace only shows columns and colored lines. Using the colors, you can see what types of traffic run through the trace.

Further information can be obtained on any point of interest in the trace by positioning your mouse pointer over it. Tool tips provide detailed description of events.

**Note**: When fully zoomed out, the smallest graphical unit is the DWORD, represented by a single line. Zooming out makes the trace appear smaller and increases the time scale in the first column.



## Collapsing Idle Time, Enabling Tool tips, and Resetting Column Widths

Click the **View Options** button to open a menu with options for formatting the display. Three options are presented:

**Collapsible Idle Time**: Opens a dialog box for setting the Idle time value. Setting a value tells the Analyzer when to collapse Idle times and display them as grayed out strips within the Bus View window.

**Tooltip Display**: Opens a menu with options for adding content to Tooltips. Tooltips display when you position the mouse pointer over an item in the Bus View window. The options are:

- Tooltips Display Values
- Tooltips Display Scrambled Values
- Tooltips Display 10-bit Codes
- Tooltips Display Symbols

**Time Format**: Seconds or Clock

**Reset Column Widths**: This option resets column widths to their defaults and enables columns to resize themselves automatically any time the application window is resized. Normally, columns automatically resize themselves if the application window is made larger or smaller. However, if you manually resize any columns in the Bus View window, column widths become static. Thereafter, if you resize the application window, the Bus View columns do not adjust automatically. Reset Column Widths re-enables the automatic resizing capability.

**Reset Columns Order**: Return to default column sequence.

## Docking and Undocking the Window

You can undock the Link Tracker window by double-clicking the blue title bar along the left side of the window. Once undocked, the window can be dragged anywhere in the application. To redock, double-click again on the title bar.

## Setting Markers

Markers can be set on any event within the Link Tracker window.

To set a marker, right-click an event, then select **Set Marker** from the pop-up menu.

Once marked, you can navigate to events with the **Go to Marker** command in the Search menu.

Markers set in the Link Tracker window display the packet number and DWORD number. In contrast, markers set in the Trace window just show the packet number.

## Hiding Traffic

You can hide Idles and other data from the Link Tracker window by clicking the **Hide** buttons on the toolbar.

## 9.7.2 Link Tracker Buttons

The Link Tracker window has a row of buttons for changing the format of the displayed data and for exporting data: The buttons have the following functions:

Full Screen. Expands the Link Tracker window to fill the entire screen.

View Options. Opens a menu with three options:

- **Collapsible Idle Time** (Collapse Idle Bigger Than **n** nanoseconds. **Note:** Does not affect Collapse Idle Plus.)
- **Tooltip Display** (Values, Scrambled Values, 10-bit Codes, Symbols)
- **Time Format** (Seconds, Clock)
- **Reset Columns Widths** (return to default widths)
- **Reset Columns Order** (return to default column sequence)

See “Using the Link Tracker Window” on page 194 for further details.

Synchronize Trace View. Synchronizes the Trace View and Link Tracker windows so that a move in one window repositions the other.
Because of the differences in scale and logic between the Link Tracker and Trace view window, scrolling produces different effects depending on which window is being scrolled.
Scrolling in the trace window causes the Link Tracker window to rapidly jump from event to event. Long periods of idle time are thus skipped.
Scrolling in the Link Tracker window, in contrast, produces modest movements within the trace window.
Scrolling in the Link Tracker window causes the trace window to pause until the beginning of a packet is displayed. At that point, the trace window repositions itself. While scrolling long Idle periods or through the contents of a packet, the trace window does not move.

Zoom In

Zoom Out

Continuous Time Scale. No collapsing.

Collapse Idle. Do not show some periods of Link being idle.

Collapse Idle Plus. Do not show periods of Link being idle.

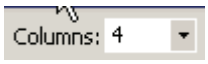
Show Values

Show Scrambled Values

Show 10b Codes

Show Symbols

Show Text



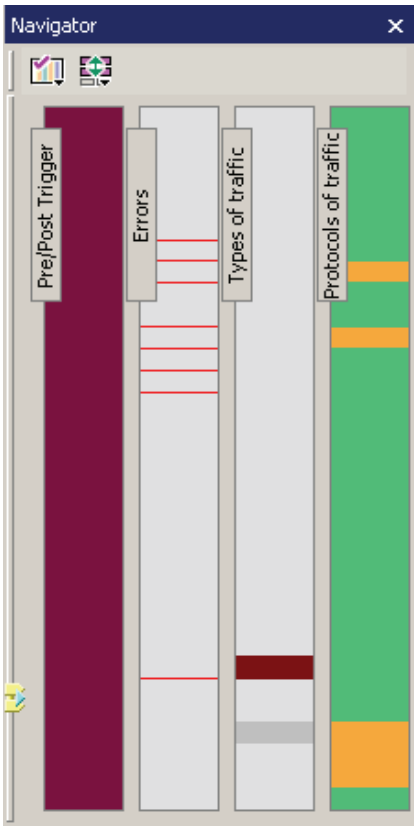

Columns to view

# 9.8 Using the Trace Navigator

The trace Navigator is a tool for navigating within the trace. It allows you to view the location of errors and triggers in a trace and to narrow the range of traffic on display. It also allows you to quickly jump to any point in the trace.

## 9.8.1 Displaying the Navigator

Click in the toolbar, select **Report > Navigator**, or select the Navigation Bar checkbox in the Display Options General window to display the Navigator.




The Navigator appears on the right side of the Main window. It has a two-button toolbar and a vertical slider bar. It also has colored panes for navigating the trace in different ways. You set which panes are displayed through Navigator pop-up menus.

The Navigator bar can be repositioned in the trace and can be oriented horizontally or vertically, docked or undocked by dragging the parallel bars at the top or side of the Navigator bar. By default, the Navigator bar appears vertically to the right of the trace window.

The Navigator bar represents different types of trace information in the order of the packets. The top of each bar corresponds to the first packet in the trace, and the bottom corresponds to the last packet. The Navigator bar is made up of three parts:
Pre and Post-Trigger traffic, Errors, and Types of Traffic.

At any time, a line in the navigator bar of one pixel in height represents a fraction of the trace data. If the Navigation bar is 400 pixels high, then each bar in this example would represent 1/400 of the trace. If the trace had 4000 packets total, each bar would represent ten packets. In the Types of Traffic portion of the navigation bar, the color of the bar would be that of the most important item in those ten packets.

Drag the yellow caret, at the top or bottom, to set the packet range. When you move the caret, a message shows the packet range.

The blue caret indicates the current packet position in the trace view.

## 9.8.2 Navigator Toolbar

The Navigator toolbar lets you quickly set Navigator features. The toolbar has two buttons.

**Navigator Ranges**: This button brings up a pop-up menu that lets you reset the Navigator range. The range determines what packets are viewable in the trace display.

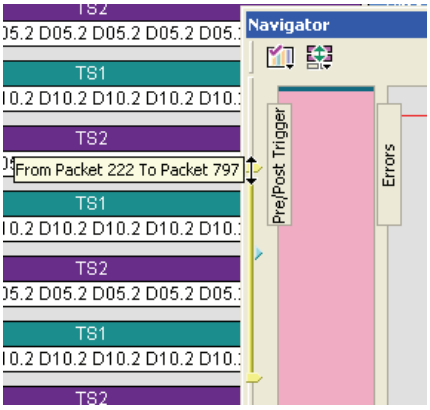
**Navigator Panes**: This button has two purposes: To select which Navigator panes appear and to bring up the Navigator legend. The legend determines how information is shown in the panes.

## 9.8.3 Navigator Ranges

You set the viewing range by dragging the **yellow range delimiters** along the slider.

To set the lowest packet viewable, drag the **top delimiter up**. As you do so, a tool tip appears to indicate the current range. Stop dragging when you reach the desired lowest packet.

To set the highest packet viewable, drag the **bottom delimiter down**. Stop when the tool tip indicates you are at the desired highest packet.



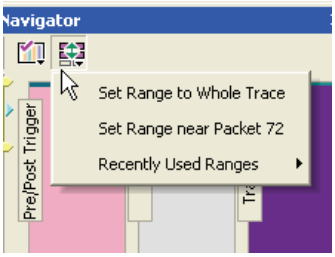

### To Determine Current Position

In addition to the two range delimiters, the slider has a **blue current-position** indicator (see above). The current-position indicator shows where you are in the trace display with respect to the possible viewing range.

For example, suppose you set viewing range to packet 0 through packet 500 (the top range delimiter is at packet 0, and the bottom range delimiter is at packet 500). If you then move the current-position indicator on the slider to midway between the top and bottom delimiters, then packet 250 appears in the middle of the trace display.

## To Reset Navigator Range

You can reset the Navigator range using the toolbar **Navigator Range** button. Press the button to bring up the Navigator Range drop-down menu.

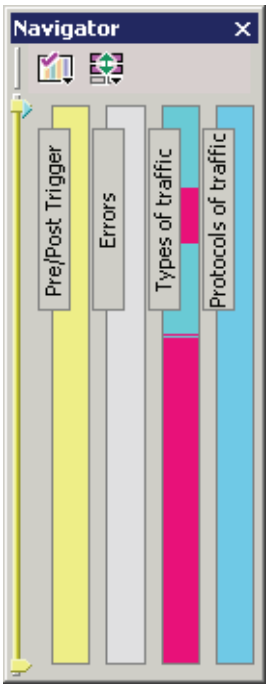



The menu has the following options:

- **Set Range to Whole Trace**: Allows you to reset the range to include the entire trace file contents. The top range delimiter is placed at the lowest packet number in the trace. The bottom range delimiter is placed at the highest packet number in the trace.
- **Set Range Near Packet xxx**: Allows you to collapse the range so that only the packets immediately above and below the xxx packet are displayed. The xxx packet is whatever packet is currently at the top in the trace display.
- **Recently Used Ranges**: Allows you to reset the range to any of a number of recently used (previously set) ranges.

## 9.8.4 Navigator Panes

You can display any combination of trace Navigator panes.




From left to right, the panes are: Pre/Post Trigger, Errors, Traffic Types, and Protocols of Traffic. Each pane represents the entire trace with respect to different types of information. The top of each pane represents the start of the trace file, and the bottom represents the end of the trace file.

- **Pre/Post Trigger:** To view the trigger event in the trace and the relative size of pre-trigger and post-trigger portions of the trace. The two portions are set apart as different colors. The trigger event occurs at the point the two colors meet.
- **Errors:** To view any errors in the trace. A thin red line represents each error in the pane.
- **Traffic Types:** To view the types of packets that occur in the trace. A different color represents each packet type in the pane. The relative size of colored portions in the pane corresponds to the amounts of the various packet types in the trace. As described below, you can use the Navigator legend to change the types of packets that take precedence in the display.
- **Protocols of Traffic**: To view USB 2.0, USB 3.0 Host Tx, or USB 3.0 Host Rx.

### To Show/Hide Navigator Panes

You can show/hide any of the panes using pop-up menus accessible through right-click the **Navigator Panes** button or by right-click anywhere in any Trace Navigator pane.

## Navigator Slider

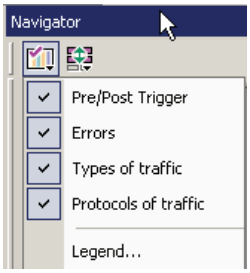
The Navigator slider appears at the left of Navigator panes. The slider has **yellow upper and lower range delimiters** and a **blue current-position** indicator.

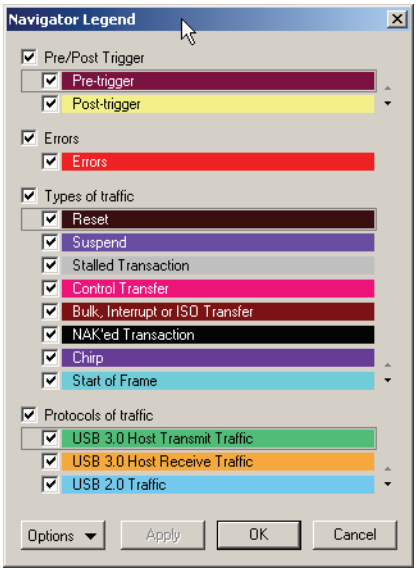
The Navigator slider lets you to set the range of packets viewable in the trace display. In other words, it sets scrolling range of the display. You can scroll the display up to the lowest packet number in the viewing range. You can scroll the display down to the highest packet number in the viewing range.

## Trace Navigator Legend

The Navigator legend lets you control the display of content in Navigator panes.

You bring up the legend through the Navigator Panes drop-down menu. Press the toolbar **Navigator Panes** button to access the menu. Select the **Legend** option to bring up the Navigator Legend dialog box.




The Navigator Legend dialog box has areas corresponding to each of the panes. Each area has check boxes that allow you to hide/display information in the pane. You can set the priority of information displayed in the panes using the up and down triangles on the right.

## Using the Legend to Show/Hide Navigator Panes

To use the legend to show/hide an entire pane, use the **checkbox** next to the name of each pane in the legend.

In the case of the Pre/Post Trigger and Errors areas, the action of show/hide in the legend is identical to that provided by Trace Navigator pop-up menus.

In the case of the Traffic Types pane, there is no equivalent show/hide available through the pop-up menus.

## Using the Legend to Set the Priority of Information Display

You can use the legend to set the priority of information displayed in the Pre/Post Trigger Traffic Type panes. This is a two-step process.

**Step 1** For a particular item in a pane, click the **column next to the checkbox** for the item. That labels the item as currently active.

**Step 2** Next, use the **up-down** at the lower-right of the area to move the item higher or lower in priority.

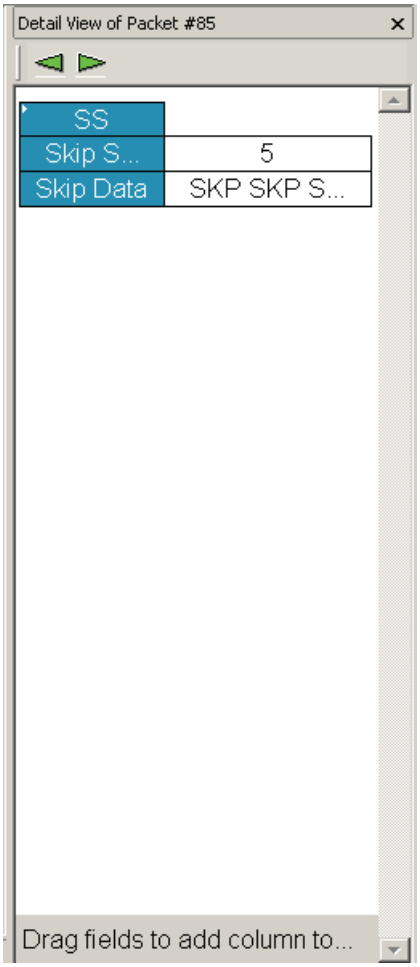
In the case of the Traffic Type pane, priority determines display priority of each packet type. For portions of the trace that are dominated by a particular packet type, this setting no effect: only the color corresponding to that packet type is displayed in that portion of the pane. Suppose, however, that part of the trace includes equal or near equal numbers of several types of packets. In that case, you can use the legend to select which among those types is represented in that portion of the Traffic Types pane. This allows you to view only packets of interest in crowded portions of the trace display.

# 9.9 Detail View

The Detail View window shows packet details.

To obtain the Detail View window, select **Report > Detail View**

or click the toolbar icon.




The Data View toolbar buttons allow you to Go to Previous or Next.

Expanding a data field displays the Data View.

## 9.9.1 Detail View and Spreadsheet View

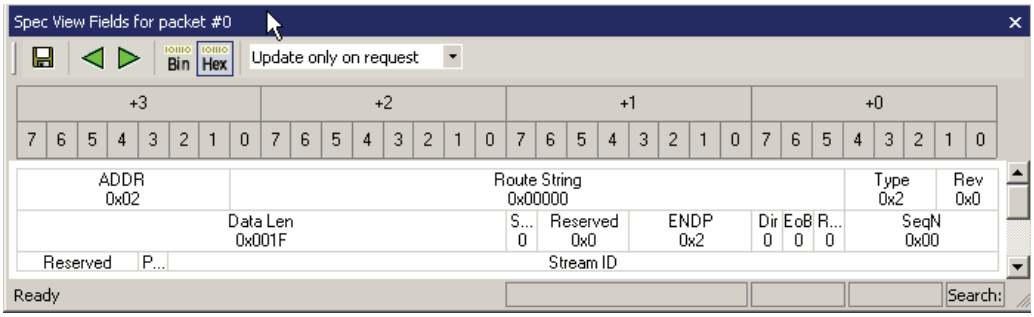
To put a Detail View header in the Spreadsheet View, drag the header to a column divider in the Spreadsheet View.

# 9.10 Spec View (3.0)

The Spec View shows packet header information.

To obtain the Spec View, select **Report > Spec View**

or click the Spec View toolbar icon.

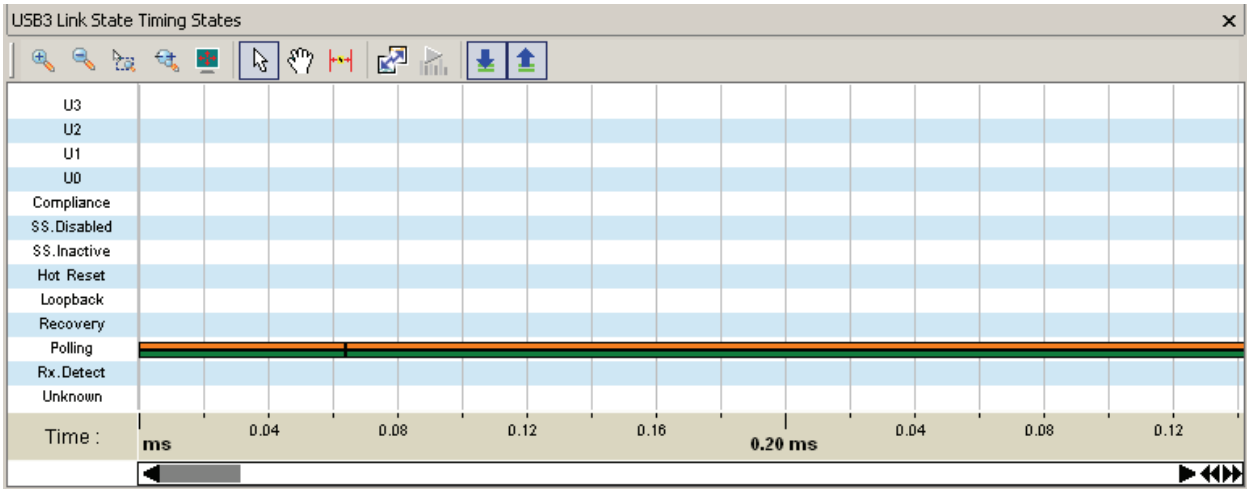



The toolbar allows you to Save, go to Previous or Next, display Hexadecimal or Binary, and Update only on request, Update on click, or Update on scroll.

# 9.11 USB3 Link State Timing View

The Link State Timing View graphically shows how much time the link spends in each link state.

Click to display the USB3 Link State Timing View.




The States are U3, U2, U1, Compliance, SS.Disabled, SS.Inactive, Hot Reset, Loopback, Recovery, Polling, Rx.Detect, and Unknown.

Time is displayed along the bottom in microseconds.

## 9.11.1 USB3 Link State Timing View Toolbar

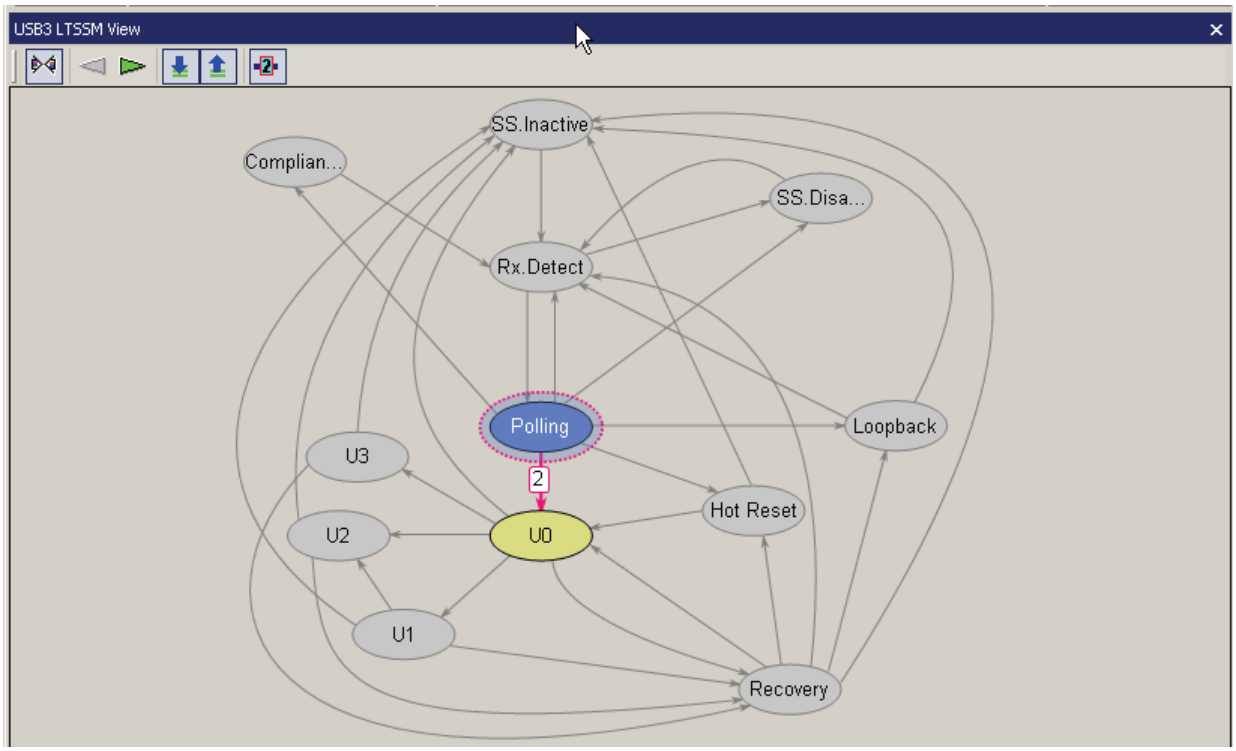
The buttons have the following functions:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Vertical zoom in | | Pointer Mode |
| | Vertical zoom out | | Hand Panning |
| | Zoom by Selection | | Insert Time markers.<br>After clicking, click in the display to make a red vertical line. Select and drag the line to indicate a time interval between two lines. |
| | Zoom by Horizontal Drag | | Monitor |
| | Full Screen | | Sync by Time.<br>Synchronize the USB3 Link State Timing States View and the Trace View. |
| | Show Downstream port link states. | | Show Upstream port link states. |

# 9.12 USB3 LTSSM View

The LTSSM View displays the LTSSM diagram depicted in the USB 3.0 specification.

Click to display the USB3 LTSSM View.




Click to synchronize the LTSSM View and Trace View.

Click the left arrow to go to previous link state.

Click the right arrow to go to next link state.

Click the down arrow to show Downstream port link states.

Click the up arrow to show Upstream port link states.

Click to show number of transitions.

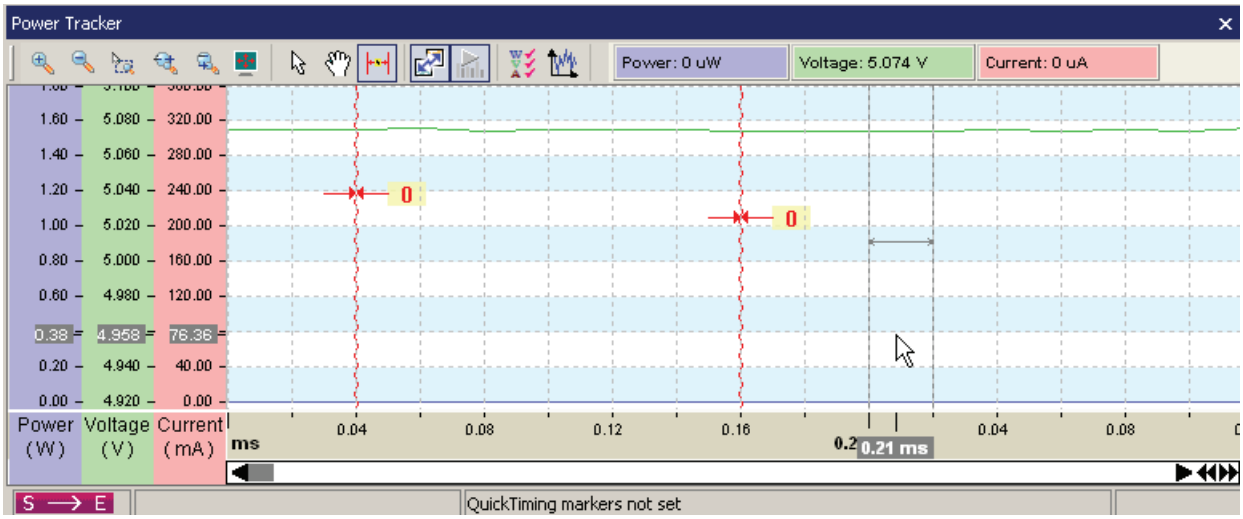
**Note:** To enable LTSSM buttons, open the **Display Options** dialog. In the General tab, check the **Process USB3 LTSSM** checkbox. Click **Save As Default**. Reopen the trace file.

# 9.13 Power Tracker

**Note:** Power Capture can only be enabled on licensed M3i versions of Voyager.

The Power Tracker displays the power, voltage, and current at each time.

Select **Report > Power Tracker**, or click to display the Power Tracker.




If you select Power Tracker from the Report menu, you can select Hide, Full Screen, Sync by Time, or Real Time Monitor (see “Power Tracker Toolbar” section below).

The left side shows power, voltage, and current levels. Right-clicking a column allows you to select the vertical-scale origin. The origin is 0 or near the minimum measurement value.

The horizontal axis shows time in milliseconds. You can navigate with the slider. The slider sets the left vertical line. The distance to the right dashed vertical line represents the sampling interval.

You can use time markers to measure times in this view. To delete markers, right-click the marker and select **Remove Marker(s)**.

You can show/hide minimum and maximum values for Power, Voltage, and Current by right-clicking and choosing **Show Min/Max Values** from the popup menu.

You can go to the time at which Minimum or Maximum values of Power, Voltage, or Current occur by right-clicking and choosing **Go To** from the popup menu.and then choosing a submenu item.

The Power Tracker samples are acquired from the start of the recording to the finish. Since packet traffic or other "Bus Condition" events can start long after the recording starts or finish long before the recording ends, many power samples in these end ranges can "map" to the first packet or last packet in a trace. For all events, when synchronizing between the Power Tracker view and other views, the items associated in the other views are the ones closest in time to the timestamp of the Power Tracker sample.

**Note:** Power measurement accuracy for Current is +/- 10 mA.
Power measurement accuracy for Voltage is +/- 50 mV.
Power measurement accuracy for Power is +/- 50 mW.

The sampling period of the current and voltage is once every 20 microseconds, or 50 KHz.

## 9.13.1 Power Tracker Toolbar

The buttons have the following functions:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Zoom in | | Pointer Mode |
| | Zoom out | | Hand Panning |
| | Zoom by Selection | | Insert Time markers.<br>After clicking, click in the display to make a red vertical line. Select and drag the line to indicate a time interval between two lines. |
| | Zoom by Horizontal Drag | | Monitor during capture |
| | Zoom by Vertical Drag | | Show/Hide Power Tracker Types: Power, Voltage, and/or Current |
| | | | Change Power Tracker graph type: Bar, Line, and/or Point |
| | Full Screen | | Sync by Time.<br>Synchronize the USB3 Link State Timing States View and the Trace View. |

# 9.14 Running Verification Scripts

You can perform custom post-process analysis of the open trace by running a verification script over the trace. A verification script instructs the application to send trace and analysis information to the script. A verification script also contains script code (written using LeCroy Script Language) used to process trace data and output that data in different formats.

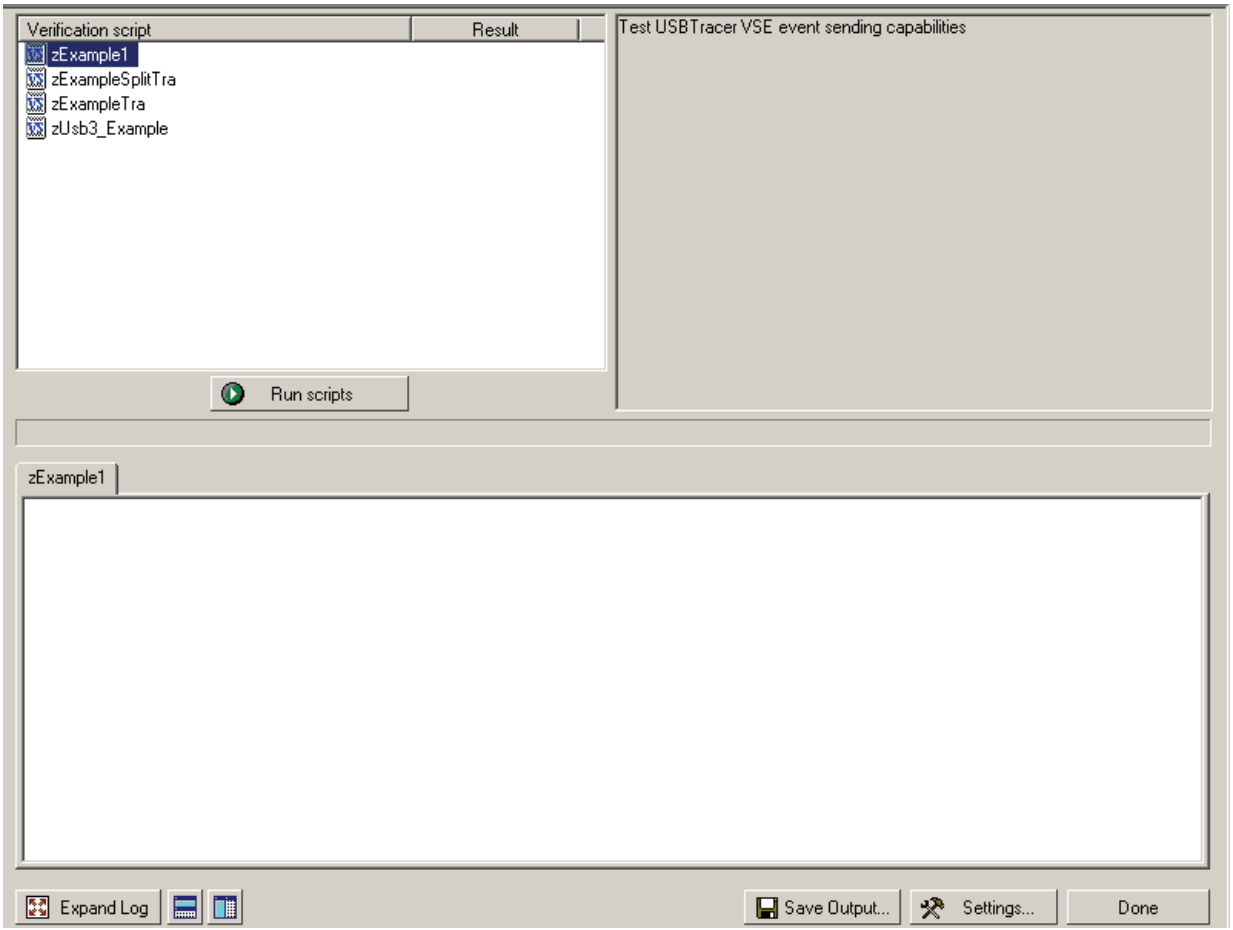
**Note:** You may write your own verification scripts to perform custom verification and analysis. For information on how to write a verification script, see the *Verification Script Engine Reference Manual*.

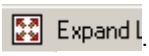
To run a verification script over a trace:

**Step 1** Select the main menu item **Report > Run verification scripts** or

click the **Run verification scripts** button on the main tool bar.

The Run verification scripts dialog opens, from which you choose, then run, one or several verification scripts:



To expand log, click the Expand Log button 

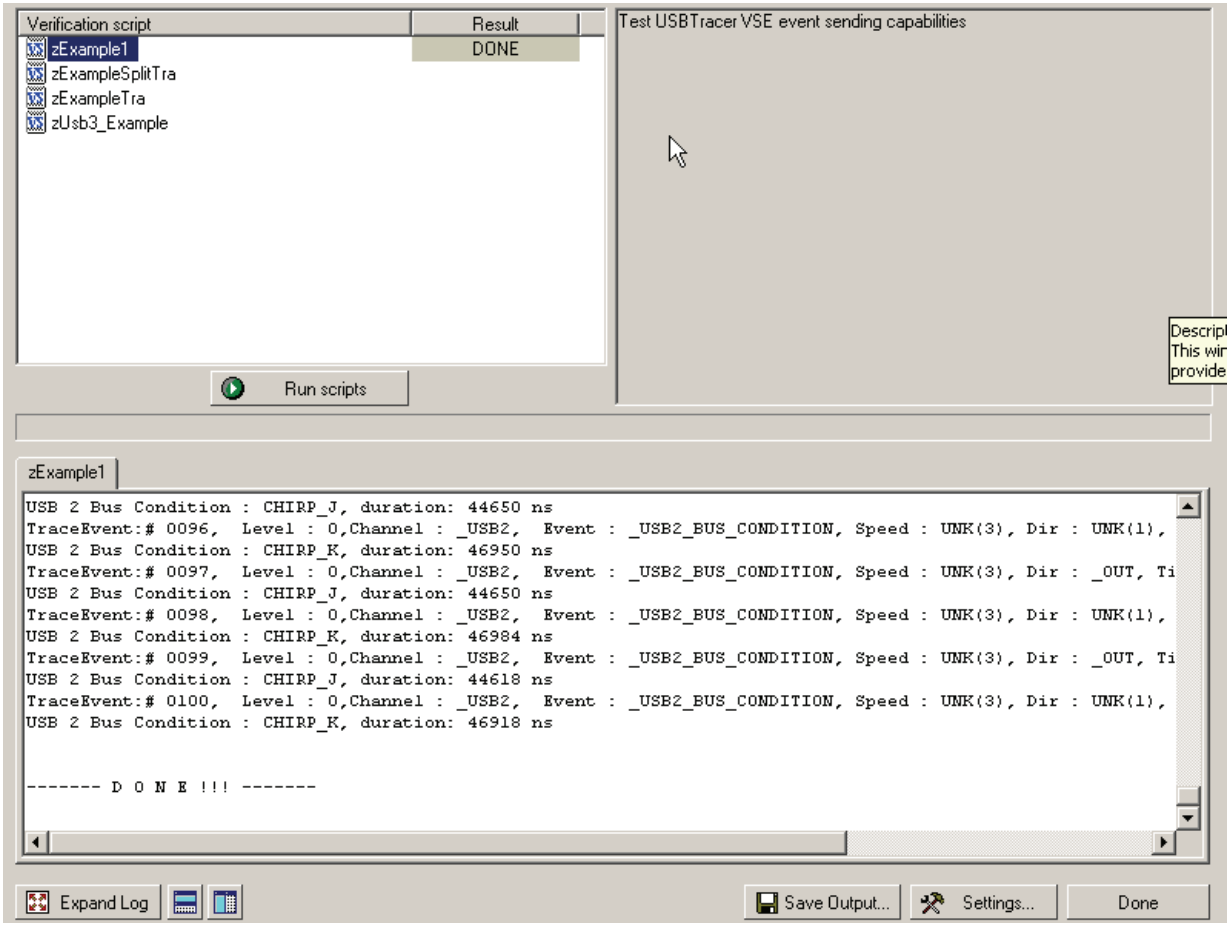
.

To find a view related to the verified trace, and place the window under it, click
.

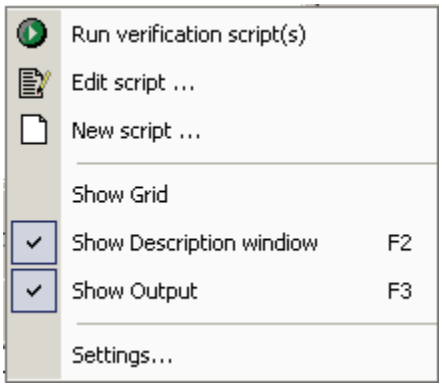
To find a view related to the verified trace, and place the window to the right, click
.

To save output, click the **Save Output** button.

**Step 2** Push the button **Run scripts** after you select scripts to run. VSE starts running the selected verification scripts, shows script report information in the output windows, and presents the results of verifications in the script list:


Verification script
Result
zExample1
DONE
zExampleSplitTra
zExampleTra
zUsb3_Example
Test USBTracer VSE event sending capabilities
Run scripts
zExample1
USB 2 Bus Condition : CHIRP_J, duration: 44650 ns
TraceEvent:# 0096, Level : 0,Channel : _USB2, Event : _USB2_BUS_CONDITION, Speed : UNK(3), Dir : UNK(1),
USB 2 Bus Condition : CHIRP_K, duration: 46950 ns
TraceEvent:# 0097, Level : 0,Channel : _USB2, Event : _USB2_BUS_CONDITION, Speed : UNK(3), Dir : _OUT, Ti
USB 2 Bus Condition : CHIRP_J, duration: 44650 ns
TraceEvent:# 0098, Level : 0,Channel : _USB2, Event : _USB2_BUS_CONDITION, Speed : UNK(3), Dir : UNK(1),
USB 2 Bus Condition : CHIRP_K, duration: 46984 ns
TraceEvent:# 0099, Level : 0,Channel : _USB2, Event : _USB2_BUS_CONDITION, Speed : UNK(3), Dir : _OUT, Ti
USB 2 Bus Condition : CHIRP_J, duration: 44618 ns
TraceEvent:# 0100, Level : 0,Channel : _USB2, Event : _USB2_BUS_CONDITION, Speed : UNK(3), Dir : UNK(1),
USB 2 Bus Condition : CHIRP_K, duration: 46918 ns
------- D O N E !!! -------
Expand Log
Save Output...
Settings...
Done

**Step 3** Right-clicking in the script list displays some additional operations over selected scripts:




**Run verification script(s**): Start running selected script(s).

**Edit script**: Edit selected scripts in the editor application specified in Editor settings.

**New script**: Create a new script file using the template specified in Editor settings.

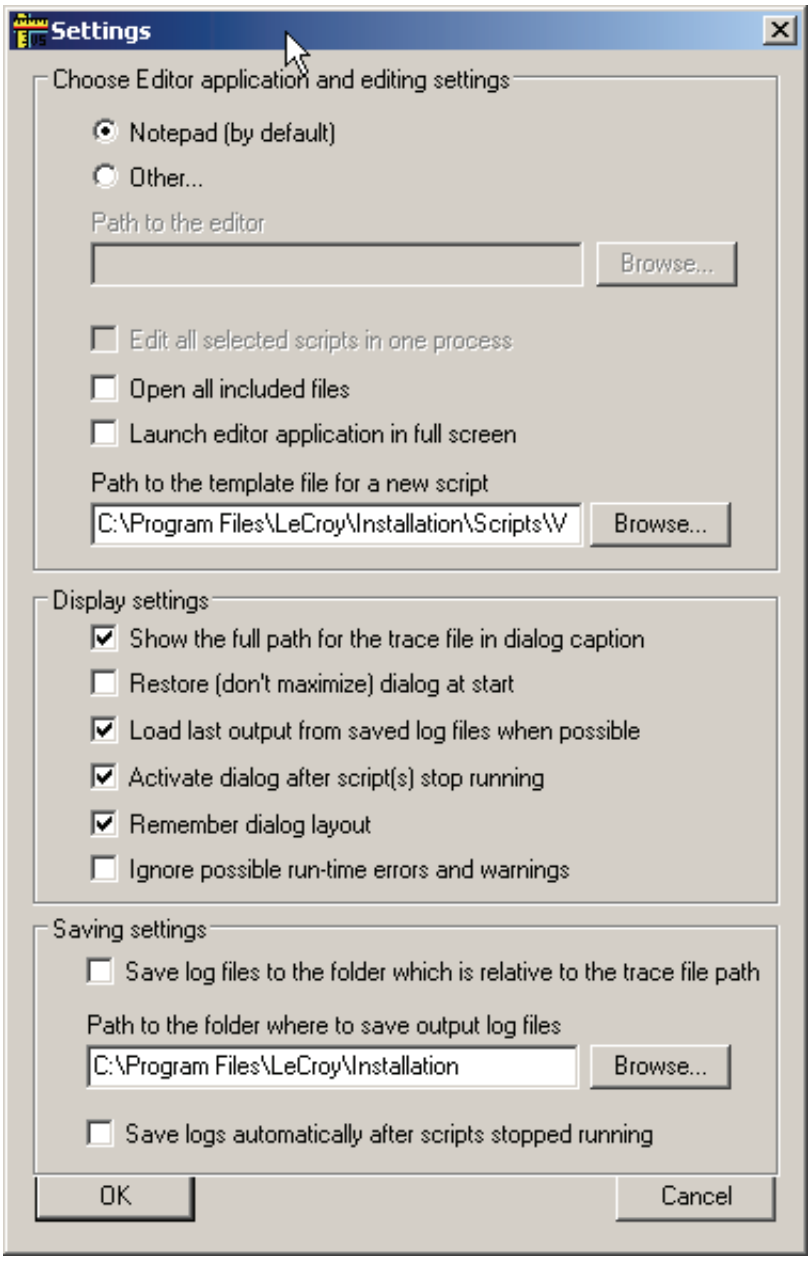
**Show Grid**: Show/hide a grid in the verification script list.

**Show Description window**: Show/hide the script description window (**Shortcut key F2**).

**Show Output**: Show/hide the script output windows (**Shortcut key F3**).

**Settings**: Open a special Setting dialog to specify different settings for VSE.

**Step 4** After choosing **Settings** from the drop-down list or the button, the Settings dialog appears:


Settings
Choose Editor application and editing settings
Notepad (by default)
Other...
Path to the editor
Browse...
Edit all selected scripts in one process
Open all included files
Launch editor application in full screen
Path to the template file for a new script
C:\Program Files\LeCroy\Installation\Scripts\V
Browse...
Display settings
Show the full path for the trace file in dialog caption
Restore (don't maximize) dialog at start
Load last output from saved log files when possible
Activate dialog after script(s) stop running
Remember dialog layout
Ignore possible run-time errors and warnings
Saving settings
Save log files to the folder which is relative to the trace file path
Path to the folder where to save output log files
C:\Program Files\LeCroy\Installation
Browse...
Save logs automatically after scripts stopped running
OK
Cancel

You can **Choose the editor application**: Notepad or other.

**Edit all selected scripts in one process**: If the editor supports multiple documents, you can edit all scripts in the editor.

**Open all included files**: You can edit included files, as well as the main script.

**Launch editor application in full screen:** You can use whole screen.

**Path to template file:** You can use a template for the script.

**Display Settings** can show full trace-file path, restore dialog at start, load last output from save log files, activate dialog after scripts have run, remember dialog layout, and ignore errors and warnings.

**Saving Settings** can save log files to relative file folder, indicate output log file path, and save logs automatically.

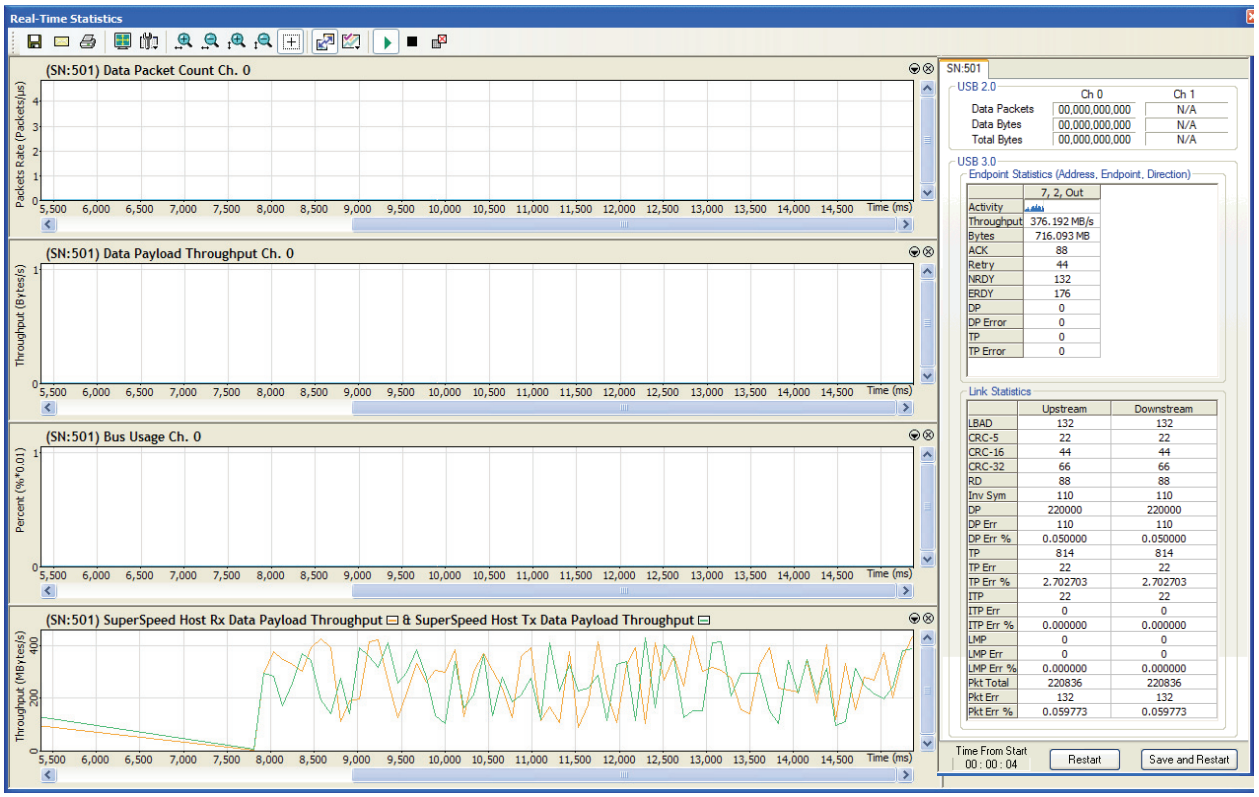
# 9.15 Real Time Monitoring

The Real-Time Statistics window displays a graph of real-time link activity.

Real Time Statistics displays a summary of the traffic currently being recorded by the Analyzer.

To display the Real-Time Statistics window, click in the Tool Bar to open the Real Time Statistics window.

The display is similar to the following:




For USB 3.0, the Real-Time Statistics window can display a SuperSpeed graph of real-time link activity.

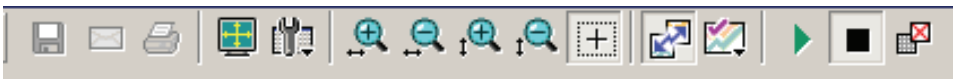
In order to see a graph of traffic, you must start recording.

Press to start the Real-Time statistics monitor. As traffic is recorded, data is streamed in real time to this window and presented in a format of your choice.

To stop the monitor, press .

## 9.15.1 Real-Time Statistics Buttons

The Real-Time Statistics toolbar has buttons for changing the format of the displayed data and for exporting data:



The buttons have the following functions:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Save As - Saves Real-Time graphs as bitmap files (*.**bmp**) | | Vertical zoom in |
| | Email - Creates an email with a *.bmp file attachment of the graphs | | Vertical zoom out |
| | Print | | Click and Drag zoom - Click diagonally to select and zoom in on part of the graph |
| | Full Screen | | |
| | View Settings - opens a sub-menu with options for formatting the display. See *9.6.2*"View Settings Menu" below. | | Sync and Graph areas - If two or more graphs are displayed, this button synchronizes the graphs to one another. Once synchronized, the positioning slider of one graph moves the other graphs. |
| | Horizontal zoom in | | Graph Areas - Presents options for displaying additional graphs of data lengths, packet lengths, and percentage of bus utilized. |
| | Horizontal zoom out | | Start. Starts the Real-Time Monitor. |
| | Reset graphs. | | Stop Real-Time Monitoring. |

To clear the counters in the "Statistics Accumulation" area,

click the **Restart**

button.

To save a snapshot Microsoft Excel **.csv** file of the data before clearing the values,

click the **Save and Restart**

button.

The file is in the same folder where Trace files are saved.

The naming convention of the file is:

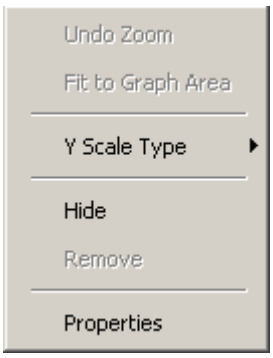
RTS_Capture_YYYY-MM-DD_HH-MM-SS.csv

**Note 1:** Because file writing must happen immediately, there is no file naming dialog.

**Note 2**: If you click the button more than once a second, the previous file with the same timestamp will be lost.

## 9.15.2 Real-Time Statistical Monitor Pop-up Menu

If you right-click a graph in the Real-Time window, a pop-up menu appears with options for changing the format of the display:




- **Undo Zoom**: If you have zoomed in, undoes the zoom.
- **Fit to Graph Area**: Displays graph so that the entire trace fits inside the graph area.
- **Y Scale Type**:
- ***Linear***: Converts display to linear format.
- ***Logarithmic***: Converts display to logarithmic format.
- **Hide**: Hides the selected graph.
- **Properties**: Opens a dialog box with options for changing the colors, titles and other features of the graphs.

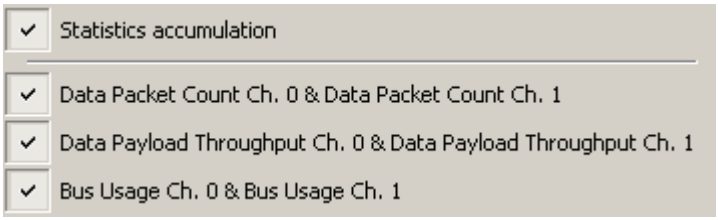
## 9.15.3 Displaying Multiple Graphs

The Real Time Statistics window gives you the ability to create up to three separate graphing windows so that you can create separate graphs of traffic and tile them vertically. Within these windows, you can format the graphs in a number of ways.

- To view two or three graphs simultaneously,

  click the **Graph Areas** button.

The following menu opens.


Statistics accumulation
Data Packet Count Ch. 0 & Data Packet Count Ch. 1
Data Payload Throughput Ch. 0 & Data Payload Throughput Ch. 1
Bus Usage Ch. 0 & Bus Usage Ch. 1

Selecting a checkbox displays the selected graph type:

- **Statistics Accumulation**: Plots the percentage of Link utilization by non-idle traffic for both directions of the link.
- **Data Packet Count (Packets/s)**: Plots counts of Data Packets per second for both directions of the link.
- **Data Payload Throughput (MBytes):** Plots data payload throughput for both directions of the link.
- **Bus Usage**: Plots amount of Bus usage.

# Chapter 10: Recording Options

Use **Recording Options** to create and change various features that control the way information is recorded by the Analyzer.

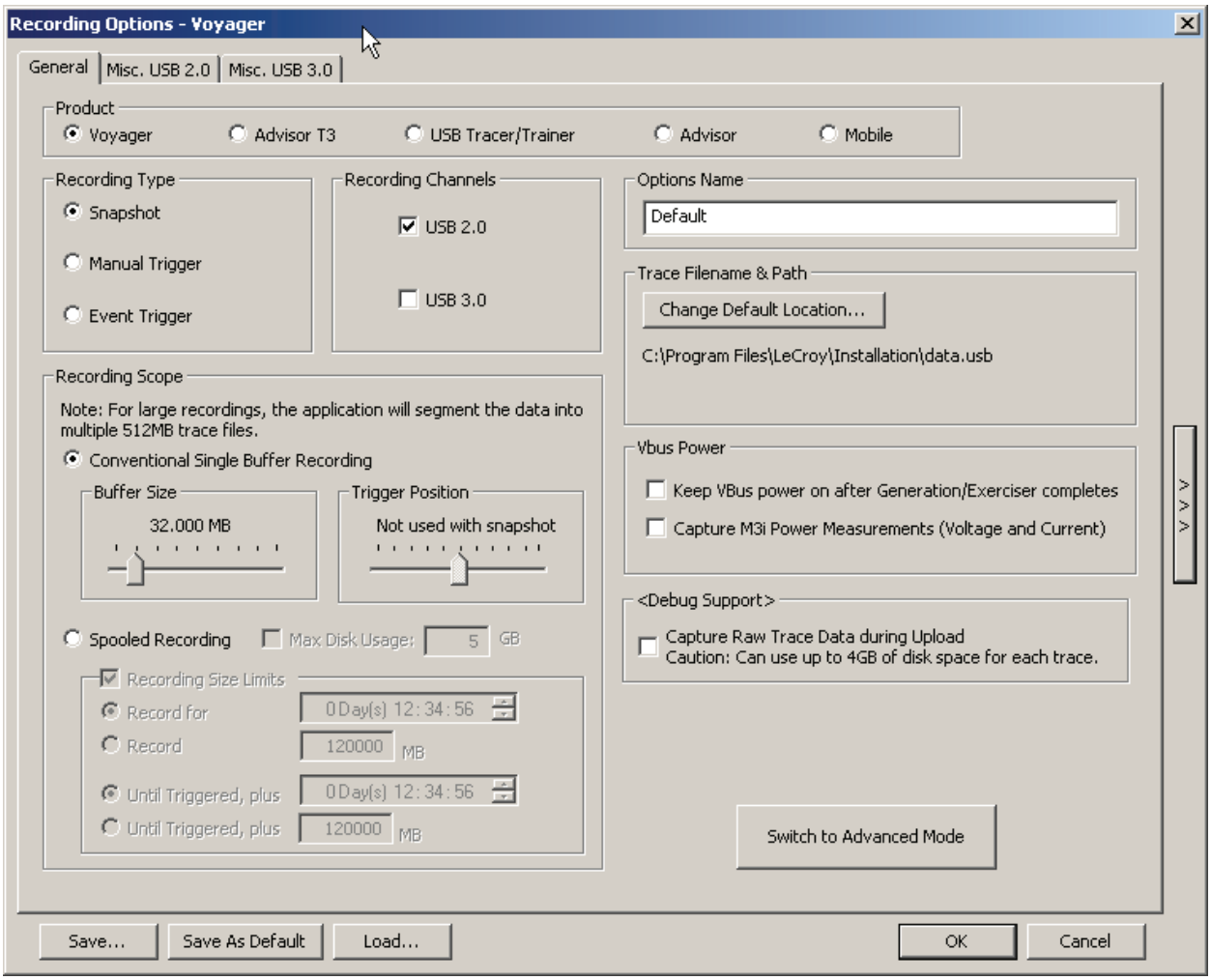
To open the **Recording Options** dialog box:

- Select **Recording Options** under **Setup** on the Menu Bar.

OR

- Click on the Tool Bar.

You see the **Recording Options** dialog box for Voyager, in Basic Mode:



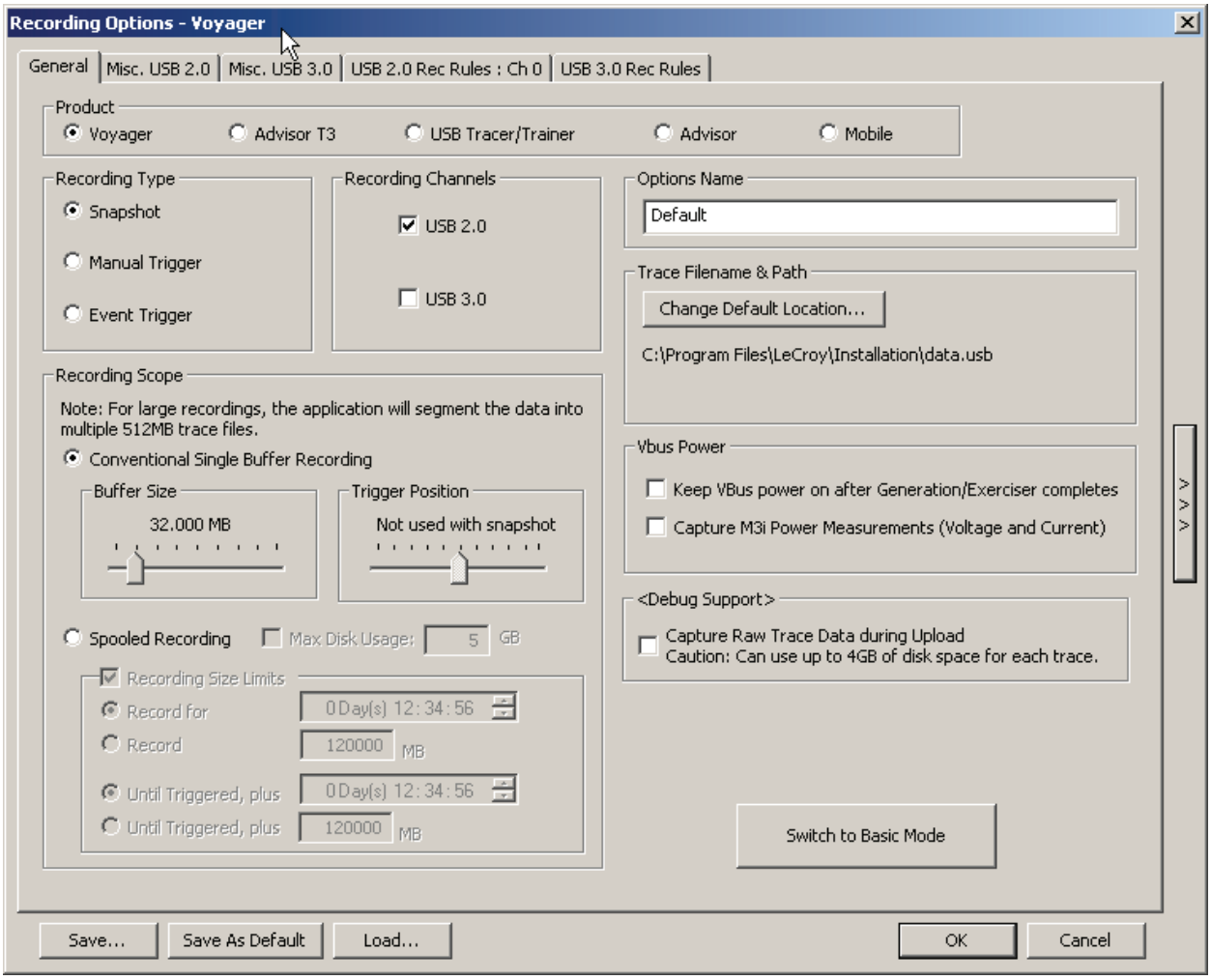

The **Recording Options** window always opens with the **General** tab showing.

**Note:** Tabs available differ depending on attached analyzer type. If no analyzer is attached, you can select any product. See “Recording Option Summary Tab” on page 275.

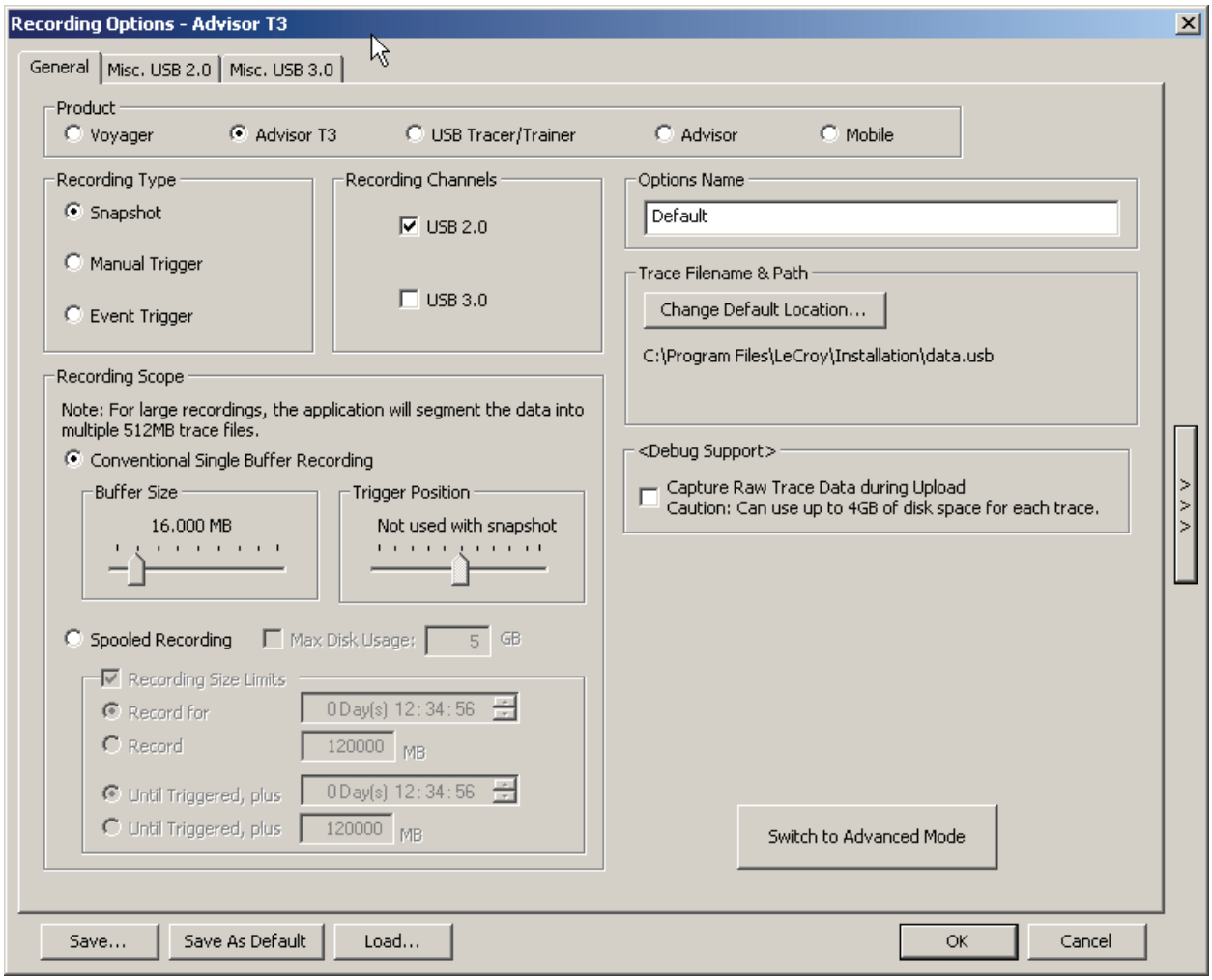
### Recording Options Modes

The General tab shows either the Basic or Advanced Recording Options Mode. Basic mode is for simple Recording Options. Advanced mode provides more sophisticated Recording Rules that enable complex filters, triggers, and sequencing. You can switch modes by clicking the **Switch to Basic Mode** or **Switch to Advanced Mode** button.

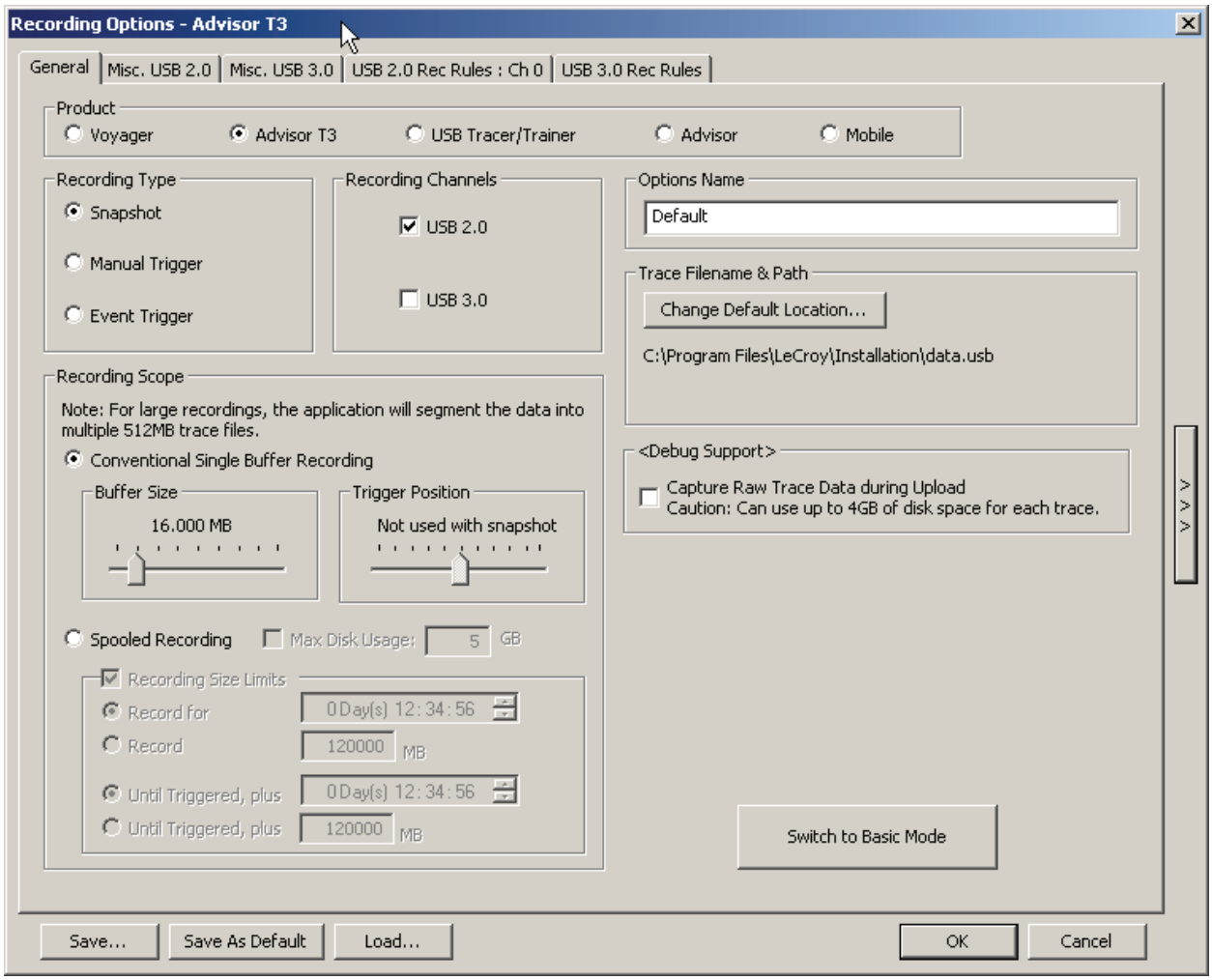
In Advanced Mode, the Recording Options dialog box for Voyager is:



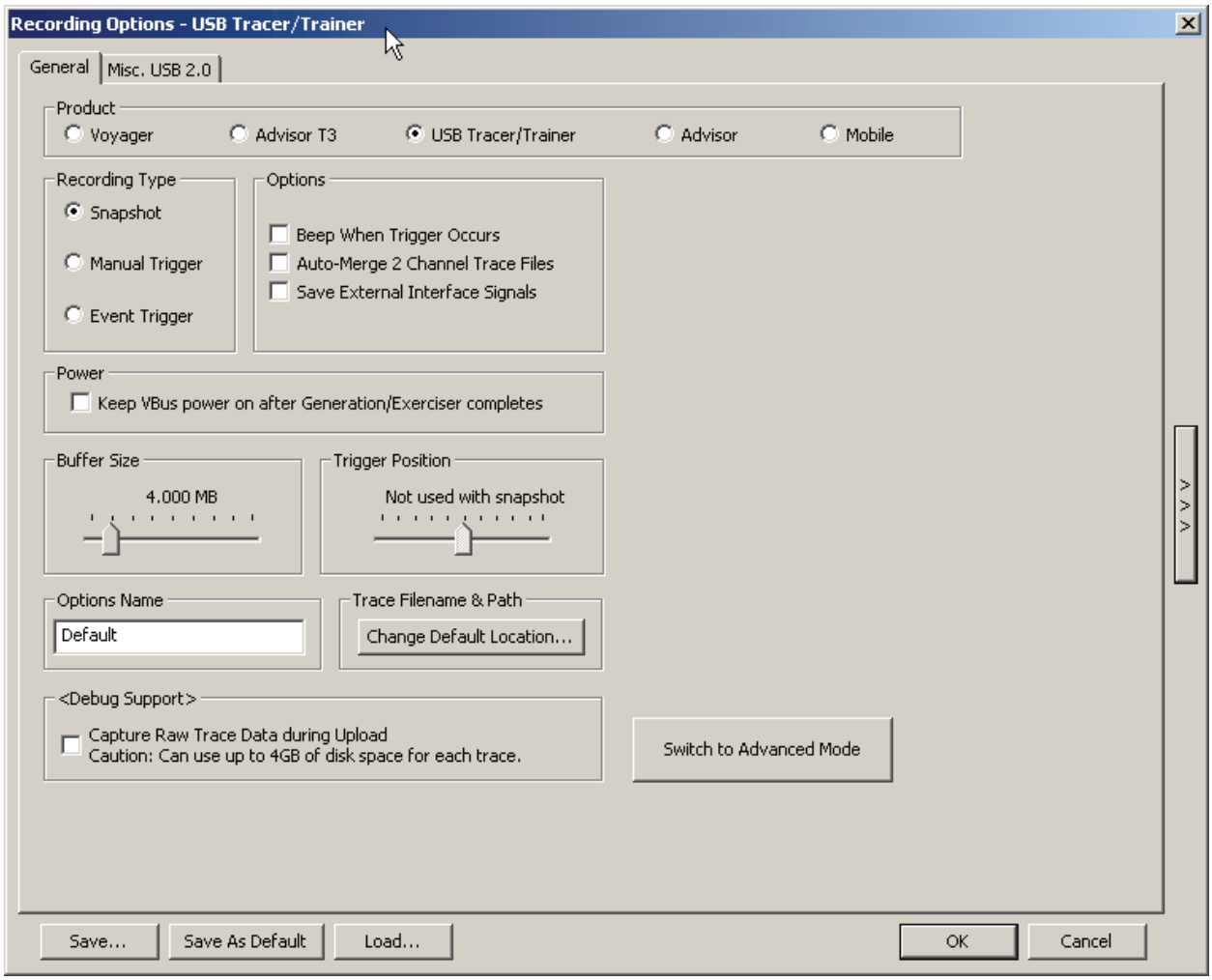
In Basic Mode, the Recording Options dialog box for Advisor T3 is:



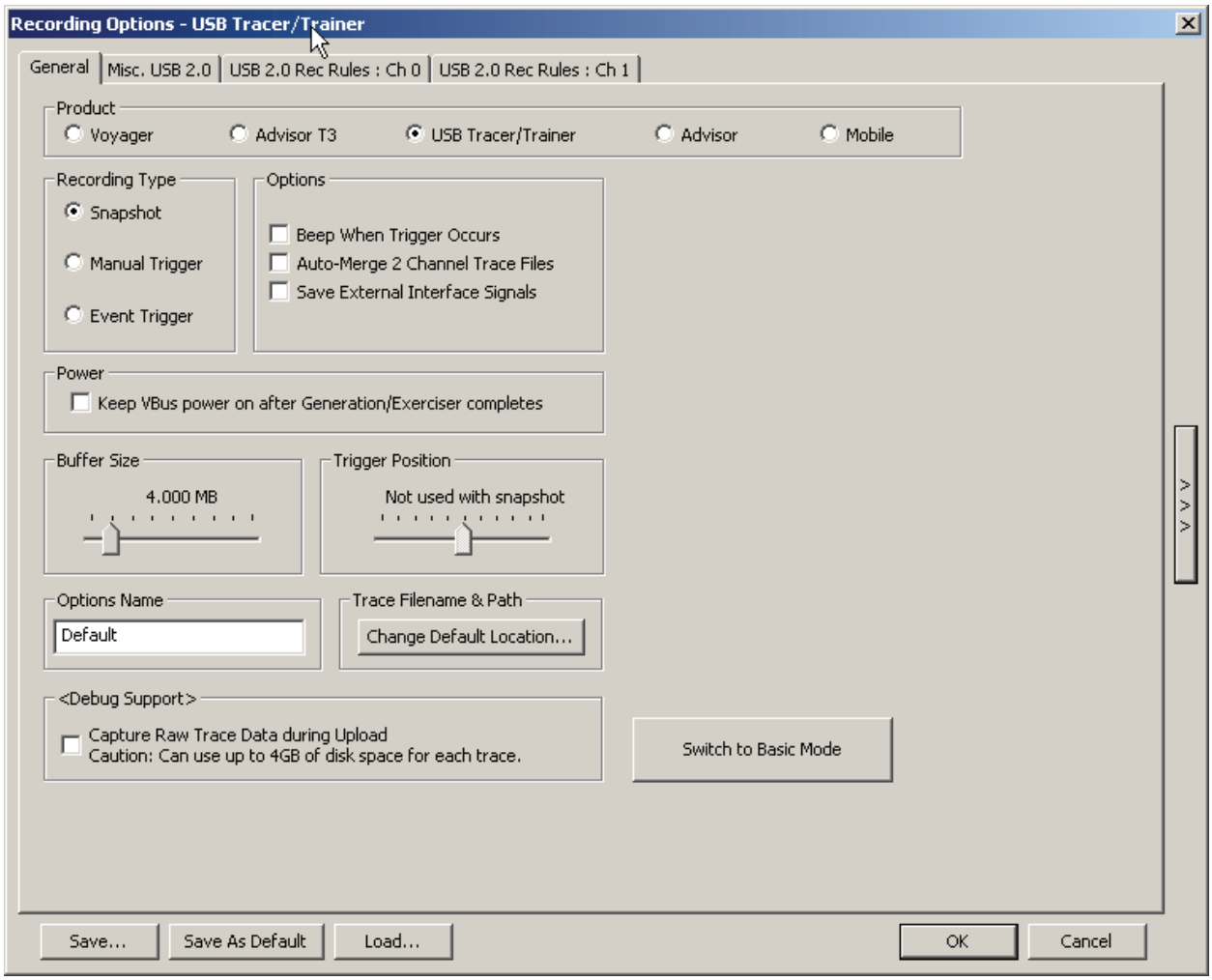
In Advanced Mode, the Recording Options dialog box for Advisor T3 is:



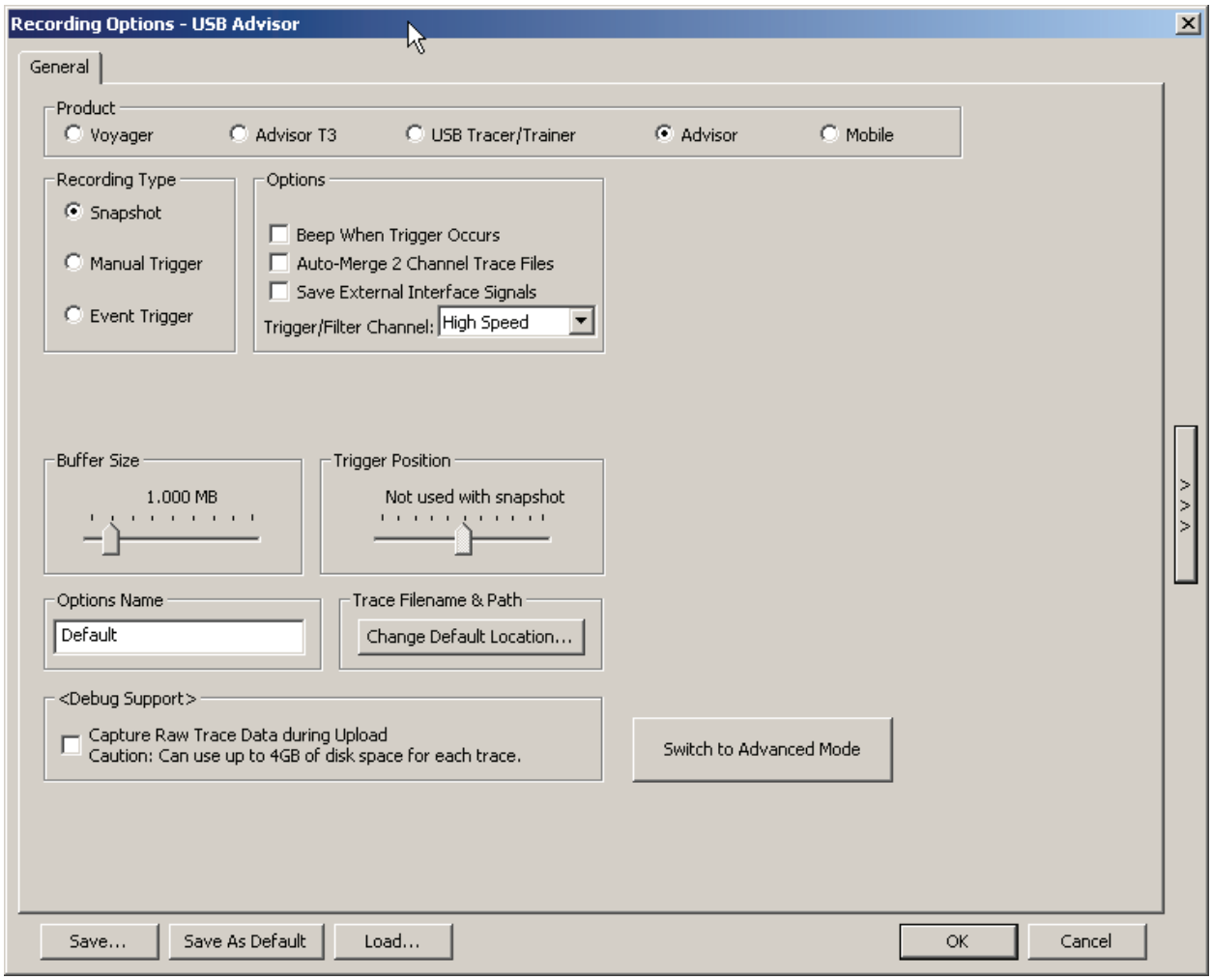
In Basic Mode, the Recording Options dialog box for USB Tracer/Trainer is:



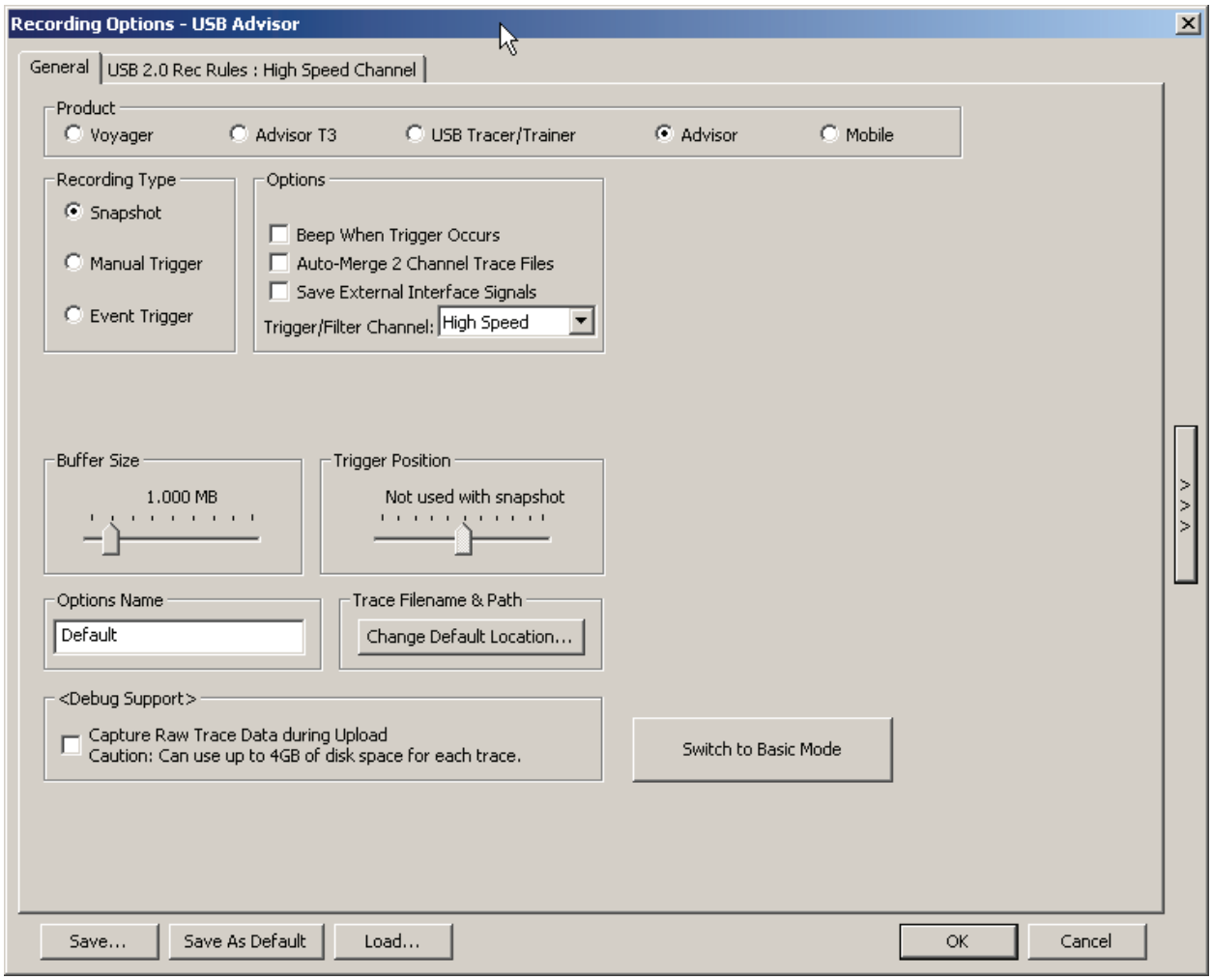
In Advanced Mode, the Recording Options dialog box for USB Tracer/Trainer is:



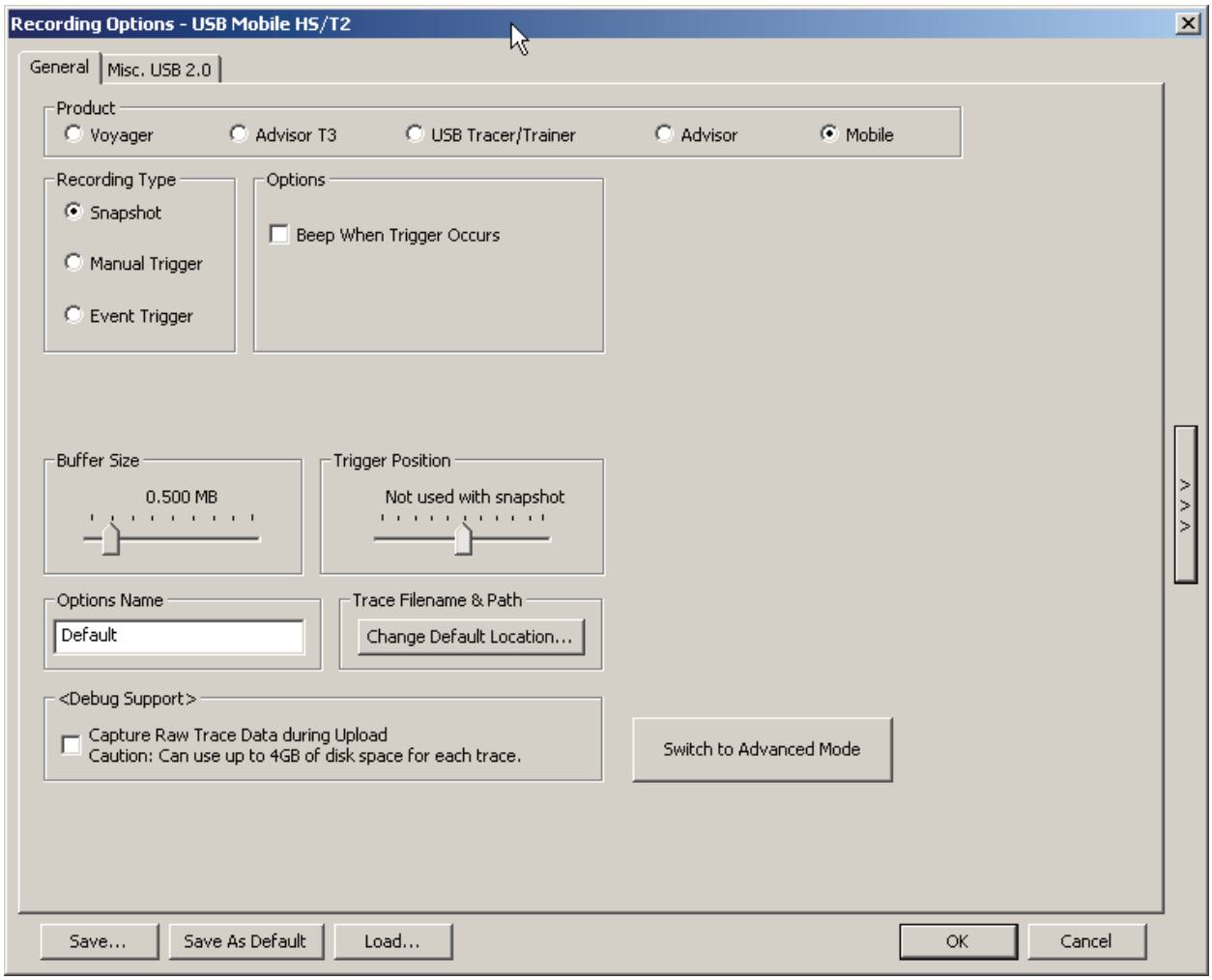
In Basic Mode, the Recording Options dialog box for USB Advisor has only the General tab.



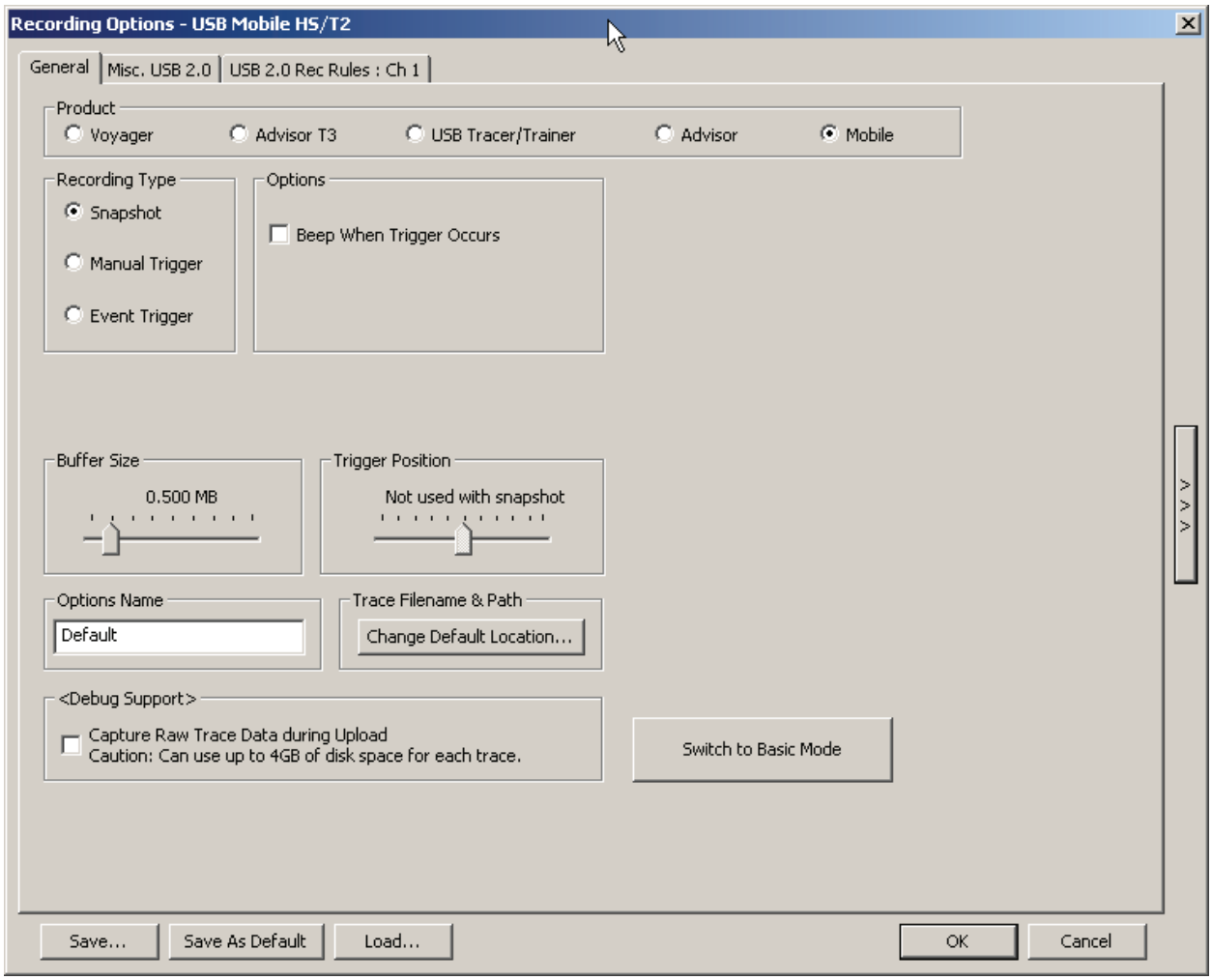
In Advanced Mode, the Recording Options dialog box for USB Advisor has the General tab and USB 2.0 Recording Rules tab (with no Misc. USB 2.0 tab).



In Basic Mode, the Recording Options dialog box for USB*Mobile* T2 and USB*Mobile* HS has the General and Misc. USB 2.0 tabs.



In Advanced Mode, the Recording Options dialog box for USB*Mobile* T2 and USB*Mobile* HS has the General, Misc. USB 2.0, and USB 2.0 Recording Rules tabs.



# 10.1 General Recording Options

The General Recording Options allow you to select or adjust the recording type, the buffer size, the amount of post-trigger recording, and the trace filename and path.

## 10.1.1 Product

You can select one of the following products:

- Voyager
- USB Tracer/Trainer
- Advisor
- Mobile

## 10.1.2 Recording Type

The **Recording Type** box presents three options that allow you to set how the Analyzer begins and ends a recording.

The options are: *Snapshot, Manual Trigger,* and *Event Trigger.*

### Snapshot

A Snapshot is a fixed-length recording. The size of this recording is set by the Buffer Size box. Recording begins when is clicked and ends when either the selected buffer size is filled or the button is pressed.

### Manual Trigger

Some LeCroy analyzer models include a manual trigger button on the front panel of the system. The manual trigger option can be used when you elect to initiate the recording by pressing the manual trigger button.

Recording begins when you click on the Tool Bar. Recording continues in a circular manner within the limits set by the buffer size.

Recording ends when is clicked on the Tool Bar or after post-trigger memory has been filled following depression of the trigger button on the front panel.

### Event Trigger

Recording begins when you click on the Tool Bar.

Recording continues in a circular manner within the limits set by the buffer size until an event is detected that meets the Trigger conditions specified in the Triggering Options and the defined amount of data has been recorded after the Trigger Event.

### 10.1.3 Options for USBTracer/Trainer and Advisor

- **Beep When Trigger Occurs:** See above.
- **Auto-Merge 2 Channel Trace Files**: Causes USB*Tracer* to merge traffic of the two recording channels into a file called **data_merged.usb** (or whatever name you give it). USB*Tracer* also makes two other files during this recording: **data_0.usb** and **data_1.usb** (or whatever names you choose). If unchecked, USB*Tracer* creates only two files: one for Classic-Speed traffic and another for Hi-Speed traffic
- **Save External Interface Signals:** Causes USB*Tracer* to save signals from a Breakout Board (pins *Data7 - Data0*) as fields in the trace
- **Trigger/Filter Channel**: Select 0 or 1. The selection tells USB*Tracer* what channel it should use to perform its triggers/filters. If you want to set triggers/filters on *both* channels, then you must select a channel, assign trigger/filter events and actions, then select the other channel and assign trigger filter events and actions to it. In other words, you must set your events and actions *twice* - once for each channel. The channel to which you are currently applying the triggers/filters is shown in the Dialog Title Bar.

### 10.1.4 Recording Channels (Voyager and Advisor T3)

**Voyager**: You can select **USB 2.0** and/or **USB 3.0** as the recording channel. Both can be captured simultaneously.

**Advisor T3**: You can select **USB 2.0** or **USB 3.0** as the recording channel. Only one of these can be captured at a time.

### 10.1.5 Recording Scope (Voyager and Advisor T3)

Select either:

- **Conventional Single Buffer Recording:** Select **Buffer Size** (see below). The analyzer limits the data amount captured to the selected buffer size. Use the **Trigger Position** slider (see below) to control the data amounts captured pre-trigger and post-trigger.
- **Spooled Recording:** Enter **Maximum Disk Usage** as an integer in gigabytes. The spooled recording mode automatically stops the recording when the size of the capture meets the Maximum Disk Usage value. The analyzer begins recording data to the analyzer memory when the record button is pressed. The entire analyzer memory (2 GB or 4 GB) is used to buffer data while simultaneously uploading the trace file to an attached storage device.

  Set **Recording Size Limits**. If you use Snapshot, you can optionally use **Record for** an elapsed time or **Record** a number of megabytes.
  If you use Manual Trigger or Event Trigger, you can optionally use the **Until Triggered, plus** options to enter post-trigger limits by megabytes or elapsed time. These options allow you to specify a trigger event to start the recording. When these options are used, the trigger position slider is not active. The trigger event is within the first 100 packets. The balance of the memory captures traffic occurring post trigger.

**Note**: You can use Snapshot, Manual Trigger, or Event Trigger recording type with either Recording Scope: Conventional Single Buffer Recording or Spooled Recording.

**Note**: When capturing SuperSpeed traffic with Spooled Recording, the traffic rate may overflow the system's ability to upload data to disk. In the event of overflow, the analyzer stops the recording automatically, even if the trigger event has not yet occurred. The analyzer does not drop data or leave gaps in the recording. Instead, it automatically uploads all the traffic stored in memory. You must make sure that the traffic being recorded does not overrun the buffer in this mode, by either adjusting the actual data transmissions between the host and device, or by adding filters to the analyzer recording to reduce the quantity of data per second that the analyzer is capturing and uploading to the Analyzer PC.

**Note**: In both Spooled Recording and Conventional Single Buffer Recording, when large captures are made, the application automatically segments large traces into 512-MB segments. The spooled captures are stored in the USB Protocol Suite directory and are numbered using the analyzer serial number and a 0 to N numeric sequence.

## 10.1.6 Buffer Size

You can adjust the size of the recording buffer from a very small size up to the maximum available in your product.

The **Recording type** option determines how this buffer is used. Although the Analyzer has a large physical memory, the efficiency of the recording is about a 2:1 ratio of physical memory to actual USB traffic. Shorter USB packets yield a slightly less efficient recording. The non-traffic portion of physical memory is utilized for control and timing information.

**Note:** The scale is not linear and affords more granularity in the smaller buffer sizes.

**Note:** To make the full buffer available for recording, you can select to **Disable Generator Memory** in the Misc.USB 2.0 tab of the Recording Options dialog.

## 10.1.7 Trigger Position

You can adjust the amount of recording to be done post-trigger or select where you want the Trigger located within the defined buffer. You can adjust the Triggering Position between 1 and 99% post-trigger. **Trigger Position** is available only when **Manual Trigger** or **Event Trigger** is selected as **Recording type**.

As an example, if the buffer size is set to 16 MB, then for the following Trigger Position settings, the amount of pre-trigger and post-trigger data is:

- 95% post-triggering: 0.8 MB pre-trigger, 15.2 MB post-trigger
- 75% post-triggering: 4 MB pre-trigger, 12 MB post-trigger
- 50% post-triggering: 8 MB pre-trigger, 8 MB post-trigger
- 25% post-triggering: 12 MB pre-trigger, 4 MB post-trigger
- 5% post-triggering: 15.2 MB pre-trigger, 0.8 MB post-trigger

**Note:** When a Trigger occurs, recording continues until the post-trigger amount of the buffer is filled or when **Stop** is selected.

### 10.1.8 Options Name

The **Options Name** is a descriptive label of the current Recording Options settings. Options Names are associated with files that have a **.rec** suffix.

The default option name is **default**. **Default** preserves the current Recording Options settings.

The purpose of the **Options Name** box is to give you a place to preserve different Recording Options that you use on a recurrent basis. For example, if you use two or three different Recording Options configurations, you can save these configurations and load them the next time they are needed.

Because Options Names are descriptive labels and not file names, you can enter in any text you like into the box. Your labels can be very descriptive such as "Trigger on High Speed traffic when CRC errors occur."

To create a new Recording Options name:

**Step 1** Enter a comment for the new file in the **Options Name** field.

**Step 2** Click **Save** to display the **Save As** window.

**Step 3** Specify a filename (***.rec**)

**Step 4** Click **Save.**

To load a Recording Options name:

**Step 1** Click **Load** to display the **Open** window.

**Step 2** From the list of **.rec** files, select the one that represents your Options Name.

The options settings for that name then display.

## 10.1.9 Trace File Name & Path

**Trace File Name & Path** is the location for saving your trace file. The default recording file name is **data.usb** for Low, Full, and High Speed recordings. If you are recording on both channels, then the system creates two files: **data_0.usb** for Channel 0, and **data_1.usb** for Channel 1.

- Click **Trace File Name & Path.**

Click **Change Default Location** to display a **Save As…** window in which to enter the recording file name ***.usb** for all subsequent recordings.

**Note**: Due to restrictions on where files can be written by users in Windows™ Vista and Windows 7, the USB Protocol Suite software may implicitly change a directory from the Program Files path

**x:\Program Files\Lecroy\…**

to the user's data path

**x:\Users\Public\Documents\Lecroy\…**

This is done (for example) when the desired Trace File Name & Path has such a reference in the Recording Options file. Note that when the opposite situation occurs (a Windows Vista or Windows 7 path is referenced), no implicit directory changes are made, since the Windows Vista/Windows 7 path is legal on an XP system. See “Notes on Vista and Windows 7 Directory Protections” on page 68 for more information.

**Important**: Make sure that you do not attempt to save traces on a network drive on which you do not have create or write permissions. Such an operation is not supported in the current software.

## 10.1.10 Power

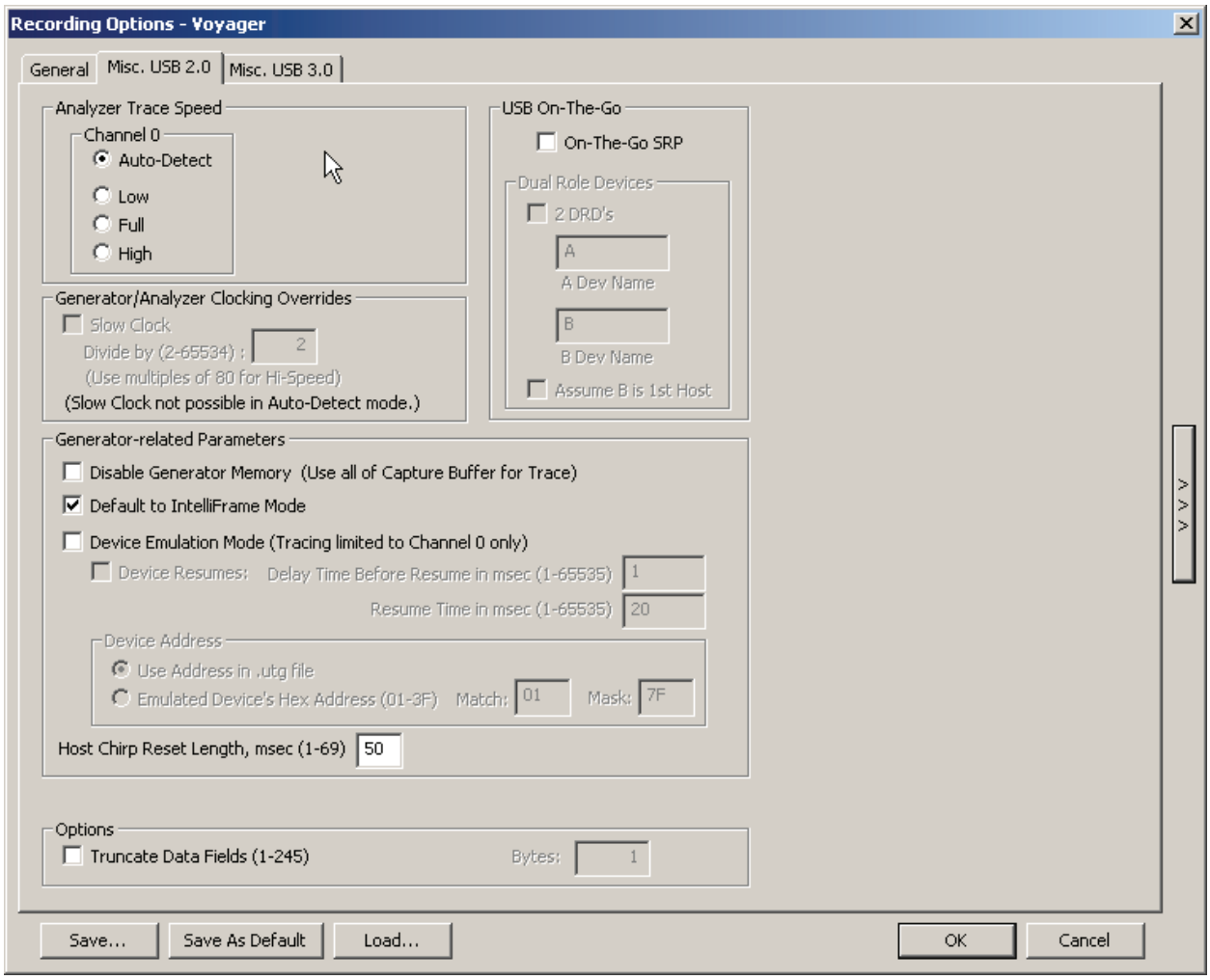
You can control power settings:

- **Keep VBus Power on after Generation/Exerciser completes:** Check if you want to keep the Host VBus on at completion of a 2.0 or 3.0 Trainer/Exerciser script.
- **Capture M3i Power Measurements (Voltage and Current):** Record voltage and current.

# 10.2 Recording Options - Misc. USB 2.0 (Voyager, Advisor T3, USB*Tracer/Trainer*, and Mobile)

The **Misc. USB 2.0** page presents options for setting:

- **Analyzer Trace Speed**: Select Auto-Detect, Low, Full, or High.
- **USB On-the-Go**: Check **On-the-Go SRP**. Optionally select **Dual Role Devices** as **2 DRD's** and enter device names. Optionally assume that B is the first host.
- **Generator/Analyzer Clocking Overrides**: Select **Slow Clock** and enter number of megahertz. **Note:** Auto-Detect mode does not allow Slow Clock.
- **Generator-related Parameters**: Choose parameters and device address location.
- **Options**: Truncate data fields




**Note:** USB 2.0 Device Emulation is not supported in USB Protocol Suite release 3.50.

## 10.2.1 Analyzer Speed

This option sets the speed of the traffic recorded by the Analyzer. The default setting is **Auto-detect**. This setting tells the Analyzer to discover what speed traffic is running and to label packets accordingly. If you are having problems with your recordings, you might try setting the traffic speed to one of the fixed values -- Low, Full, and Hi speed. These settings are used when you want to manually set the traffic speed.

In some rare cases, auto-detection circuitry causes Full Speed devices to fail to enumerate on plug-in. Changing the Analyzer speed to Full Speed can sometimes solve this problem.

Setting the speed to one of the fixed values is sometimes useful for debugging purposes. For example, if a device that is producing numerous errors at a particular speed, you may wish to set the recording to that speed in order to ensure that the Analyzer does not misread the error packets and label them the wrong speed. While it is unlikely that the Analyzer will mislabel packets in this way, manually setting the recording speed guarantees that the Analyzer always records packets at the correct speed.

### Notes on Hi Speed Recordings

Erroneous chirp blocks can be recorded on an idle bus when the Device has its FS terminations on while the Host has HS terminations connected. This causes a small differential voltage (“tiny-J”) on the USB bus that causes false Chirp detection.

This condition occurs during speed negotiation:

- On a HS bus, the condition is momentary just before the device chirps.
- On a CS bus, the condition occurs both before and after the device chirp (until the end of Reset). The user is discouraged from using **Speed=HIGH** to record signals on a classic speed bus.
- The Analyzer stops recording anything for 2.5 milliseconds following a FS_K state (which is at least 2 microseconds long). This is to avoid presenting “garbage” which is a by-product of the high-speed probe settling down.

## 10.2.2 Generator/Analyzer Clocking Overrides

Generator/Analyzer Clocking Overrides allows changes to be made to the Analyzer/generator clocking. Select **Slow Clock**, then enter a value in the box on the right. The value that is entered tells the Analyzer how much to divide the base clock by. For example, entering a 4 causes Full Speed traffic to be generated at a 3-megabit rate as opposed to the standard 12-megabit rate.

You can use the slow clock selection to slow down the base clock during generation. This also changes the Analyzer’s clock base to match.

**Step 1** In the **Misc. USB 2.0** tab, make sure you are out of Auto-Detect mode.

**Step 2** Select the **Slow Clock** checkbox.

**Step 3** In the **Divide By** field, enter a value.

**Step 4** Click **OK**.

## 10.2.3 USB On-The-Go

**USB On-The-Go** option sets the Analyzer to record the USB On-The-Go traffic. This protocol lets you run two devices, specify one of them as the host, one of them as the device, and to assign each device a name.

## 10.2.4 Generator-related Parameters

You can set traffic generation parameters:

- **Disable Generator Memory**: Use the whole Capture Buffer for the trace.
- **Default to IntelliFrame Mode**: Rather than Bitstream Mode.
- **Device Emulation Mode**: Limit tracing to Channel 0. You can check **Device Resumes**, then set the **Delay Time Before Resume** (in milliseconds, from 1 to 65535) and **Resume Time** (in milliseconds, from 1 to 65535).

You can set traffic generation parameters for the Device Address:

- **Use Address in .utg file**: The traffic generation file has an address.
- **Emulated Device's Hex Address** (01-3F): Enter the **Mask** and **Match** for the emulated device.

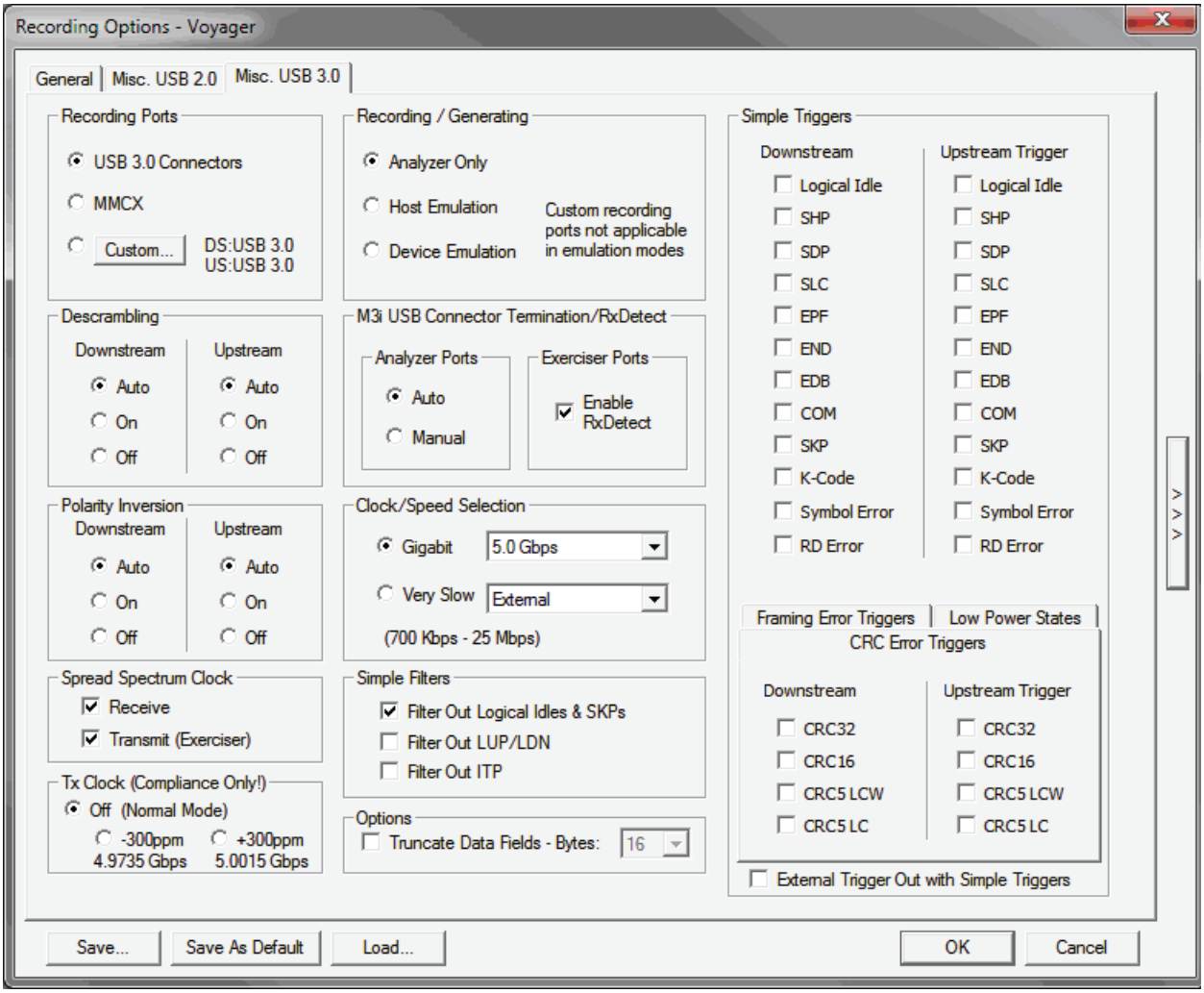
You can also enter the **Host Chirp Reset Length** (in milliseconds, from 1 to 69).

## 10.2.5 Data Truncation Option

- **Truncate Data Fields (2.0):** Allows data fields to be truncated during recording in order to save Analyzer memory and allow recording of more packets. Enter a minimum data length value in the Bytes box. The system truncates the data to the stated value (or up to 5 bytes more to optimize operation efficiency in the Analyzer hardware).
  **Note:** Truncation of data may cause incorrect transaction or transfer decoding.

# 10.3 Recording Options - Misc. USB 3.0 for Voyager

The **Misc. USB 3.0** tab presents options for setting Recording Ports, Descrambling, Polarity Inversion, Spread Spectrum Clock, Recording/Generating, Simple Filters and Truncate Data Fields, Simple Triggers, Clock/Speed Selection, and M3i Connector Termination/RxDetect.




For Recording Ports, select **USB 3.0 Connectors, MMCX**, or **Custom (DS:USB 3.0, US:USB 3.0)**. The custom option allows you to change the recording channels to use a mix of MMCX and USB 3.0 connectors.

For Descrambling, Downstream and/or Upstream, select **On, Off**, or **Auto**.

For Polarity Inversion, Downstream and/or Upstream, select **On, Off**, or **Auto**.

For Spread Spectrum Clock, select **Transmit (Exerciser)** to apply Spread Spectrum Clocking to the transmitter. To adjust the receivers to be more tolerant to Spread Spectrum Clocking, select **Receive**.
**Note:** The Transmitter and Receive commands are independent of each other.

For Recording/Generating, select **Analyzer Only, Host Emulation**, or **Device Emulation.**

For Simple Filters, you can **Filter Out Logical Idles and SKPs, Filter Out LUP/LDN**, or **Filter Out ITP**.

For Simple Triggers, for Downstream and Upstream triggers, you can select **Logical Idle, SHP, SDP, SLC, EPF, END, EDB, COM, SKP**, **K-Code.**
For CRC Error Triggers, for Downstream and Upstream triggers: **CRC32, CRC16, CRC5 LCW,** and/or **CRC5 LC**.
For Framing Error Triggers, for Downstream and Upstream triggers: **SLC, SDP, SHP, EPF.**
For Low Power States, for Downstream and Upstream triggers: **U1, U2,** and/or **U3**.
**Note:** If you trigger on a CRC error type, the traffic in the trace file at or near the trigger may display as IPS (Inter-packet symbols), because the software might not detect proper framing symbols. Consequently, searches for CRC errors may not find the CRC trigger location.
To cause a trigger signal to appear on the External Trigger Out facility when the simple trigger(s) occur, select the **External Trigger Out with Simple Triggers**:checkbox.

For Clock/Speed Selection, select **Gigabit** as **5.0, 2.5, or 1.25 Gbps**. For Voyager, the **Very Slow** option allows you to customize the clocking frequency the Analyzer uses when capturing data. You can select **External or Internal** (see “Very Slow Clock Usage” section below.)

For Termination/RxDetect (Voyager M3i USB connectors only), you can select **Auto** or **Manual** for Analyzer Ports and **Enable RxDetect** for Exerciser Ports.
For Analyzer Ports, if you select the Manual mode, the Term button in the toolbar is enabled. For more information about the Recording buttons, see “Recording” on page 80.

**Note:** The **Auto RxDetect** mode has been designed to recognize 3.0 hosts and devices and present 3.0 terminations to them when they are plugged in. However, some cases have timing that can cause the Host and Device not to connect or to go into USB 2.0 mode. If either of these timing cases occurs, click the **Momentary Disconnect** button on the toolbar to cause a Disconnect/Reconnect cycle of the VBus. If cycling does not work, disable and then re-enable the xHCI Host controller driver in the Windows 7 Device Manager of your PDK.

**Truncate Data Fields** -

Truncate the data fields in a Data Payload packet to the length specified in the pull-down selection. The actual amount captured is at LEAST the amount selected and may be up to 8 bytes more, depending on traffic, to increase efficiency of the Analyzer hardware.

**Note:** Truncating the payload will allow for more packets to fit in a trace, but it has the potential to prevent accurate decoding to higher layers (transfers, SCSI, etc).

## 10.3.1 Very Slow Clock Usage

The Voyager M3 USB 3.0 Verification platform supports slower than standard clock rates for prototype and simulation testing. All Voyager 3.0 Pro systems include the option to select ½ and ¼ clock rates. This Gigabit clock can operate at 2.5 GHz (5 Gbps), 1.25 GHz (2.5 Gbps), and 625 MHz (1.25 Gbps) over standard USB cables. This "fractional clock" mode is also supported over the SMA (coaxial) inputs on the front of Voyager platforms that include the SMA option.

Two extra-cost slow clock options can enable use of external clock sources to synchronize the frequency of the Voyager system at slower clock rates:

- The upper-end of this external clocking supports rates from 12.5 MHz (25 Mbps) to as low at 350 kHz (700 Kbps). The Voyager slow clock kit USB-AC01-V01-X (see the table below) provides this capability and includes SMA-to-MMCX cables for attaching the external clock source. The external clock source is generated by the system ref-clock on the DUT or by a dedicated clock generator.
- To achieve clock frequencies below 350 kHz requires minor customization of the Voyager hardware platform. LeCroy offers customization option USB-AC06-V01-X to remove capacitors on the SMA inputs only. This allows users to configure input frequencies at rates lower than 800 Hz for both protocol traffic generation and analysis.

The table below outlines Voyager options for slow clock.

| Model Number | Clock Frequency | Included |
|---|---|---|
| **USB-TZP3-V02-X**<br>Voyager M3i Voyager M3i Pro Analyzer - Exerciser System | 2.50 GHz (5.00 Gbps)<br>1.25 GHz (2.50 Gbps)<br>625 MHz (1.25 Gbps) | |
| **USB-AC01-V01-X**<br>Voyager M3i USB 3.0 Slow Clock kit<br>(includes 4 MMCX-to-SMA adapter cables and software license to support external clock input for Voyager M3 USB 3.0 analyzer and exerciser platform) | 12.5 MHz to 350 kHz | |
| **USB-AC06-V01-A**<br>Voyager USB 3.0 Custom MMCX Slow Clock<br>(custom MMCX-SMA port for ultra slow clock operation) | Below 350 kHz | |
| **USB-FE03-V01-X**<br>Voyager M3 USB 3.0 SMA probe kit<br>(includes eight (8) MMCX-to-SMA cables and license key for SMA differential input tap) | NA | |

Analyzer mode (but not Exerciser mode) requires a clock to both the Clock-A-In connector and the Clock-B-In connector on the front panel. The Clock-A-Out connector outputs the identical signal that was supplied to the Clock-A-In connector. The Clock-B-Out connector outputs the identical signal that was supplied to the Clock-B-In connector. You can use Clock-A-Out and Clock-B-Out to pass through the actual DUT onboard clock. If the Host DUT connects to port A, its Tx clock-out port should connect to Clock-A-In. Then, the Clock-A-Out can connect to the Device DUT Rx clock-in port. On the opposite side, the Device DUT Tx clock-out port should connect to Clock-B-In. Then Clock-B-Out can connect to the Host DUT Rx clock-in port.

**Note:** The Clock Out feature is only supported on Voyager M3i.

If Voyager is in Host Emulation mode, connect the clock to the Clock-A-In connector. The Exerciser uses this clock as its transmit clock and provides the identical output to the Clock-A-Out connector.

If Voyager is in Device Emulation mode, connect the clock to the Clock-B-In connector.

**Example setups using Voyager USB 3.0 in Exerciser Device Emulation mode over SMA inputs with External Slow Clock option**

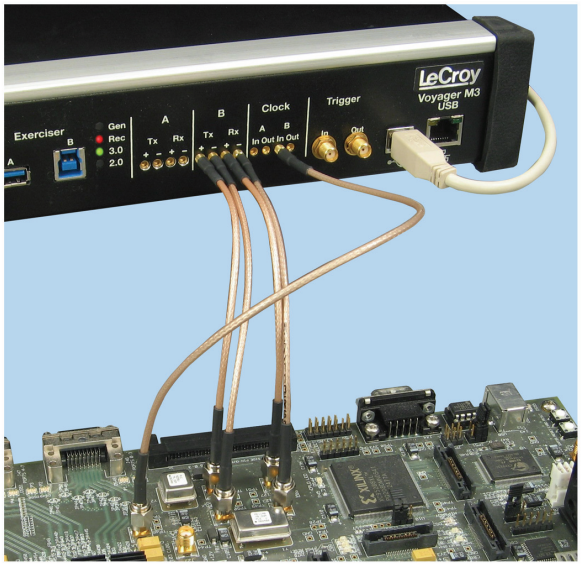



Figure 1: On-board clock signal

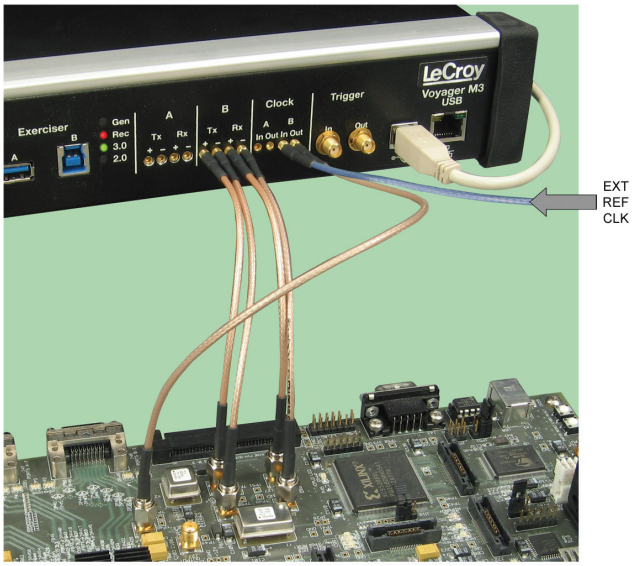



Figure 2: External reference clock

The Exerciser uses this clock as its transmit clock and provides the identical output to the Clock-B-Out connector. The analyzer scales down the timestamps in trace files to the clocks in use, so a symbol remains a 2-ns entity regardless of the clocking frequency value. All time values displayed in trace information reflect this scaled value, allowing easy comparison with the USB 3.0 specification. If the DUT provides its own Tx clock, you can connect the DUT clock to Clock In.

**Note 1**: LeCroy recommends using a LVPECL clock driver, which can drive a 50-ohm load with a minimum peak-to-peak voltage swing of 200 mV. Maximum peak-to-peak voltage swing should not exceed 1700 mV. Note that these voltages are single ended, because only one of the differential signals is connected using the coaxial cable.

**Note 2**: On Voyager M3i only, there is an option to use the Internal 10-Mbps clock as a clock source. The Voyager 5-MHz clock is on both the Clock-A-Out and Clock-B-Out connectors. However, LeCroy does not recommend using the Voyager clock. Voyager clock input is AC coupled and has no requirement for common mode voltage.

- For Host emulation, connect Clock Out A to Clock In A. You can use Clock Out B as the clock source for the DUT.
- For Device emulation, connect Clock Out B to Clock In B. You can use Clock Out A as the clock source for the DUT.

**IMPORTANT**: If you switch from Very Slow Clock back to Gigabit data rates, you must save the recording options and then power-cycle the Voyager.

## External Clock Input Specifications

The external clock input is 3.3 volt LVPECL and operates on the USB 3.0 differential signals only (not USB 2.0 signals). Device setup should be AC coupled at the clock input with a 10 uF ceramic capacitor.

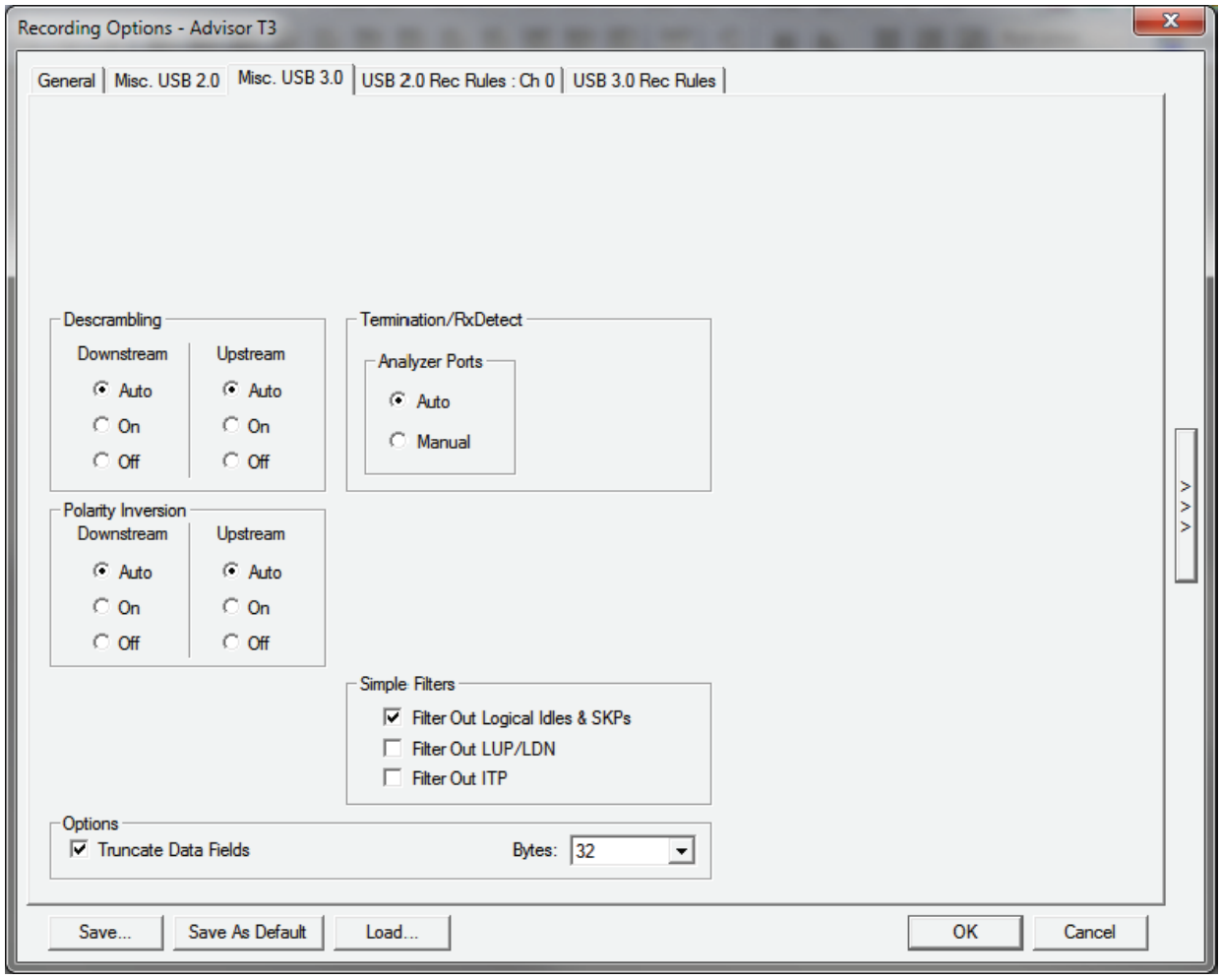
When enabled, the external slow clock option affects both the SuperSpeed analyzer (record) and the exerciser (transmit) frequencies. The clock source must be able to drive a 50 ohm load with a minimum peak-to-peak voltage swing of 200 mV. Maximum peak-to-peak voltage swing should not exceed 1700 mV. Note that these voltages are single ended, as only one of the differential signals is connected via the coaxial cable.

When operating at 1.25 Gbps to 5 Gbps modes, the data lines are directly connected to Rocket I/O ports. The very slow external clock mode will bypass the high speed Rocket I/O logic and use a SERDES implemented in the FPGA fabric. The low end of clock speed is limited by the value of the AC coupling caps on the inputs and the trace impedance. The SMA inputs use a 0.1 uf capacitor with a nominal trace impedance of 50 ohms. This mandates the 350 kHz slow clock limit over the Voyager SMA inputs.

Some software-based emulation environments require rates as low as 10 Hz. For this application, LeCroy offers a one-time customization of the Voyager hardware platform by removing the 0.1 uf capacitor on the Voyager SMA inputs, allowing the clock inputs to track externally supplied clock frequencies below 350 kHz. Although removal of this capacitor will render the SMA input ports non-compliant with 5 Gbps signaling, the native USB 3.0 connectors will continue to operate within the USB 3.0 electrical specification.

# 10.4 Recording Options - Misc. USB 3.0 for Advisor T3

The **Misc. USB 3.0** tab presents options for setting Descrambling, Termination/RxDetect, Polarity Inversion, Simple Filters, and Truncate Data Fields.




For Descrambling, Downstream and/or Upstream, select **On, Off**, or **Auto**.

For Termination/RxDetect you can select **Auto** or **Manual** for Analyzer Ports and **Enable RxDetect** for Exerciser Ports.

For Analyzer Ports, if you select the Manual mode, the Term button in the toolbar is enabled. For more information about the Recording buttons, see “Recording” on page 80.

**Note:** The **Auto RxDetect** mode has been designed to recognize 3.0 hosts and devices and present 3.0 terminations to them when they are plugged in. However, some cases have timing that can cause the Host and Device not to connect or to go into USB 2.0 mode. If either of these timing cases occurs, click the **Momentary Disconnect** button on the toolbar to cause a Disconnect/Reconnect cycle of the VBus. If cycling does not work, disable and then re-enable the xHCI Host controller driver in the Windows 7 Device Manager of your PDK.

For Polarity Inversion, Downstream and/or Upstream, select **On, Off**, or **Auto**.

For Simple Filters, you can **Filter Out Logical Idles and SKPs, Filter Out LUP/LDN**, or **Filter Out ITP**.

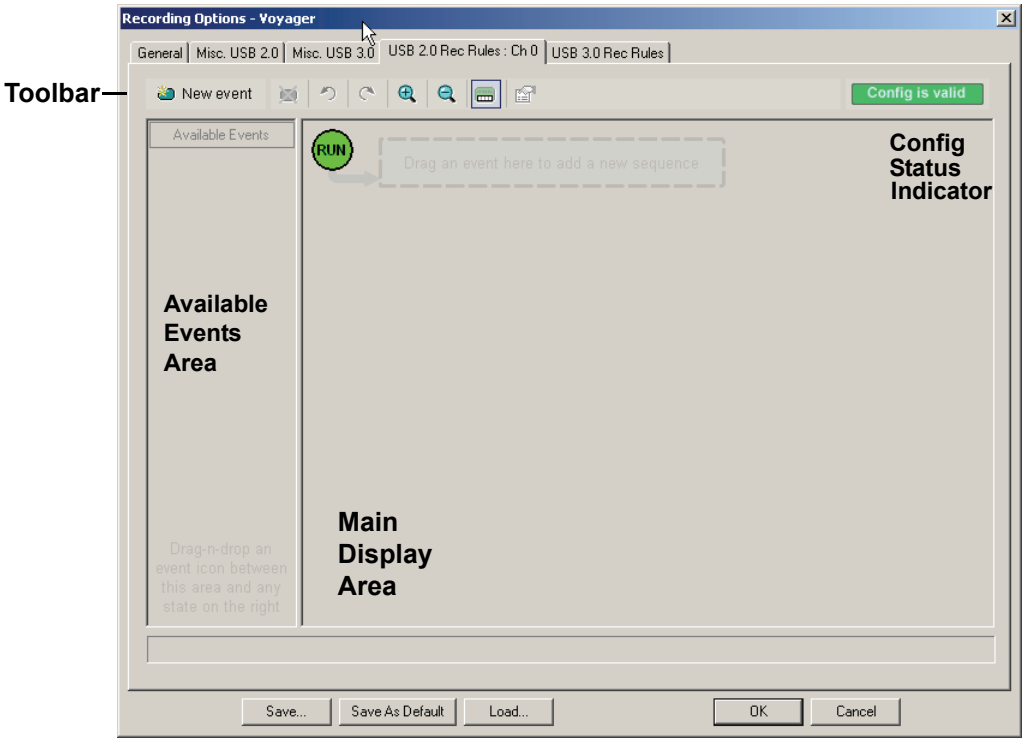
**Truncate Data Fields**

Truncate the data fields in a Data payload Packet to the length specified in the pull-down selection.

**Note:** Truncating the payload will allow for more packets to fit in a trace, but it has the potential to prevent accurate decoding to higher layers (transfers, SCSI, etc).

# 10.5 Recording Rules - USB 2.0

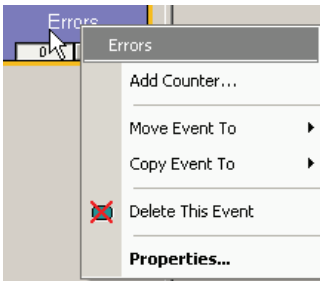
Use the Recording Rules to set triggers and filters for USB 2.0.




The page has the following areas:

- **Toolbar:** Contains buttons that control the Recording Rules page.
- **Available Events Area:** Area where you can park Event buttons that you intend to use in the Main Display area.
- **Main Display Area:** Area where you configure trigger and filter rules. You configure rules by dragging Event buttons from the Available Events area and then assigning actions to those buttons.
- **Config Status Indicator:** A button that indicates if the rule is valid or invalid. If a trigger or filter rule is configured correctly, the button is green and indicates Config is Valid. If a rule is not configured correctly, the button is red and indicates Config is Invalid.

**Pop-Up Menus:** When you right-click a button or area in the Recording Rules page, a context-sensitive pop-up menu appears that lets you do operations that relate to that button or area.




**Properties Dialogs:** When you click the Show/Hide Properties Dialog button for an event, action, or state, a dialog allows you to perform the same operations as in the pop-up menus.

## 10.5.1 Recording Rules Toolbar

The Recording Rules toolbar buttons control the Recording Rules page.

**Figure 10.1 Recording Rules Toolbar**

**Table 10.1 Recording Rules Buttons**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | New Event. Creates a new event in the Available Events area. | | Zoom Out. Makes the display appear smaller. |
| | Delete Event. Deletes the selected event. | | Show/Hide Channels. Shows or hides the channel icon on the Event button. |
| | Undo. Undoes the change made to Recording Rules page. The Undo buffer has unlimited size. | | Show/Hide Properties Dialog. Shows or hides the properties dialog of the selected event, action, or state. |
| | Redo. Restores changes done to the Recording Rules page. | | This display appears when the current Recording Rules configuration can be executed by the hardware. |
| | Zoom In. Enlarges the display (see note). There are five zoom levels. The default level is the middle one. | | This display appears when the current Recording Rules configuration cannot be executed by the hardware. |

**Note:** If you have a wheel on the mouse, you can zoom by holding down the CTRL key and rolling the mouse wheel.

## 10.5.2 Recording Rules Page: How It Works

You can think of the Recording Rules page as a workspace for creating recording rules (rules that determine how the analyzer records traces). Recording rules are combinations of events and actions.

An event and the action or actions associated with it form a rule state. One or more states are encapsulated in a sequence.

**Note:** There can be from one to 512 states within a sequence. You can associate one or more events with each state, and you assign each event a different action or the same action.

A sequence that has only one state is called a single-state sequence. The analyzer continuously watches for each event in the sequence and executes the corresponding action if the event is detected.

A sequence that has multiple states is a multi-state sequence. The states are arranged in a hierarchy, with a top state and successively lower states. Only one state in a multi-state sequence is active at a time. The analyzer does not go to a successive state unless it is directed to do so by the previous state.

Sequences are described in detail in “Using Sequences” later in this chapter.

Briefly, creating a rule involves the following steps:

**Step 1** Creating Event buttons in the Available Events area.

**Step 2** Drag-and-drop of Event buttons to the appropriate areas (cells) in the Main Display area.

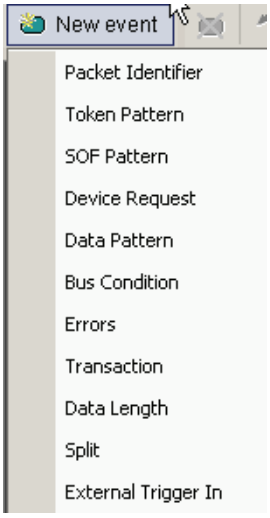
**Step 3** Assigning an action or actions to each Event button.

## 10.5.3 Creating Event Buttons

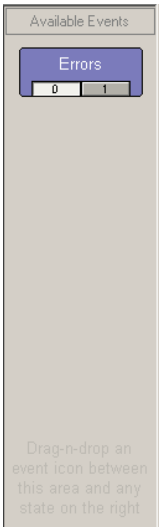
To create a rule, first create one or more Event buttons. As you create Event buttons, they appear in the Available Events area. You then can drag-and-drop them into the Main Display area.

To create event buttons:

**Step 1** Click the **New Event** button at the left side of the toolbar to display the New Event pop-up menu.




**Step 2** Select an event, such as Errors. The event appears in the Available Events area.



## 10.5.4 Dragging a Button to the Main Display Area

After you create an Event button in the Available Events area, you can drag the button to the Main Display area and drop it in the appropriate cell (a cell is a grayed-out rectangle with a dashed line around it). You can think of each cell as a target for drag-and-drop of an Event button.

There are two types of cell that might appear: Sequence cell and State cell. In the Main Display area, they are labelled as follows:

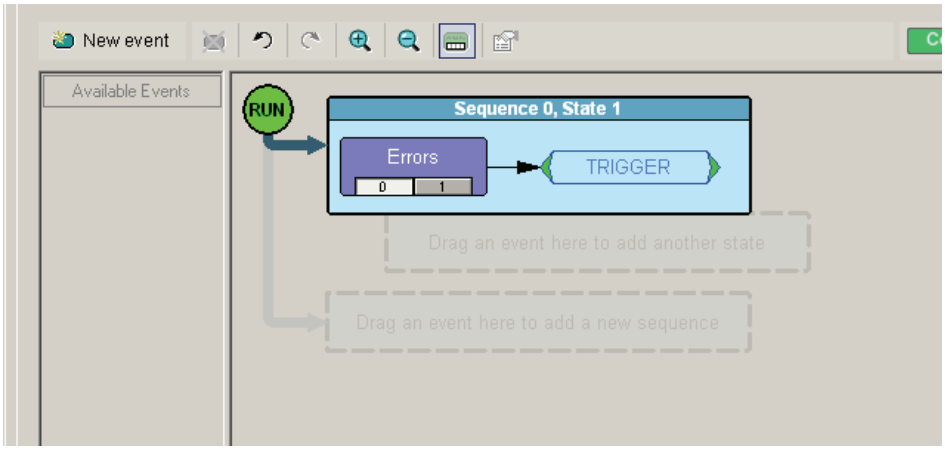
- **Sequence cell**: Drag an event here to add a new sequence.
- **State cell**: Drag an event here to add another state.

If there currently are no events in the Main Display area, a single sequence cell appears at the top of the area.

To drag-and-drop the Event button:

**Step 1** Place the mouse cursor on the Event button in the Available Events area. Click the left mouse button.

**Step 2** Drag the button to the cell. When the button is in the cell, a dashed highlight line appears around the cell. Drop the button in the cell (release the left mouse button). The Event button appears in the cell.




The default label for the first cell is “Sequence 0, State 1." As described later in this section, you can change that label using the Properties pop-up for that cell.

Two new cells appear under the first cell. The first of these new cells is a state cell that allows you to create another state in rule Sequence 0 (to make Sequence 0 a multi-state sequence).

The second of the new cells is to create a separate sequence, which would be labelled Sequence 1.

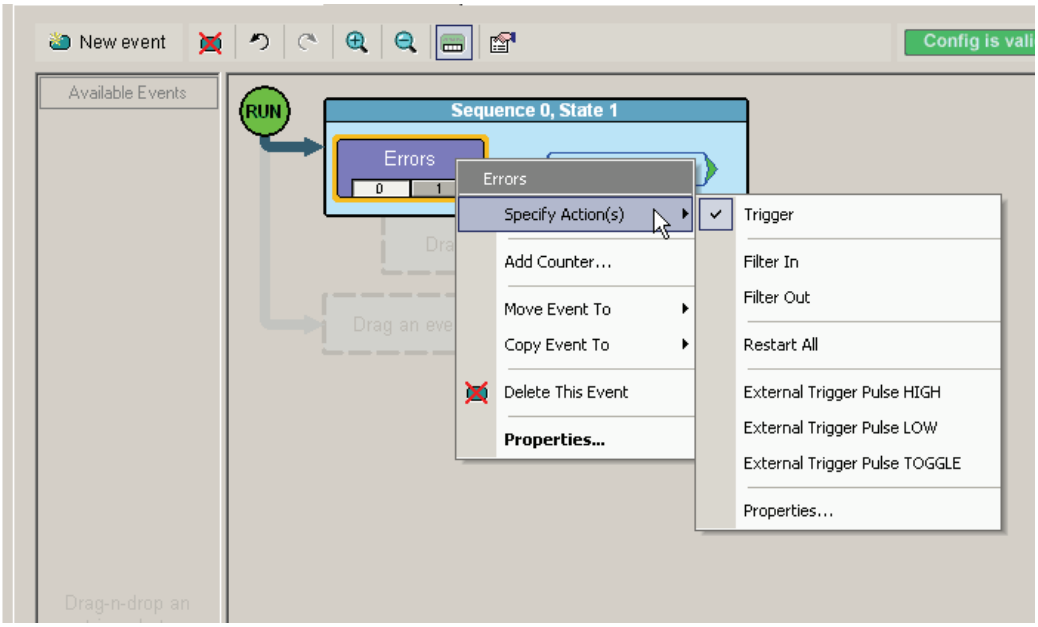
## 10.5.5 Assigning an Action

After you have dropped the Event button in a cell in the Main Display area, you can assign an action to the event.

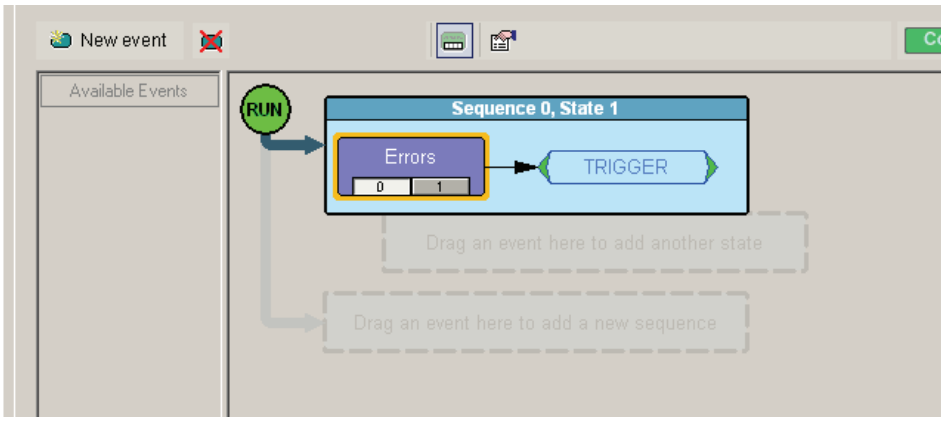
**Note:** If you do not assign an action to an Event button, the analyzer ignores the event.

To assign an action to an Event button:

**Step 1** Right-click the **Event** button to display a pop-up menu.




**Step 2** Select **Specify Action**, and then choose an action from the submenu. The menu closes, and the action is assigned.




**Note:** You can also set actions within the Properties dialog for each event. Double-click the Event button to open the Properties dialog, then select the Actions tab and set your actions.

## 10.5.6 Recording Rules Pop-Up Menus

The Recording Rules window has context-sensitive pop-up menus that are associated with the following types of object: cells, events, and actions.

### Cell Pop-up Menu

If you click a cell in the Main Display area that has an Event button contained in it, the Cell pop-up menu appears. The Cell pop-up menu has the following options.

- **New Event**: Displays the same menu that you get when you click the New Event button on the toolbar.
- **Properties**: Displays the Properties dialog for the selected cell.

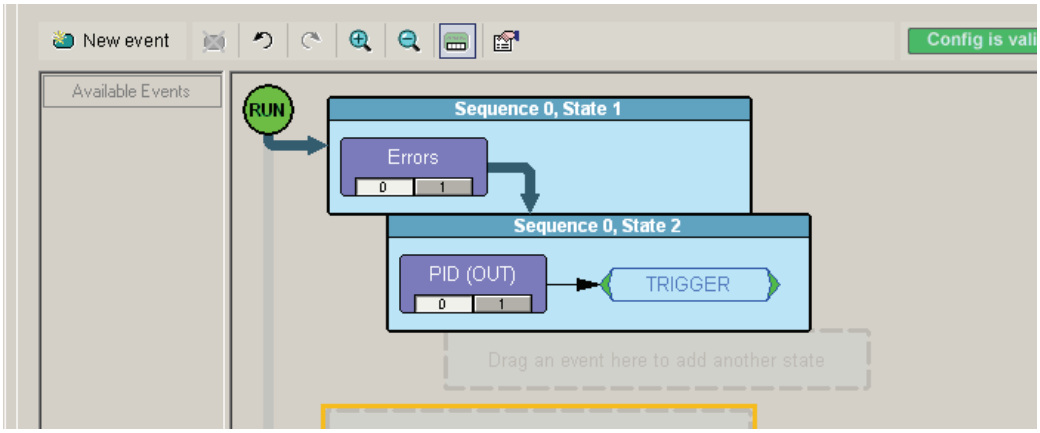
### Action Pop-up Menu

If you click an Action button in the Main Display area, the Action pop-up menu appears. The Action pop-up menu has the following trigger and filter options:

- **Trigger**: Sets or clears Trigger action.
- **Filter In**: Sets or clears Filter In action. If Filter In is set, you cannot use Filter Out (it is disabled).
- **Filter Out:** Sets or clears Filter Out action. If Filter Out is set, you cannot use Filter In (it is disabled).

**Note:** Examples that show use of filters are provided later in this chapter.

**Advance the Sequence**: Creates an event sequence consisting of the event you clicked on and an event in a successive state of the sequence. A thick arrow appears from the selected event and points downward.




In other words, the **Advance the Sequence** button is the link between two states in a multi-state sequence. The **Advance the Sequence** arrow tells the analyzer to go to the next state if it detects the event at the tail (origin) of the arrow.

The Action pop-up menu has the following restart and trigger options:

- **Restart the Sequence (not shown)**: Restarts the sequence. Note that this option is context-sensitive and only appears if you have created a multi-state sequence. A thick arrow appears from the selected event and point upward towards the first event in the sequence.
- **Restart All:** Restarts all rules in all sequences and in the global state and displays an arrow and a Restart All button. This action precludes selecting Advance the Sequence and Restart the Sequence.
- **External Trigger Pulse HIGH:** Sends an output signal with a Pulse High format through the output ports on the back of the UPAS. Pulse High is the default format. Pulse High causes the analyzer to transmit a 5-volt, 40-nanosecond signal.
- **Properties**: Displays the Action Properties dialog for the selected action.

## Event Pop-up Menu

If you click an Event button in the Main Display area, the Event pop-up menu appears. The Event pop-up menu has the following options:

- **Specify Action(s)**: Opens the Actions submenu, allowing you to assign an action to the event. Options on this submenu are the same as those on the Action pop-up, described previously.
- **Add Counter:** Adds a counter to count a specified number of times the event occurs before the analyzer executes the corresponding action.
- **Move Event to:** Moves the selected event to a different position in the Recording Rules window.
- **Copy Event to:** Copies the selected event to a different position in the Recording Rules window.
- **Delete This Event:** Deletes the selected Event. Alternatively, you can use the Delete button on the toolbar or keyboard to delete events.
- **Properties**: Displays the Event Properties dialog for the selected event.

## 10.5.7 Events and Event Properties for USB 2.0

Recording rules are associations between events and actions. These associations determine how trace recording occurs.

For Voyager, the supported events for USB 2.0 are:

- Packet Identifier
- Token Pattern
- SOF Pattern
- Device Request
- Data Pattern
- Bus Condition
- Errors
- Transaction
- Data Length
- Split
- External Trigger In (see **Notes on External Trigger In** below)

For Tracer/Trainer, the supported events for USB 2.0 are:

- Packet Identifier
- Token Pattern
- SOF Pattern
- Device Request
- Data Pattern
- Bus Condition
- Errors
- External Input Signal (UPAS 2500) (see **Notes on External Trigger In** below)
  **Note:** External input triggers only work on Channel 0 on the USB Tracer/Trainer.
- Transaction
- Data Length
- Split
- Extern Data7-Data0 In (UPAS 2500)

For Advisor, the supported events for USB 2.0 are:

- Packet Identifier
- Token Pattern
- SOF Pattern
- Device Request
- Data Pattern
- Bus Condition
- Errors
- Transaction
- Data Length
- Split

For Mobile, the supported events for USB 2.0 are:

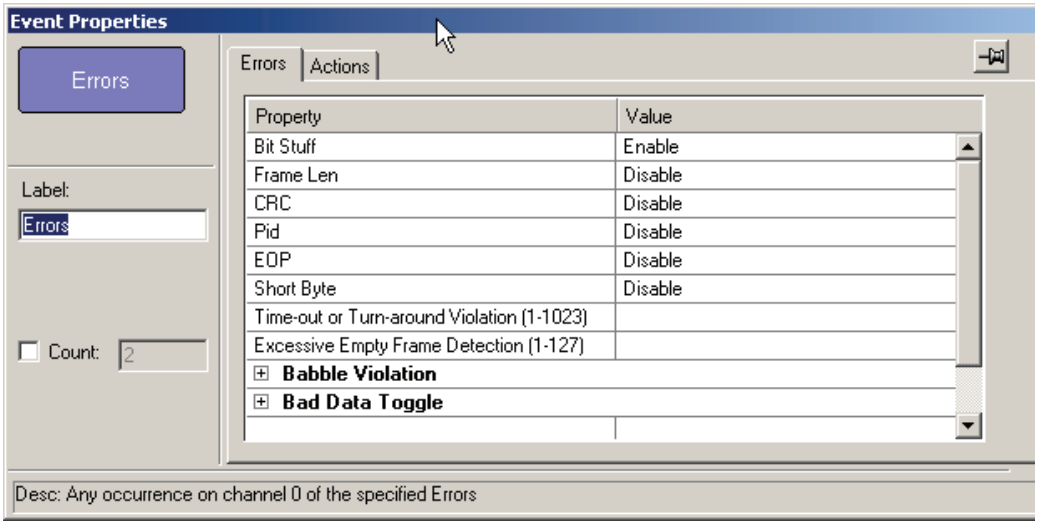
- Packet Identifier
- Token Pattern
- SOF Pattern
- Device Request
- Data Pattern
- Bus Condition
- Errors
- Transaction
- Data Length
- Split

**Notes on External Trigger In**

Input threshold value for Voyager and Advisor T3 is 0.8 V.
Input threshold values for USB Tracer/Trainer are between 0.8 V and 2 V (TTL Levels).

The minimum value of the external input signal which can be input to Voyager, Advisor T3, and USB Tracer/Trainer is 0 V. The maximum value is 5 V.

## Event Properties (of the Error Event)

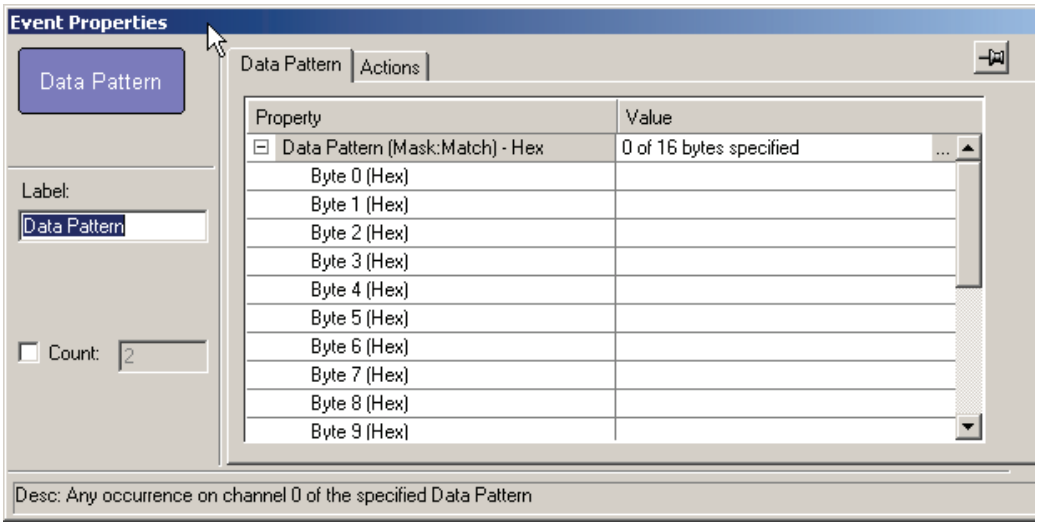



The dialog lists the Properties and their Values.

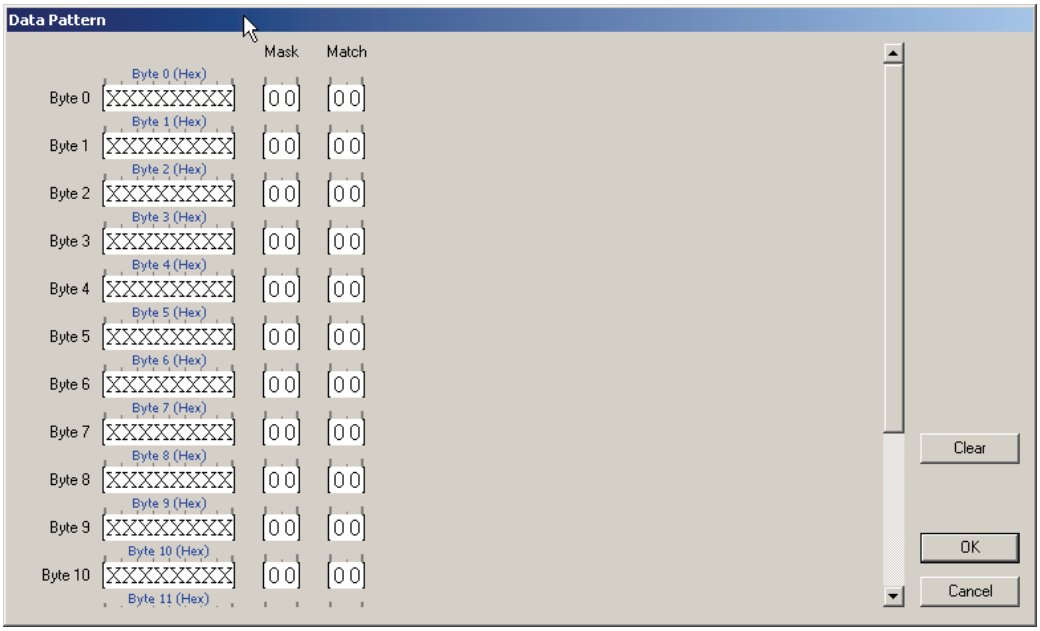
**Note:** The default values of Babble clocks and Time-out or Turnaround violation are based on the recording speed selected in the 2.0 Misc tab. If the selected speed is Auto-Detect, the defaults are based on Hi Speed traffic, since this is the most prevalent speed today.
If you change the recording speed AFTER you have defined error events, the Babble clocks and Time-out or Turnaround violation values are NOT updated, so you can get a false trigger or a missed error.
Therefore, after you change the recording speed in the 2.0 Misc tab, delete any error events and create new ones. The new error events are then based on the current selected speed.

### Data Pattern Mask and Match

If you select Data Pattern as the Event, you can set Data Pattern event properties in the Event Properties dialog.




Click the **...** button at the right of the first line to display the Data Pattern dialog.



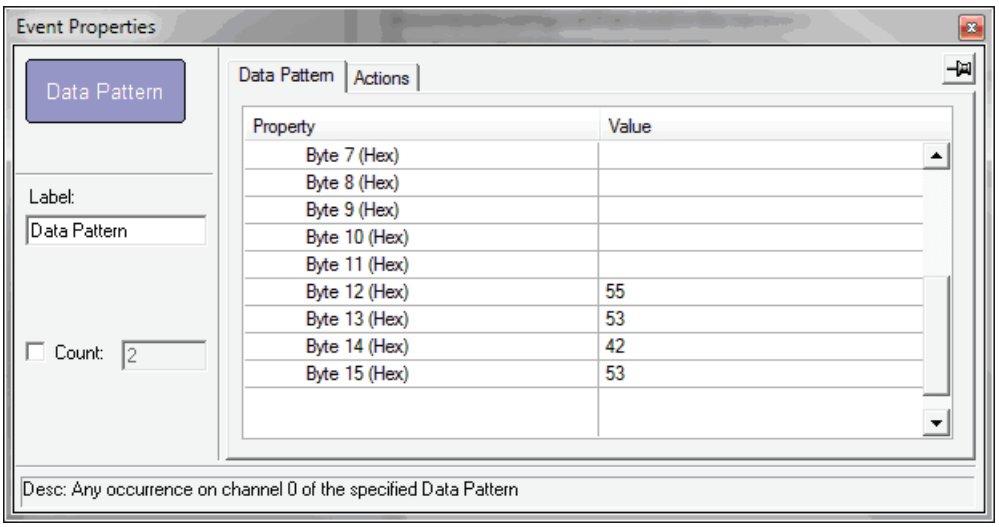

In the Data Pattern dialog, you can set the Bitmask, Mask, and Match for each bit,

Bitmask and Match always correlate. When you set Bitmask or Match. the other changes to maintain their correlation.

**Note:** If you set Bitmask/Match before setting Mask, the Mask changes to the default mask. You must change to the Mask that you want.

If you set an appropriate Mask before setting Bitmask/Match, the Mask does not change automatically to a default mask if you change Bitmask/Match.

**Note:** If you are trying to match less than 16 bytes of data and want it to match the pattern in a data payload which might be less than 16 bytes, align your pattern to the END of the 16 byte mask/match array. For example, if you want to match the SCSI header “USBS” in a payload that MIGHT be less than 16 bytes, you would fill out the table as follows:




This will match the pattern in a payload of sizes 4 through 1024.

## 10.5.8 Counters and Timers for USB 2.0

**Timer:** A timer counts the time from a starting event to a final event. For example, if you enter **10**, the Analyzer counts 10 nanoseconds or milliseconds after the starting event before it performs whatever action you assign. Timers cannot be applied to events with Filter Actions. The maximum timer value is 65,535.

**Counter:** A counter tells the Analyzer to search for *x* instances of the selected event. For example, if you enter **10**, the Analyzer counts 10 instances of the selected event before it performs whatever action you assign. Counters cannot be applied to events with Filter Actions. The maximum counter value is 65,535.

Triggers can be set on multiple instances of an event. For example, you can set a trigger to occur following five instances of any DLP. To configure the Analyzer to look for multiple events, you enable Counters. Counters tell the Analyzer how many occurrences of an event for which it should wait before triggering. For example, use a counter to Trigger following the 16th occurrence of an error or DLLP message.

### Events and Actions

Within events, counters determine how many times the event must occur before the associated actions are triggered. Event counters typically have two properties:

- **Count Randomly**: Can be set to “Yes” or “No” (default value is “No”). If set to “Yes”, the event repeats a random number of times (between 1 and the value set in the property Max Random Count, which replaces the property Counter Value when “Yes” is selected), before the action is triggered.
- **Counter Value**: Number of repeats required when Count Randomly is set to “No”. The default value is 1.

Within actions, counters determine how many times the system calls the action before it acts. Action counters typically have two properties:

- **Random**: Can be set to “Yes” or “No” (default value is “No”). If set to “Yes”, the action triggers a number of occurrences before the action takes place. That number ranges randomly between 1 and the value set in the property At least every Nth occurrence, which replaces the property Every Nth occurrence when “Yes” is selected.
- **Every Nth occurrence**: Number of times the system calls the action before it acts.

Note that there is some overlap in the way these counters can be used. For example, in the simple case of a single event leading to a single action, it makes no difference whether you specify the event to require five repeats before triggering the action, or the action to require five occurrences before it acts.

However, in the case of combined events and/or actions, the separate counters provide flexibility in designing test cases. For example, consider the case where Event_1 OR Event_2 leads to Action. If Event_1 has a counter of 5, then the Action triggers either when Event_1 has repeated five times or when Event_2 happens the first time, whichever occurs first.

But if the event counters are set to 1 and the Action counter is set to 5, then the Action happens after five occurrences of EITHER Event_1 or Event_2.

**Number of Analyzer Counters and Timers**

The Analyzer includes one event counter and one time counter (timer). If you try to assign more, you get a warning.

**Packets**

You must assign a packet, event, or logical expression to a counter and/or timer.

**Using a Counter**

To use a counter:

**Step 1** Click an event to display an arrow.

**Step 2** Click a counter. This causes the counter to attach itself to the bottom of the event. An arrow automatically connects the counter to the Trigger button.

**Note:** For Timers, do **NOT** use a timer as the first event in a sequence, since this first “event” will be the start of recording, and this is not a precise or predictable point in time from which to start timing. Use timers only AFTER the first event.

**Setting a Counter**

To set a counter:

**Step 1** Open the Recording Rules page, select an event, and drag it to the Global State or Sequence cell.

**Step 2** Counts can only be set on a per channel basis, so press the Up or Down channel buttons to select the channel on which the count is performed.

**Step 3** Right-click the selected event and select **Add Counter** from the menu to open the Properties dialog.

**Step 4** In the text box to the right of the label Count, enter a value. Make sure the checkbox to the left of the word **Count** is checked.

**Step 5** Click the **X** in the top right corner of the dialog box to close the dialog. A counter button should appear just below your selected event.

### Changing a Counter Value

To change the counter value:

**Step 1** Click the small blue dot in the upper-left corner of the counter button. A menu appears.

**Step 2** Select **Change Counter Value**.

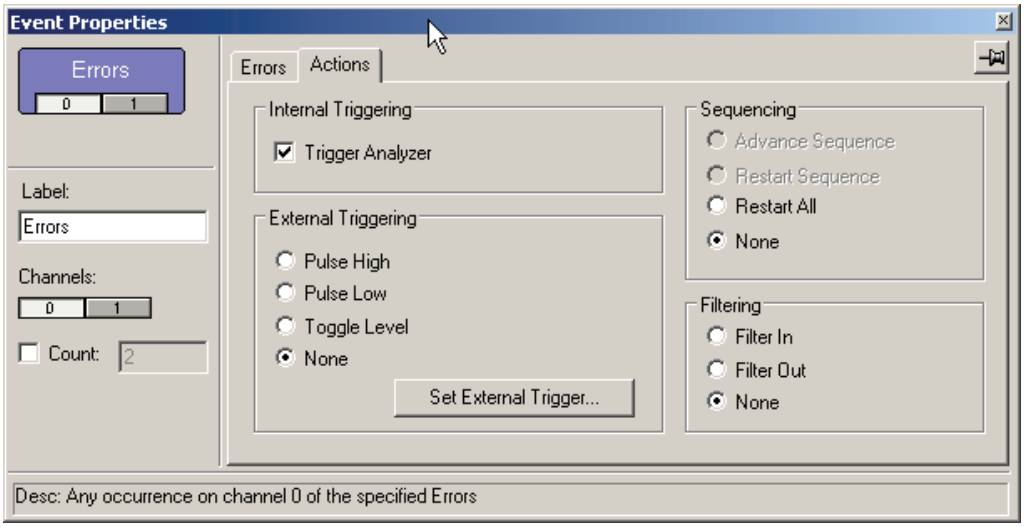
**Step 3** Enter a new value in the pop-up dialog box. This causes the new value to appear in the counter button.

## 10.5.9 Actions and Action Properties

The Actions are:

| Event | Description |
|---|---|
| Trigger | Start recording. |
| Filter In | Include in the trace file the event specified (and no others). |
| Filter Out | Exclude from the trace file the event specified. |
| Advance the Sequence | Go to the next state in this sequence (sequence in which this action is located). |
| Restart All | Restart all sequences. |
| External Trigger Pulse HIGH | Send HIGH pulse on external trigger output. |
| External Trigger Pulse LOW | Send LOW pulse on external trigger output. |
| External Trigger Pulse TOGGLE | Send HIGH-LOW pulse on external trigger output. |
| Properties | Opens the Event Properties dialog box. |

### Action Properties (of the Error Event)




You can set Internal Triggering, External Triggering, Sequencing, and Filtering.

### 10.5.10 Using a Single-State Sequence

As described previously, a sequence can be single-state or multi-state. A single-state sequence is a simple combination of events and actions. You cannot create looping or branching conditions with this type of sequence.

A multi-state sequence allows you to branch successively to (advance to) lower states in the sequence or to loop to the front of the sequence (restart the sequence).

### 10.5.11 Using a Multi-State Sequences

Multi-state sequences allow you to create conditions that branch down to successive states or loop back to the beginning of the sequence. They are more complex than single-state sequences but very powerful.

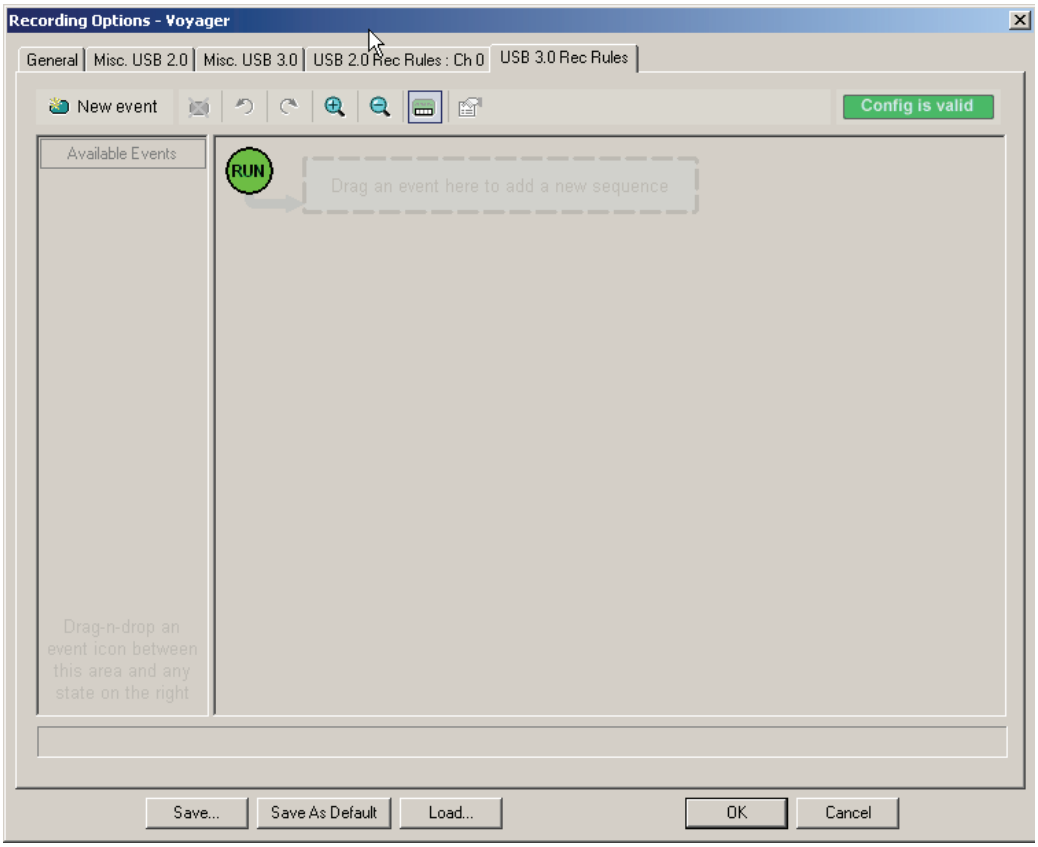
### 10.5.12 Using Independent Sequences

You can use up to two independent sequences. By default, they are labeled Sequence 0 and Sequence 1.

The two sequences operate in parallel and have no effect on each other with the following exception. Either of the two sequences can contain the action Restart All. This action restarts both sequences in the Main Display area.

# 10.6 Recording Rules - USB 3.0 (Voyager only)

Use the Recording Rules to set triggers for USB 3.0.




The page has the same areas as the USB 2.0 Recording Rules (see “Recording Options - Misc. USB 3.0 for Advisor T3” on page 245):

**Pop-Up Menus:** When you right-click a button or area in the Recording Rules page, a context-sensitive pop-up menu appears that lets you do operations that relate to that button or area, in the same way as for the USB 2.0 Recording Rules.

**Properties Dialogs:** When you click the Show/Hide Properties Dialog button for an event, action, or state, a dialog allows you to perform the same operations as in the pop-up menus, in the same way as for the USB 2.0 Recording Rules.

## 10.6.1 Recording Rules Toolbar

The Recording Rules toolbar buttons control the Recording Rules page and are the same as for the USB 2.0 Recording Rules (see “Recording Rules Toolbar” on page 249).

**Note:** If you have a wheel on the mouse, you can zoom by holding down the CTRL key and rolling the mouse wheel.

## 10.6.2 Recording Rules Page: How It Works

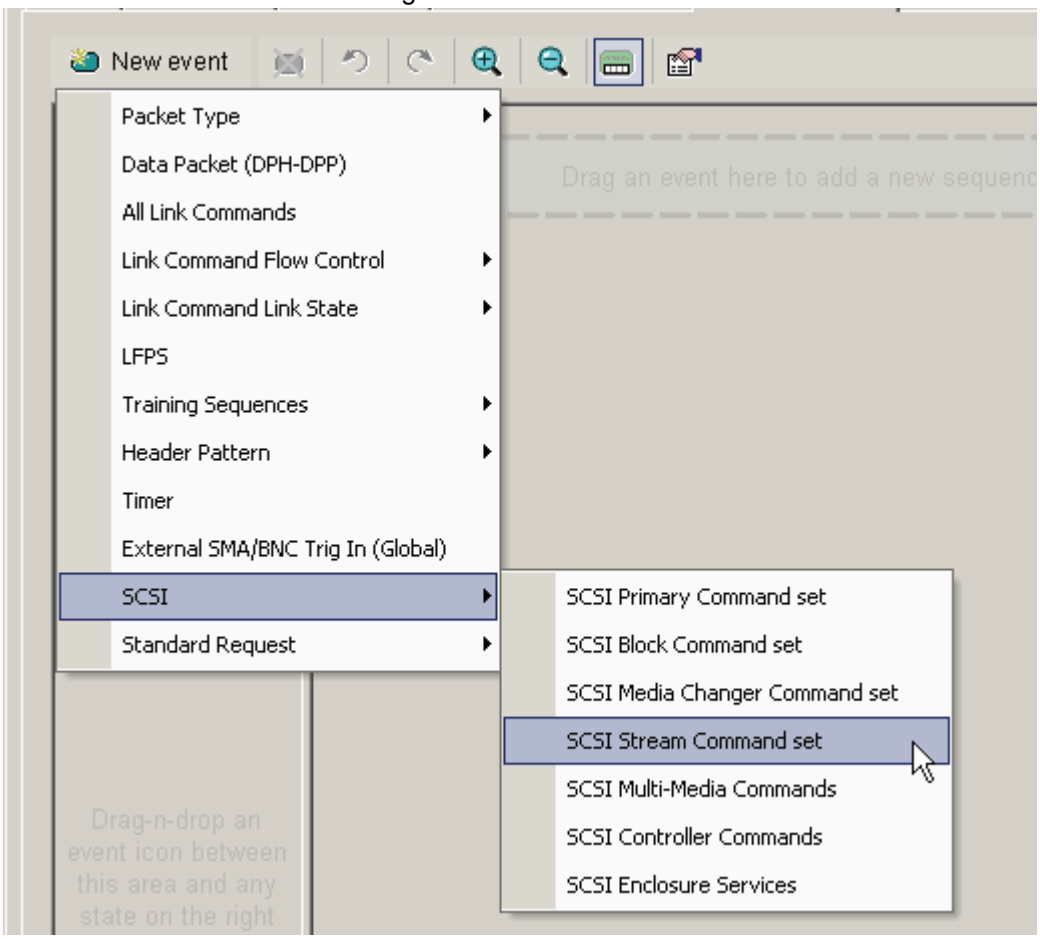
You can think of the Recording Rules page as a workspace for creating recording rules (rules that determine how the analyzer records traces). Recording rules are combinations of events and actions. For how the Recording Rules page works, see “Recording Rules Page: How It Works” on page 250.

**Note**: Recording Rules for USB 3.0 currently do not support more than two independent states.

## 10.6.3 Creating Event Buttons

To create a rule, first create one or more Event buttons. As you create Event buttons, they appear in the Available Events area. You then can drag-and-drop them into the Main Display area.

To create event buttons, see “Creating Event Buttons” on page 251. The following events are available for USB 3.0 recording rules:

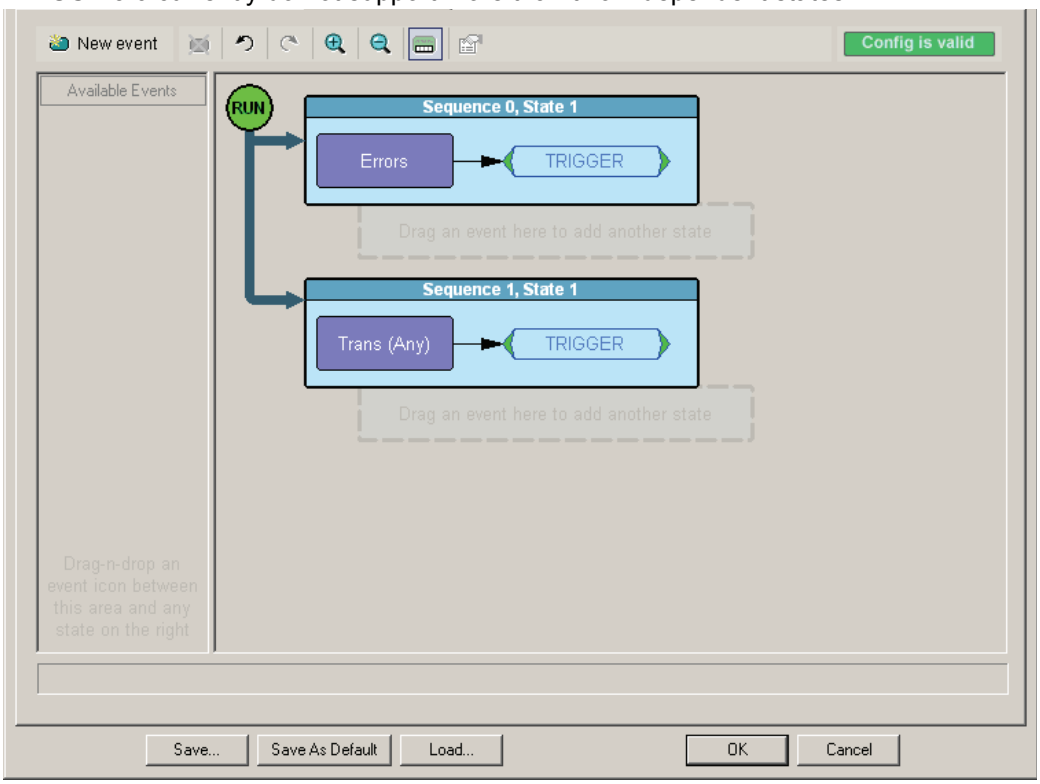


## 10.6.4 Dragging a Button to the Main Display Area

After you create an Event button in the Available Events area, you can drag the button to the Main Display area and drop it in the appropriate cell (a cell is a grayed-out rectangle with a dashed line around it). You can think of each cell as a target for drag-and-drop of an Event button.

There are two types of cell that might appear: Sequence cell and State cell. In the Main Display area, they are labelled as follows:

- **Sequence cell**: Drag an event here to add a new sequence.
- **State cell**: Drag an event here to add another state. **Note**: Recording Rules for USB 3.0 currently do not support more than two independent states.




If there currently are no events in the Main Display area, a single sequence cell appears at the top of the area.

To drag-and-drop the Event button, see “Dragging a Button to the Main Display Area” on page 252

## 10.6.5 Assigning an Action

After you have dropped the Event button in a cell in the Main Display area, you can assign an action to the event.

**Note:** If you do not assign an action to an Event button, the analyzer ignores the event.

To assign an action to an Event button, see “Assigning an Action” on page 253.

**Note:** You can also set actions within the Properties dialog for each event. Double-click the Event button to open the Properties dialog, then select the Actions tab and set your actions.

## 10.6.6 Recording Rules Pop-Up Menus

The Recording Rules window has context-sensitive pop-up menus that are associated with the following types of object: cells, events, and actions.

### Cell Pop-up Menu

If you click a cell in the Main Display area that has an Event button contained in it, the Cell pop-up menu appears. The Cell pop-up menu has the following options.

- **New Event**: Displays the same menu that you get when you click the New Event button on the toolbar.
- **Properties**: Displays the Properties dialog for the selected cell.

### Event Pop-up Menu

If you click an Event button in the Main Display area, the Event pop-up menu appears (see “Event Pop-up Menu” on page 255).

### Action Pop-up Menu

If you click an Action button in the Main Display area, the Action pop-up menu appears (see “Action Pop-up Menu” on page 254):

**Note 1**: Recording Rules for USB 3.0 currently do not support more than two independent states. The Advance Sequence option is not currently available for USB 3.0 recording rules.

## 10.6.7 Actions and Action Properties

For the available Actions and Action Properties, see “Actions and Action Properties” on page 261.

#### Action Properties

For the Action Properties, you can set Internal Triggering and External Triggering.

Recording Rules for USB 3.0 currently do not support more than two independent states. The Advance Sequence option is not currently available for USB 3.0 recording rules.

### 10.6.8 Events and Event Properties for USB 3.0

Recording rules are associations between events and actions. These associations determine how trace recording occurs. The supported events for USB 3.0 are:

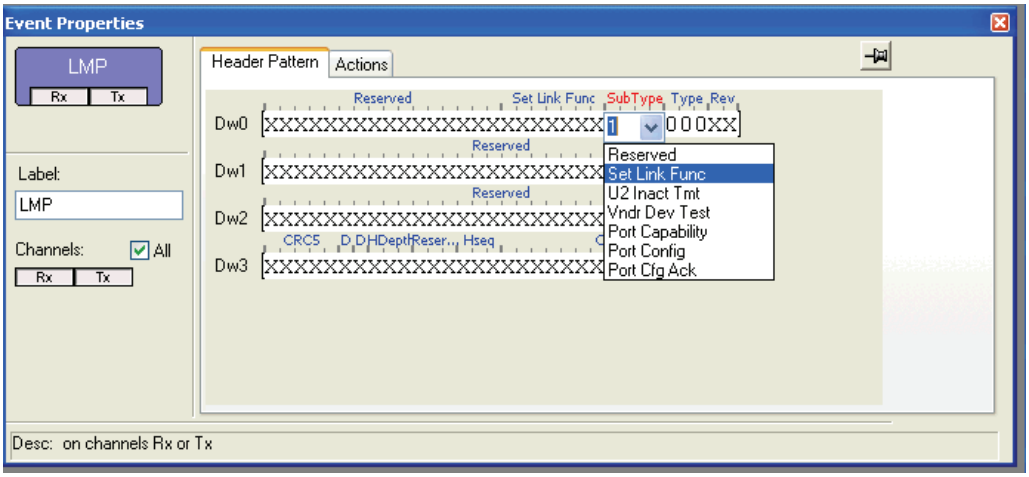
- Packet Type
  - Link Management Packets
  - Transaction Packets
  - Data Packet Header
  - Isoch Timestamp Packets
- Data Packet (DP) (for software version 3.71 and higher)
- Data Packet (DPH+DPP) (for software version 3.70 and lower)
- All Link Commands
- Link Command Flow Control
  - LGOOD_0 through LGOOD_7 and LGOOD_n
  - LBAD
  - LCRD_A through LCRD_D and LCRD_x
  - LRTY
- Link Command Link State
  - LGO_U1, LGO_U2, LGO_U3
  - LAU
  - LXU
  - LMPA
  - LUP
  - LDN
- LFPS
- Training Sequences
  - TS1
  - TS2
  - TSEQ
- Header Pattern
  - Link Management Packet
    - Set Link Function
    - U2 Inact Tmt
    - Vndr Dev Test
    - Port Capability
    - Port Config
    - Port Cfg Rsp
  - Transaction Packet
    - ACK
    - NRDY
    - ERDY
    - STATUS
    - STALL
    - DEV_NOTIFICATION
    - PING
    - PING_RESPONSE
    - HOST_NOTIFICATION
  - Data Packet Header
  - Isoch Timestamp Packet)
- External Trigger In (Voyager)

- Timer
- SCSI
  - Primary Command Set
  - Block Command Set
  - Media Changer Command Set
  - Stream Command Set
  - Multi-Media Commands
  - Controller Commands
  - Enclosure Services

### Event Properties

The Event Properties dialog lists the Properties and their Values (see “Events and Event Properties for USB 2.0” on page 256).

**Note:** The Header Pattern tab is different for the USB 3.0 recording rules.




Most fields are mask and match. The Type and Subtype fields have drop-down menus. You can set the Subtype to:

- Reserved
- Set Link Func
- U2 Inact Tmt
- Vndr Development Test
- Port Capability
- Port Config
- Port Cfg Ack

## 10.6.9 Counters and Timers for USB 3.0

**Timer:** A timer counts the time from a starting event to a final event. For example, if you enter **10**, the Analyzer counts 10 nanoseconds or milliseconds after the starting event before it performs whatever action you assign. Timers cannot be applied to events with Filter Actions. The maximum timer value is 65,535.

**Counter:** A counter tells the Analyzer to search for *x* instances of the selected event. For example, if you enter **10**, the Analyzer counts 10 instances of the selected event before it performs whatever action you assign. Counters cannot be applied to events with Filter Actions. The maximum counter value is 65,535.

Triggers can be set on multiple instances of an event. For example, you can set a trigger to occur following five instances of any DLP. To configure the Analyzer to look for multiple events, you enable Counters. Counters tell the Analyzer how many occurrences of an event for which it should wait before triggering. For example, use a counter to Trigger following the 16th occurrence of an error or DLLP message.

**Events and Actions**

Within events, counters determine how many times the event must occur before the associated actions are triggered. Event counters typically have two properties:

- **Count Randomly**: Can be set to “Yes” or “No” (default value is “No”). If set to “Yes”, the event repeats a random number of times (between 1 and the value set in the property Max Random Count, which replaces the property Counter Value when “Yes” is selected), before the action is triggered.
- **Counter Value**: Number of repeats required when Count Randomly is set to “No”. The default value is 1.

Within actions, counters determine how many times the system calls the action before it acts. Action counters typically have two properties:

- **Random**: Can be set to “Yes” or “No” (default value is “No”). If set to “Yes”, the action triggers a number of occurrences before the action takes place. That number ranges randomly between 1 and the value set in the property At least every Nth occurrence, which replaces the property Every Nth occurrence when “Yes” is selected.
- **Every Nth occurrence**: Number of times the system calls the action before it acts.

Note that there is some overlap in the way these counters can be used. For example, in the simple case of a single event leading to a single action, it makes no difference whether you specify the event to require five repeats before triggering the action, or the action to require five occurrences before it acts.

However, in the case of combined events and/or actions, the separate counters provide flexibility in designing test cases. For example, consider the case where Event_1 OR Event_2 leads to Action. If Event_1 has a counter of 5, then the Action triggers either when Event_1 has repeated five times or when Event_2 happens the first time, whichever occurs first.

But if the event counters are set to 1 and the Action counter is set to 5, then the Action happens after five occurrences of EITHER Event_1 or Event_2.

**Number of Analyzer Counters and Timers**

The Analyzer includes one event counter and one time counter (timer). If you try to assign more, you get a warning.

### Packets

You must assign a packet, event, or logical expression to a counter and/or timer.

### Using a Counter

To use a counter:

**Step 1** Click an event to display an arrow.

**Step 2** Click a counter. This causes the counter to attach itself to the bottom of the event. An arrow automatically connects the counter to the Trigger button.

**Note:** For Timers, do **NOT** use a timer as the first event in a sequence, since this first “event” will be the start of recording, and this is not a precise or predictable point in time from which to start timing. Use timers only AFTER the first event.

### Setting a Counter

To set a counter:

**Step 1** Open the Recording Rules page, select an event, and drag it to the Global State or Sequence cell.

**Step 2** Counts can only be set on a per channel basis, so press the Up or Down channel buttons to select the channel on which the count is performed.

**Step 3** Right-click the selected event and select **Add Counter** from the menu to open the Properties dialog.

**Step 4** In the text box to the right of the label Count, enter a value. Make sure the checkbox to the left of the word **Count** is checked.

**Step 5** Click the **X** in the top right corner of the dialog box to close the dialog. A counter button should appear just below your selected event.

### Changing a Counter Value

To change the counter value:

**Step 1** Click the small blue dot in the upper-left corner of the counter button to display a menu.

**Step 2** Select **Change Counter Value**.

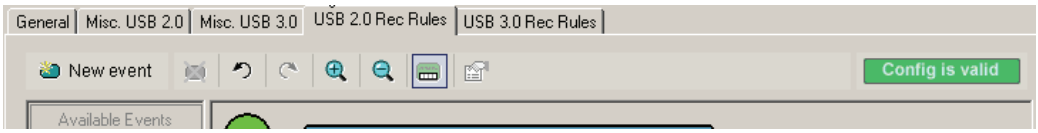
**Step 3** Enter a new value in the pop-up dialog box. The new value appears in the counter button.

### 10.6.10 Configuration Validity

The USB Protocol Suite Software monitors the current trigger and filter configuration to ascertain whether or not it is valid. The configuration may not be valid because of any of the following reasons:

- More resources are configured than exist in the hardware.
- Conflicts occur between shared hardware resources.
- Configurations may be incomplete, such as choosing an event like “SCSI Command” but not selecting a specific command.

If **Config** is not valid (red), you must fix the problem, so that the green **Config is Valid** shows in the status area. If this is not done, the configuration will not be applied to the current Recording Rules, and the trigger or filter will not function.




## 10.7 Saving Recording Options

To complete your Recording Options settings, use the features at the bottom of the **Recording Options** screen. These features remain the same no matter which of the three Recording Options screens you are working in.

- Click **Save** to save the currently specified Recording Options for use in future recording sessions. Any file name can be specified, though use of the **.rec** is recommended; if no extension is specified, **.rec** is added by default.
- Click **Load** to load a previously saved ***.rec** file, thus restoring a previous set of Recording Options.
- The **Save as Default** function is equivalent to the **Save** function, specifying the file name **default.rec.** Whenever you start up the Analyzer, it automatically loads the **default.rec** file if one exists.
- Click **OK** to apply any changes and close this dialog box.
- Click **Cancel** to cancel any immediate changes you have made and exit the Recording Options menu.

# 10.8 Recording Bus Data

To start recording USB traffic once the appropriate Recording Options have been set perform the following steps. Note: If you have inserted any event triggers, be sure to select *Event Trigger* under the General tab in the Recording Options dialog box.

**Step 1** Select **Start** under **Record** on the Menu Bar

OR

Click

on the Tool Bar.

Your recording session can continue until it has finished naturally,

or you may need to stop manually by clicking on the Tool Bar, depending on how you set the Recording Options.

To manually stop recording:

**Step 1** Select **Stop** under **Record** on the Menu Bar

OR

Click on the Tool Bar.

Click again during the uploading to upload only a portion of the recorded memory.

**Note:** The manual Stop Recording feature is primarily of use when recording low-speed traffic, which can take a long time to fill the recording buffer.

When the recording session is finished, the bus traffic is saved to the hard drive as a file named **data.usb** or whatever name you assign as the default filename.

To save a current recording for future reference:

**Step 1** Select **Save As** under **File** on the Menu Bar.

OR

Click on the Tool Bar.

You see the standard **Save As** screen.

**Step 2** Give the recording a unique name and save it to the appropriate directory.

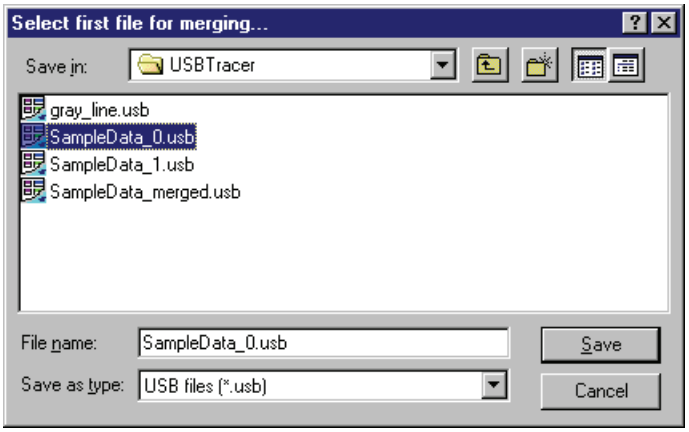
# 10.9 Merging Trace Files

It is possible to merge a Classic-Speed trace file with a Hi-Speed trace file using the Merge Trace File command under the File menu. This option only works with files that were created simultaneously through a single recording session. If the files were recorded during separate recording sessions, the system generates an error message and prevents the merge from completing.

**Note:** The system can merging High Speed and Classic Speeds traffic into a single merged file if the **Auto-Merge 2 Channel Trace Files** option is checked in the Recording Options dialog box.

To merge two trace files:

**Step 1** Select **File > Merge Trace Files** to display a dialog box asking for the first source file.



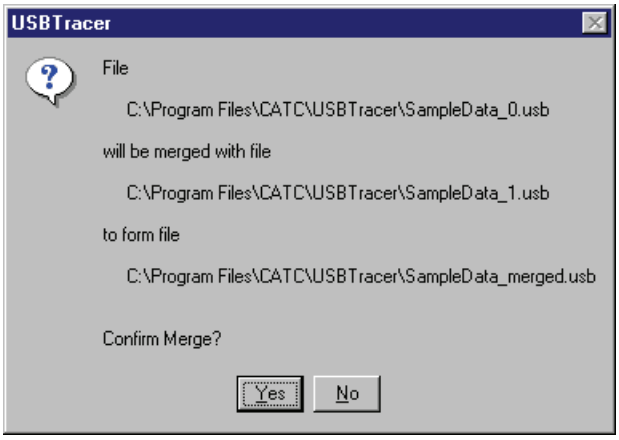

**Note:** The **Merge Trace Files** command can be run with or without a trace file open on the screen. The merge process ignores the open file.

**Step 2** Select the first trace file to be merged, then click **Save**.

**Note:** It does not matter which of the two trace files is first selected so long as both were recorded in the same session.

**Step 3** Select the second trace file to be merged, then click **Save**.

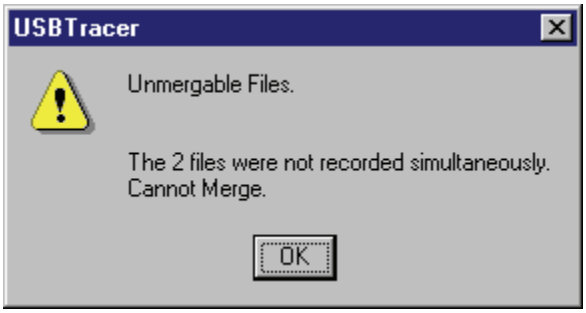
Confirm your choices.




**Step 4** Click **Yes**.

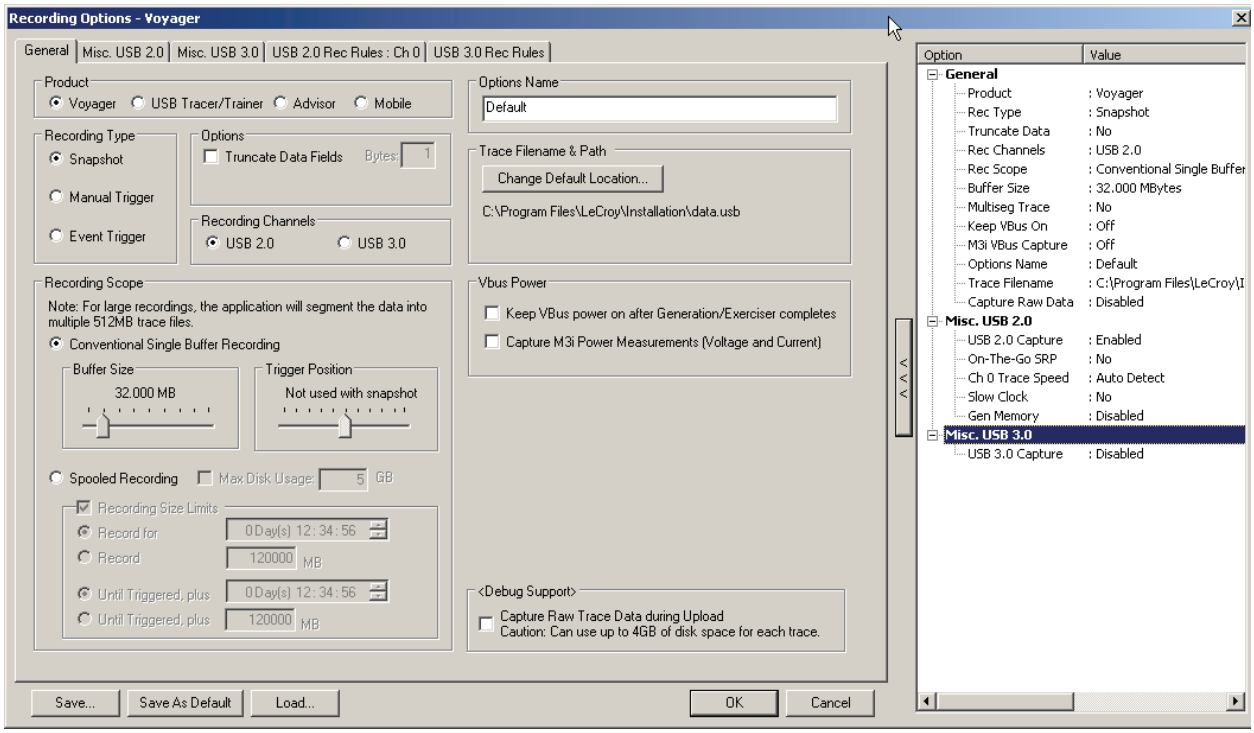
The two files are merged into the new file **data_merged.usb**.

**Note:** If you attempt to merge two files that were recorded in separate recording sessions, the following error message appears:



# 10.10 Recording Option Summary Tab

Click the vertical triple greater-than symbols on the right to display the Recording Options Summary tab:




The Summary tab provides an easy-to-read summary of the currently selected options.

# Chapter 11: Traffic Generation (2.0)

USB 2.0 Traffic Generation allows you to generate USB 2.0 traffic and test designs under realistic conditions. Traffic Generation can also transmit known bad packets, providing an opportunity for engineers to observe how a device handles specific adverse conditions.

**Note:** For traffic generation for USB 3.0, see “Traffic Generation (3.0 Exerciser)” on page 307.

## 11.1 Connecting to the Exerciser/Generator

The following sections illustrate how to connect to the USB*Tracer*™/*Trainer* or to the Voyager.

For USB 2, you need to plug into the Exerciser ports and loop through the Analyzer ports.

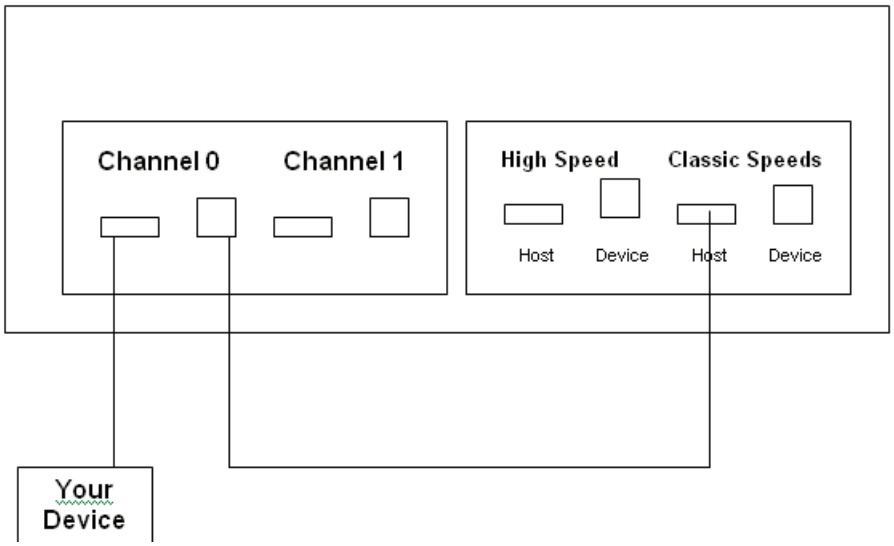
### 11.1.1 Connecting to USBTracer/Trainer

The connections differ for Host Emulation and Device Emulation.

Full Speed and Low Speed connections are the same. Hi Speed connections differ from Full Speed/Low Speed connections.

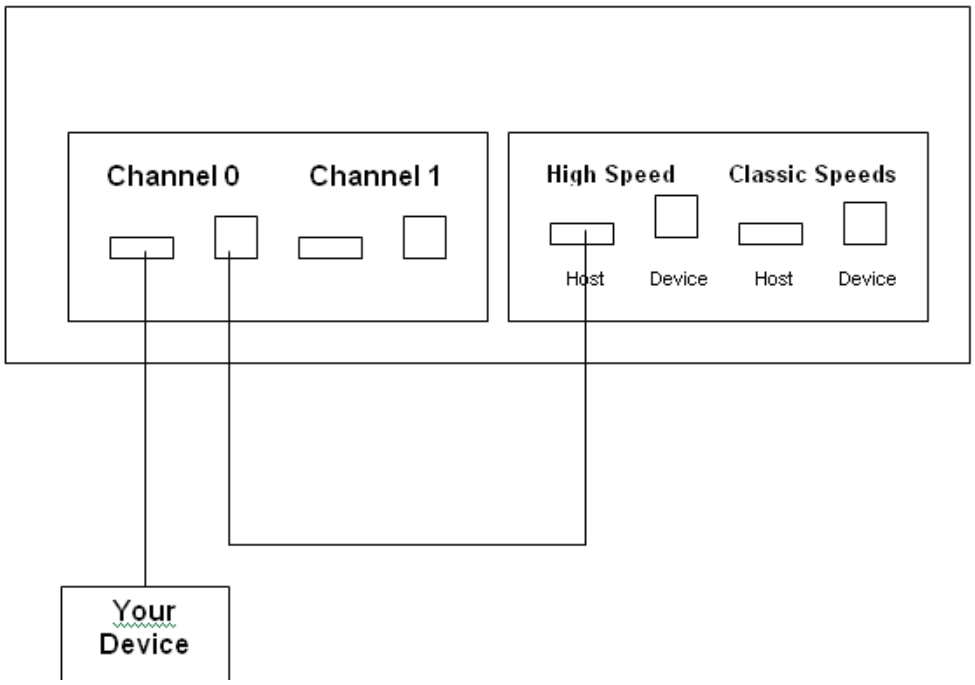
#### 11.1.1.1 Full/Low Speed Host Emulation

For Host Emulation Full Speed or Low Speed, connect to the USB*Tracer/Trainer* according to the following diagram.



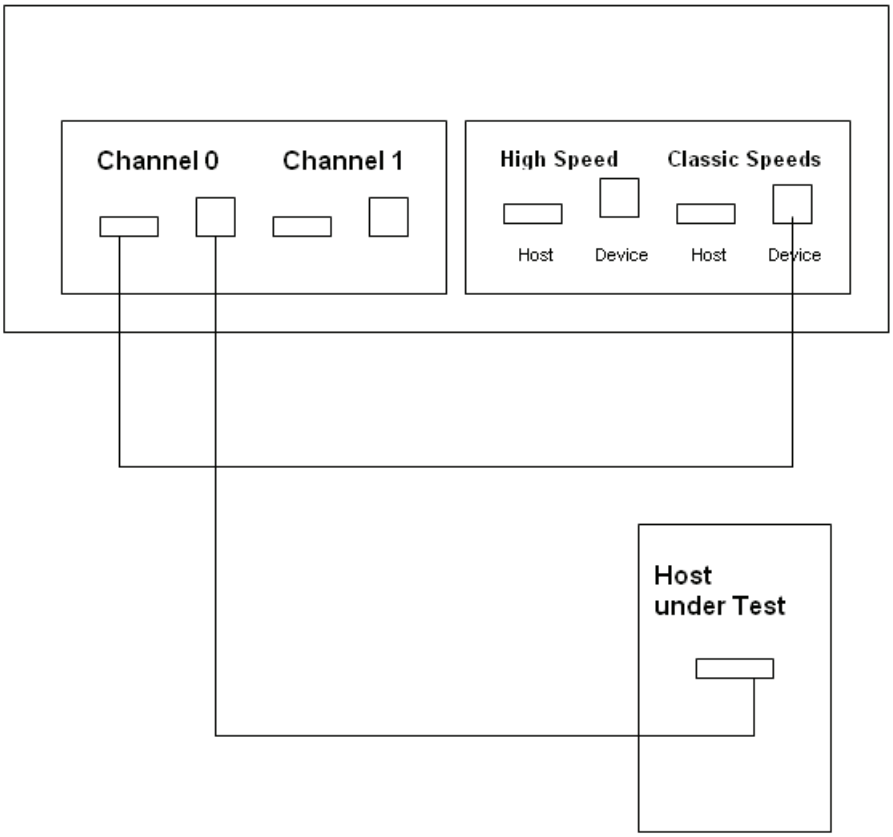
#### 11.1.1.2 Hi Speed Host Emulation

For Host Emulation Hi Speed, connect to the USB*Tracer/Trainer* according to the following diagram.



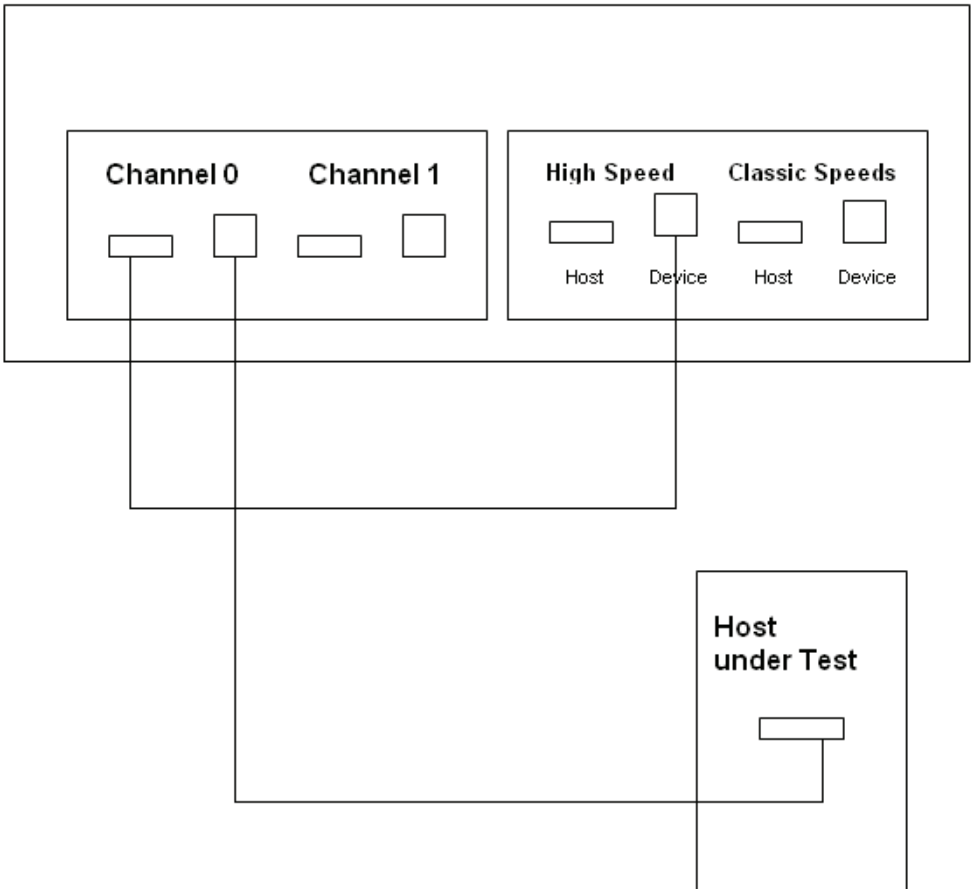
#### 11.1.1.3 Full/Low Speed Device Emulation

For Device Emulation Full Speed or Low Speed, connect to the USB*Tracer/Trainer* according to the following diagram.



#### 11.1.1.4 Hi Speed Device Emulation

For Device Emulation Hi Speed, connect to the USB*Tracer/Trainer* according to the following diagram.



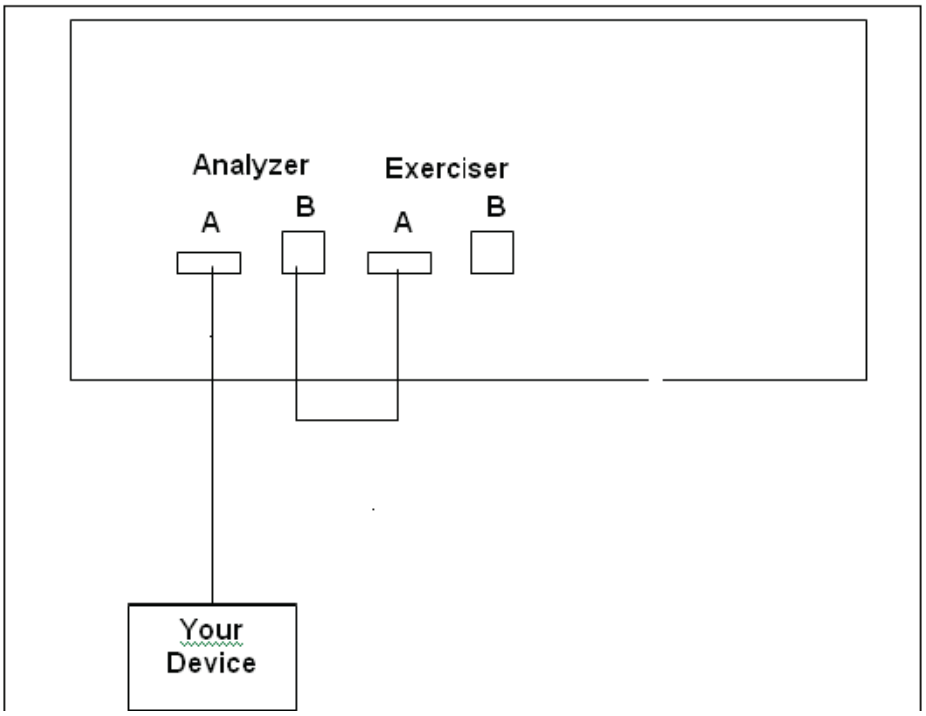
## 11.1.2 Connecting to Voyager

The connections differ for Host Emulation and Device Emulation.

Full Speed, Low Speed, and Hi Speed connections are the same.

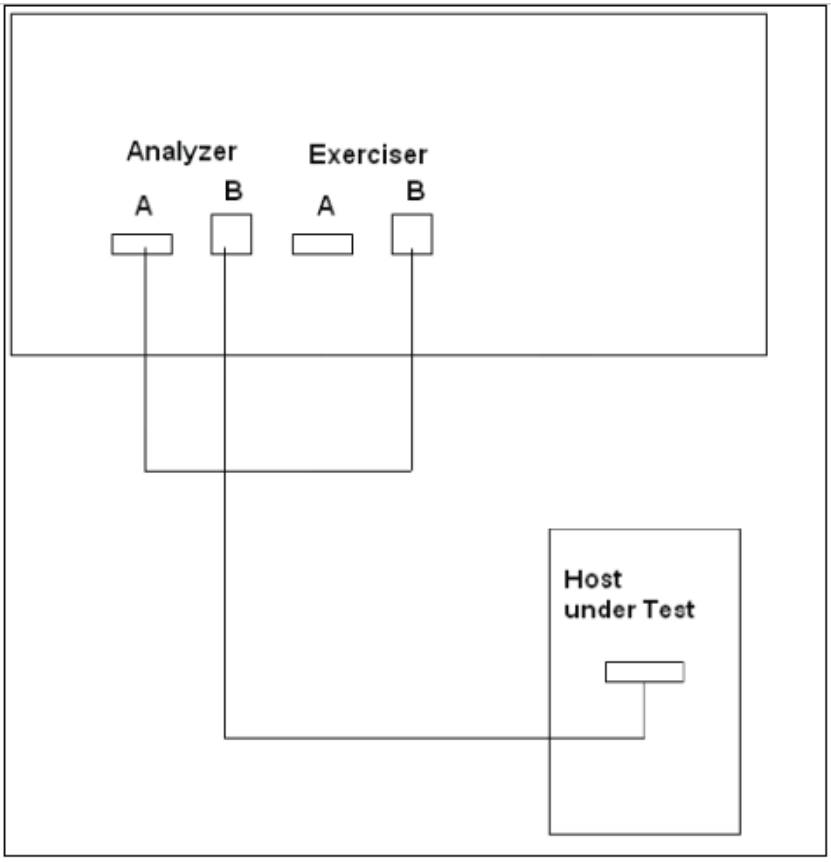
### 11.1.2.1 Hi/Full/Low Speed Host Emulation

For Host Emulation Hi, Full, or Low Speed, connect to the Voyager according to the following diagram.



### 11.1.2.2 Hi/Full/Low Speed Device Emulation

For Device Emulation Hi, Full, or Low Speed, connect to the Voyager according to the following diagram.



# 11.2 Traffic Generation Files

The system generates USB 2.0 traffic from traffic generation files (***.utg**) which are text-based script files that instruct the Generator how to generate USB 2.0 traffic. These script files can be edited with either a simple text editor such as Notepad or with the Script Editor utility provided by the application. The Script Editor utility has several aids to simplify the process of writing and editing scripts: tool-tips, drop-down menus, and colored fields.

The script example below shows the beginning of a traffic generation file created through the **Export** command. This command provides an easy way to create a generation file - you open a trace file, then run the **Export** command. The trace serves as a blueprint for the traffic generation file. The example below shows several commented lines followed by some instructions.

```
;  File C:\Documents and Settings\Administrator\Desktop\enummeration\High_Hub_Sample.usb.
;  Packets 0 to 24328.

;  Device Side Packets were filter out during Export
;  NAK'ed transactions were filtered out during Export
;  Saved from Channel  0.

file_type=UPAS
file_version=2
file_speed=HIGH

chirp=here  ; This needs to be added by hand, since the Export function does not export it.

frame=auto idle=TO_EOF
frame=auto idle=TO_EOF
frame=auto idle=TO_EOF
frame=auto idle=TO_EOF
frame=auto idle=TO_EOF
frame=auto idle=TO_EOF
frame=auto idle=TO_EOF
frame=auto idle=TO_EOF
```

This generation file causes the system to simulate a hub and to generate 24,320 packets. See Section 11.9, “Device Emulation” on page 292 for details about the format of traffic generation files.

# 11.3 Creating Traffic Generation Files

If you choose to write a script with a text editor, a good way to start is to edit an example generation file, such as **FS_Enum_Break_Wrap_Sample.utg, HS_Hub_Sample.utg**, or **SampleDeviceEmulationThumbDriveFS.utg**, in the directory **C:\Program Files\LeCroy\USB Protocol Suite\SampleFiles\2.0\Trainer**. You can open a generation file with Notepad or other editor and then add or remove text as needed.

## 11.3.1 Creating a Traffic Generation File with the Export Command

The Export command offers an easy alternative method of creating a generator file. This command converts the trace to a ***.utg** file, removes all device traffic, and leaves only the traffic from the host device. You can then use this file to emulate the host and determine whether the device under test is generating the correct traffic.

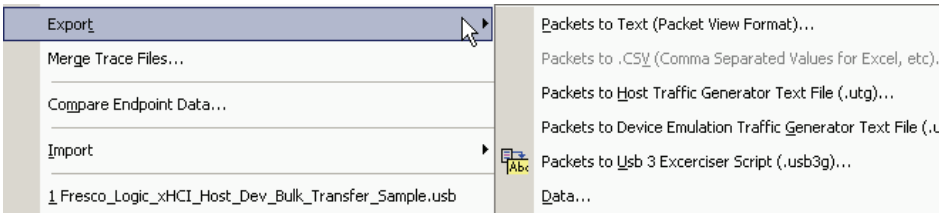
When creating a **.utg** file through the Export Packets to Text (Generator Text File Format) menu selection, it is suggested that you use the default values presented. Adding NAK transactions clutters the **.utg** file, and including the device side packets creates a .**utg** file which does not work with a real device attached.

To use the Export command:

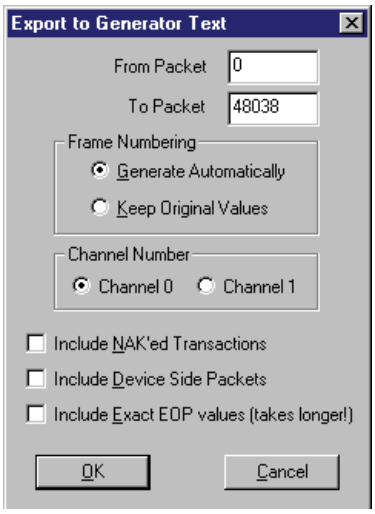
**Step 1** Start the application.

**Step 2** Open a trace that has the pattern of traffic that you would like to generate.

**Step 3** Select **File > Export** from the menu bar to display the File Export menu:


Export
Merge Trace Files...
Compare Endpoint Data...
Import
1 Fresco_Logic_xHCI_Host_Dev_Bulk_Transfer_Sample.usb
Packets to Text (Packet View Format)...
Packets to .CSV (Comma Separated Values for Excel, etc).
Packets to Host Traffic Generator Text File (.utg)...
Packets to Device Emulation Traffic Generator Text File (.
Packets to Usb 3 Excerciser Script (.usb3g)...
Data...

**Step 4** Select **Packets to Host Traffic Generator Text File** from the **Export** drop-down menu. You see the **Export to Generator Text** window:




**Step 5** Enter the numbers of the first and last packets in the series.

**Note:** The device packets are removed from the exported generator text. This is essential in creating a generator text file that can be used to handshake with your device.

**Step 6** You can opt to regenerate the frame numbers and remove the NAKed transactions.

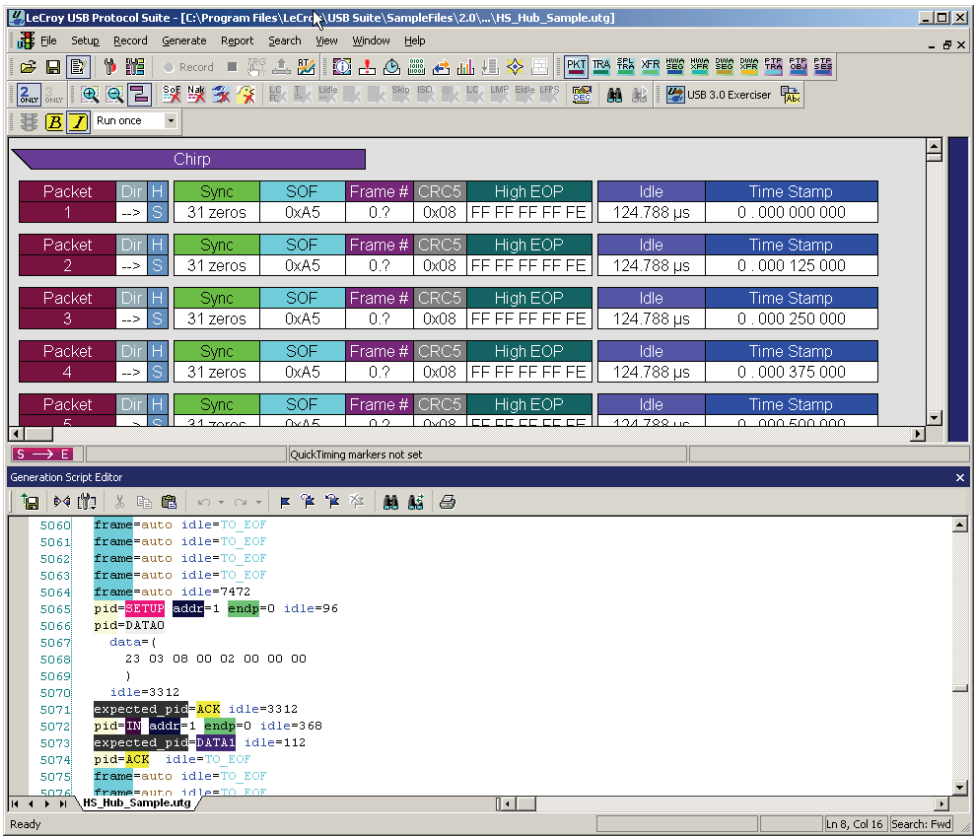
Once the generator text file is exported, you may need to edit the file and adjust idle time to properly anticipate the responses from your device.

# 11.4 Editing a Generation File

A **.utg** file is a text file that can be edited with any text editor such as Notepad. A better editing option, however, is Script Editor of the application. Script Editor provides the usual editing functions such as select, cut, copy, and paste but also adds tool-tips, colored keywords, drop-down parameter values, and expandable/collapsible packet data fields.

To launch the Script Editor, click the **Script Editor** button on the toolbar or right-click the trace window and choose **Edit as Text**.

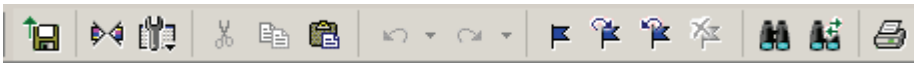
The Script Editor window opens in the lower portion of the trace window.


LeCroy USB Protocol Suite - [C:\Program Files\LeCroy\USB Suite\SampleFiles\2.0\...\HS_Hub_Sample.utg]
File Setup Record Generate Report Search View Window Help
USB 3.0 Exerciser
Run once
Chirp
Packet Dir H Sync SOF Frame # CRC5 High EOP Idle Time Stamp
1 --> S 31 zeros 0xA5 0.? 0x08 FF FF FF FF FE 124.788 µs 0 . 000 000 000
2 --> S 31 zeros 0xA5 0.? 0x08 FF FF FF FF FE 124.788 µs 0 . 000 125 000
3 --> S 31 zeros 0xA5 0.? 0x08 FF FF FF FF FE 124.788 µs 0 . 000 250 000
4 --> S 31 zeros 0xA5 0.? 0x08 FF FF FF FF FE 124.788 µs 0 . 000 375 000
S → E
QuickTiming markers not set
Generation Script Editor
frame=auto idle=TO_EOF
frame=auto idle=TO_EOF
frame=auto idle=TO_EOF
frame=auto idle=TO_EOF
frame=auto idle=7472
pid=SETUP addr=1 endp=0 idle=96
pid=DATA0
data=(
23 03 08 00 02 00 00 00
)
idle=3312
expected_pid=ACK idle=3312
pid=IN addr=1 endp=0 idle=368
expected_pid=DATA1 idle=112
pid=ACK idle=TO_EOF
frame=auto idle=TO_EOF
HS_Hub_Sample.utg
Ready
Ln 8, Col 16
Search: Fwd

The Script Editor divides into three areas: the toolbar, the script window, and the file tabs at the bottom of the window. If errors occur, a log opens at the bottom of the window.

## 11.4.1 Toolbar

The Script Editor toolbar contains buttons for saving your edits, navigating, searching and other functions.

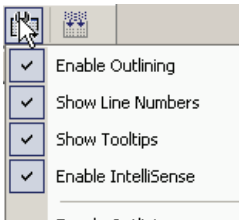


The buttons have the following functions:

| | |
|---|---|
| Save. Saves your edits and immediately updates the setting bars and Frames shown in the trace window. | Add/Remove bookmark. Allows markers to be set or removed to aid in navigation. |
| View Options. Opens a menu with three options: Enable Outlining, Toggle Outlining, and Line Numbers. See **View Options Menu** below. | Go to next bookmark. |
| Go to Trace View. | Go to previous bookmark. |
| Cut. | Clear all bookmarks. |
| Copy. | Find. |
| Paste. | Find and Replace. |
| Undo. | |
| Redo. | Print |

### View Options Menu

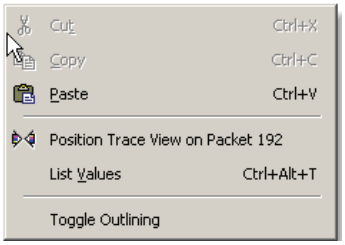
The View Options button has a menu with three options:




- **Enable Outlining**: Adds an expandable/collapsible tree structure to the left side of the Script Editor showing the hierarchical relationships of the script lines.
- **Show Line Numbers**: Adds line numbers to the left side of the Script Editor window.
- **Show Tooltips**: Enables tooltips to appear when the mouse pointer is suspended over a script item.
- **Enable Intellisense**

## 11.4.2 Pop-up Menu

Right-click anywhere in the script window to open a pop-up menu with the following options:




- Cut
- Copy
- Paste
- Position Trace View on Packet *xxx*
- List Values
- Toggle Outlining

The List Values option displays the types of values that can be entered for a parameter in a line. To see the types of values, select the current parameter, then choose **Show Values** from the pop-up menu.

## 11.4.3 File Tabs

At the bottom of the window is a tab that shows the name of the **.utg** file. If your **.utg** file has an Include statement in it, the supporting Include files automatically open when the **.utg** file is first opened. Tabs for the opened Include files appear at the bottom of this window.

## 11.4.4 Error Log

Whenever you create a scripting error, a log opens at the bottom of the application window. When the error is corrected, the window automatically closes.

## 11.4.5 Tooltips

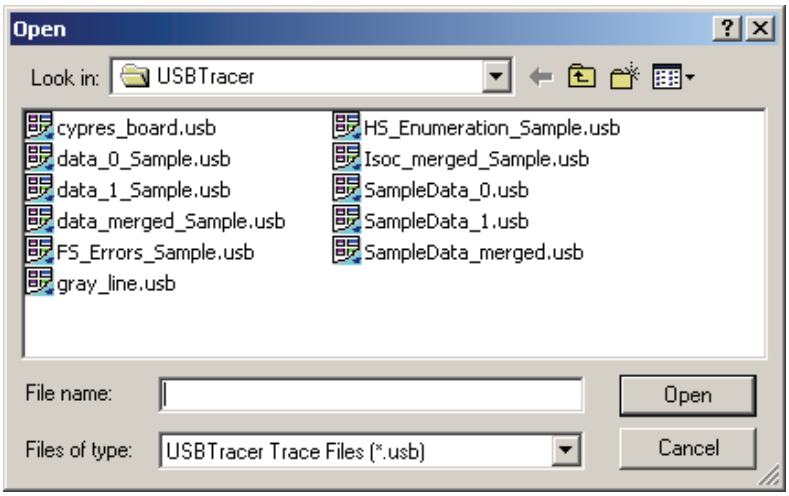
The Script Editor window includes extensive tooltips for each keyword. To see a tooltip, hold the mouse pointer over a keyword.

# 11.5 Loading the Generation File

The USB Traffic Generation files are scripts that instruct the Analyzer how to generate USB traffic. A traffic generation file contains text in special format and is named with a ***.utg** extension. These files can be created by any text editor, or using the **File > Export > Packets to Text (Generator File Format)** menu selection when viewing a Trace File. There are several examples of Traffic Generation files included with the installation of the software.

To load a generation file:

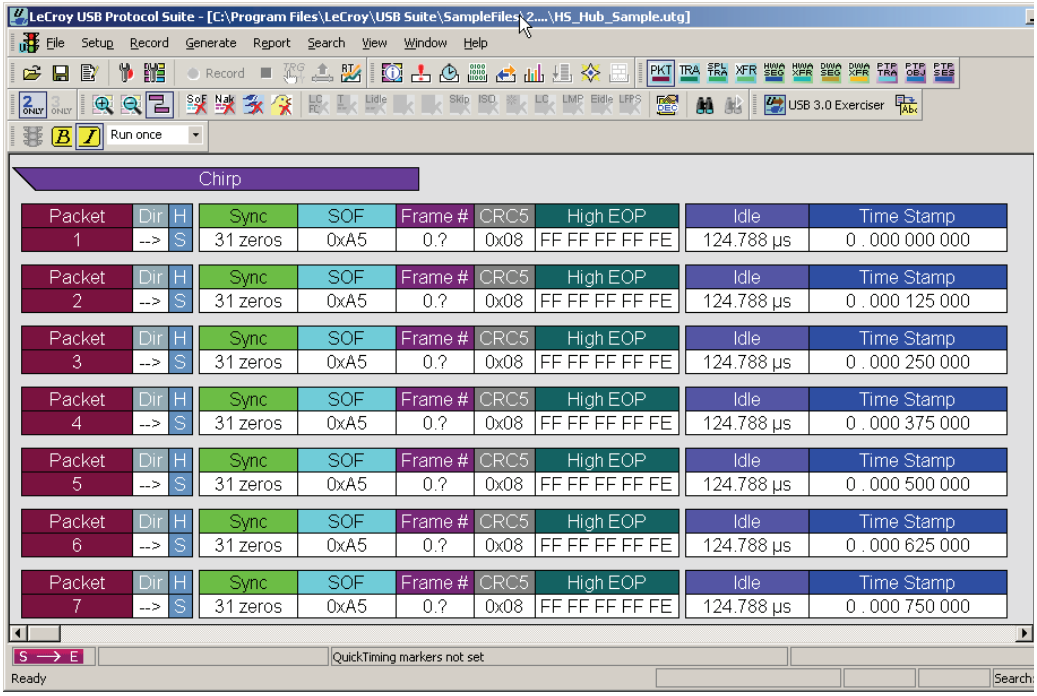
**Step 1** Select **File > Open ...** from the menu to display the Open dialog box:




**Step 2** Select **Generation Files (*.utg)** from the drop-down menu marked **Files of Type** to display a list of Traffic Generation files.

**Step 3** Select a Traffic Generation file (*.utg).

**Step 4** Click **Open**. The file opens.


LeCroy USB Protocol Suite - [C:\Program Files\LeCroy\USB Suite\SampleFiles\2....\HS_Hub_Sample.utg]
File Setup Record Generate Report Search View Window Help
Record
USB 3.0 Exerciser
Run once
Chirp
Packet Dir H Sync SOF Frame # CRC5 High EOP Idle Time Stamp
1 --> S 31 zeros 0xA5 0.? 0x08 FF FF FF FF FE 124.788 µs 0 . 000 000 000
2 --> S 31 zeros 0xA5 0.? 0x08 FF FF FF FF FE 124.788 µs 0 . 000 125 000
3 --> S 31 zeros 0xA5 0.? 0x08 FF FF FF FF FE 124.788 µs 0 . 000 250 000
4 --> S 31 zeros 0xA5 0.? 0x08 FF FF FF FF FE 124.788 µs 0 . 000 375 000
5 --> S 31 zeros 0xA5 0.? 0x08 FF FF FF FF FE 124.788 µs 0 . 000 500 000
6 --> S 31 zeros 0xA5 0.? 0x08 FF FF FF FF FE 124.788 µs 0 . 000 625 000
7 --> S 31 zeros 0xA5 0.? 0x08 FF FF FF FF FE 124.788 µs 0 . 000 750 000
S → E
QuickTiming markers not set
Ready
Search

**Step 5** Decide how many times you want the traffic pattern to be generated, then select a value from the **Repeat** drop-down menu.

The **Repeat mode** allows for a single pass through the generation file, looping forever, or looping 1 to 65,534 times, as desired by the user. If a **wrap=HERE** location is found in the **.utg** file, that location is where the looping portion begins. The loop end is at the end of the **.utg file** or up to the **stop=HERE** statement in the file.

**Step 6** Select the ***Generation mode*** in which to generate traffic (see below for an explanation) by depressing or undepressing the

IntelliFrame button on the toolbar:

- Depressed = IntelliFrame
- Undepressed = Bitstream

### 11.5.1 Traffic Generation Modes: Bitstream vs. Intelliframe

**IntelliFrame** and **Bitstream** are modes that control how the generator interacts with other devices when it is generating traffic.

- **Bitstream Mode** - In Bitstream Mode, the generator constructs a bitstream of traffic based on the UTG file and assumes that packets start at pre-calculated times. For example, after an IN packet, the generator waits a calculated fixed time before presenting an ACK. The time between them is determined by the **idle=** time statement in between the IN and ACK packets in the **.utg** file. In this mode, every bit time of a generation stream (including idles and SE0's) is represented by 4 bits of data, so the file to be downloaded to the Generator can be very large.
- **IntelliFrame Mode** - In IntelliFrame mode, the generator can wait for Device responses to complete before it continues generating more host packets. For example, after issuing an IN, the generator looks for the DATAx packet issued by the device to finish, and then issues an ACK. This way, the data length can vary and does not need to be pre-calculated. Also, using the **idle=TO_EOF** statement allows the generator to calculate where the end of the frame occurs, so that a subsequent **frame=AUTO** statement creates a Start of Frame at the correct time. Moreover, the Generator can be made to retry transactions that are NAKed automatically, and to use the PING protocol where appropriate. Retries can be made to occur within the same frame or in the next frame. For further information on the flexible behavior that can be instituted during the generation, see the syntax descriptions for the generation files here. An additional advantage of the IntelliFrame mode is that it creates an image in the Generator's memory that is MUCH smaller than that of the Bitstream mode, so it downloads much faster.

**Note:** Device emulation only works in Intelliframe mode.

**Note:** In IntelliFrame mode, the hardware generates SOFs and Pings, so these cannot be altered (force CRC value, explicit frame number, and so on). If you want to explicitly corrupt or manage these PID types, you must use Bitstream mode.

## 11.6 Starting Traffic Generation

To start traffic generation, click on the Tool Bar.

## 11.7 Repeating a Generation Session

If you wish to repeat a generation session, press the Traffic Generation Start/Stop button again. There is no need to reload the **.utg** file.

You can make an additional entry in a Generator Text File that allows you to specify a portion of the file for repetition:

- Enter **wrap=here** in the Generator Text File.

The traffic above the entry is run only once. The traffic below the entry is repeated continuously.

**Note:** For a usage example, see the sample file **FS_Enum_Break_Wrap_Sample.utg**.

## 11.8 Stop Traffic Generation

To instruct the Analyzer to halt traffic generation:

- Click on the Tool Bar.

# 11.9 Device Emulation

Device Emulation is a licensed option that allows the system to generate device-side traffic. Like host traffic generation, device emulation uses text-based generation files (**.utg**) to generate traffic.

Device emulation has three steps: create a generation file, configure generation settings, and then generate traffic.

## 11.9.1 Creating a Generation File

Generation files can be created one of two ways:

- Write a generation script file using either LeCroy's context-sensitive script editor or any text editor that you choose.

  OR

- Use a pre-recorded trace file that has the type of traffic that you want to generate. This file is a blueprint for the traffic generation script file.

If you decide to use a pre-recorded trace file as a generation blueprint, then verify that the trace file contains traffic for only one device. If it does not, hide all the other devices (**Setup > Level Hiding**) and save the file as a new file without the hidden traffic (**File > Save As** and check the option **Do not save hidden packets/transactions/transfers**).

## 11.9.2 Setting Generation Options

**Step 1** Set the Traffic Generation options by configuring the **Misc** page in the Recording Options dialog box:

**Setup** > **Recording Options** > **Misc**

**Step 2** In the Misc page, select **Device Emulation Mode**.

**Step 3** Configure Resume settings.

- If you want the simulated device to issue Resumes, then select **Device Resumes** and enter a delay time (in milliseconds). If you do not select Device Resumes, then the emulated device waits for a Host to issue a Resume.
- If you want the simulated device to take its address from the Traffic Generation (.utg) script file, then select **Use Address in .utg file.** This option causes the system to read the **.utg** file and assign a Device Address based on the device traffic that it sees in the file.

**Note:** In this release, the Device Emulator does not look at the Set Address in the script, so if your host controller is running more than one device, it may enumerate your device emulator incorrectly when you begin to generate traffic. The solution is to manually assign a device address. To manually configure the Device Address, select Emulated Device's Hex Address and enter an address or mask (Note: A mask allows the system to respond to multiple device addresses.)

**Step 4** Click **OK** to close the Recording Options dialog and apply the changes. The generation settings take effect as soon as you execute a script.

## 11.9.3 Run the Traffic Generation Script File

**Step 1** Connect the system's port B (either Hi Speed or Classic Speed) to the Host.

**Step 2** Open the Traffic Generation **.utg** file.

**Step 3** Begin traffic generation by clicking .

When execution begins, the system reads the entire generation file and then parses the generation commands into groups according to their endpoints. Each of the parsed groups of commands are then written into dedicated memory segments in the generator. Up to eight memory segments can be created for the various endpoints. In the case of Endpoint 0 or any Control endpoints, a single memory segment is created.

Each memory segment can be thought of as a queue of the commands and responses for a particular endpoint that occur in the generation file.

Commands are stored sequentially within each memory segment as they occur in the generation file. For example, if a generation file has a sequence of command X and Y for the Endpoint 1, the commands are extracted in this order and placed in the Endpoint 1 memory segment.

When the host calls for a particular device endpoint response, the first command listed in that endpoint memory segment is then executed. With each subsequent call to the same endpoint, commands are executed sequentially down the list as they occur in the memory segments. For example, if three calls were made to Endpoint 0 IN, then the first three commands in that endpoint's memory segment would then execute.

**Note:** Each of the endpoint memory segments execute independently: there are no behavioral interactions between the individual endpoints.

# 11.10 Format of Traffic Generation Files

Whether you create a traffic generation from scratch or use the **Export** command, there are a few rules about the format of the generation file that you should review. These are presented in this section.

Traffic is generated from a text file named ***.utg**. Within the text file:

- The data format for data fields such as Pids and Raw bits is hex.
- Each packet definition consists of this set of assignments: **key=value**.
- White space is permitted around the equal sign.
- There are no restrictions on dividing packet definition to lines nor is it necessary to define each packet in a separate line, although it is recommended.
- The maximum number of characters in a line is 250.
- The characters **#** and**;** indicate end-of-line comments (i.e. the rest of the line is ignored)
- Comments are not allowed within brackets ( ).
- No keys or values are case-sensitive.

Each packet definition starts with one of these assignments:

- **pid=N** (where N is a string representing a valid packet identifier or an eight bit value)
- OR
- **frame=N** (where N is an eleven bit value of the frame number or the strings **auto** and **keep_alive**).

A bus condition definition starts with one of these assignments:

- **reset=N** (where N is a positive integer or string)
- **suspend=N** (where N is a positive integer)
- **resume=N** (where N is a positive integer)
- chirp=here

Subsequent assignments after a packet's starting assignment define the values of particular fields within the packet. If a field is not defined, it is assumed to be **0**. Values are assumed to be decimal unless they are prefixed with **0x** and then are interpreted as hexadecimal. Values within a data block assignment are always assumed to be hexadecimal and should not be prefixed by **0x**.

## 11.10.1 Script control of Intelliframe vs Bitstream modes

To force the **.utg** file to run in IntelliFrame mode, add the following text string to the **FIRST LINE** of the .**utg** file.

```
;intelliframe=ON
```

To force the **.utg** file to run in Bitstream mode, add the following text string to the **FIRST LINE** of the .**utg** file.

```
;intelliframe=OFF
```

These commands are useful if an automated interface, such as USB Compliance Suite, is running a script.

If you run the script manually, to allow selection of IntelliFrame or Bitstream mode from the toolbar, make sure the **.utg** file has no such Intelliframe command line.

## Table 1: Support Keys for Defining Fields within a Packet

| Key Code | Format | Description |
|---|---|---|
| **File Control Keys** | | |
| file_type | UPAS<br>CHIEF | This must be included at the beginning of the file to determine the speed of packets to be generated.<br>Value must be **file_type=UPAS** to allow for High speed traffic, IntelliFrame operation, **expected_pid** and **device_pid** key support.<br>Full and Low speed traffic, and Bitstream operation are supported on all **file_type=** values.<br>If this statement does not appear in the file, the default is **file_type=CHIEF**, allowing backward compatibility with older USB Chief™ **.usb** files. |
| file_version | integer | This must be included after the **file_type=** key to determine the version of this file. Value is currently 3.<br>Usage: **file_version=3** |
| file_mode | HOST<br>DEVICE | Sets generation mode to host or device.<br>For generation to work, this must match the selection found in the Recording Options > Misc dialog. |
| file_speed | HIGH<br>HI<br>FULL<br>LOW | This must be included after the **file_version=** key to determine the speed of packets to be generated.<br>Values are HIGH, HI, FULL, or LOW.<br>Example: **file_speed=FULL**.<br>Only one **file_speed=** is allowed per .**utg** file, but low speed traffic on a full speed bus can be created by adding the **speed=LOW** key to a low speed packet in a file defined as **file_speed=FULL**. No other mixing of speeds is allowed.<br>HI is the same as HIGH and was added to conform to the USB terms. |
| loop_count<br>wrap_count | 0 through 16382<br>or "infinite" | These two terms are interchangeable.<br>Host Emulation Only.<br>This key defines the loop count for each memory segment.<br>Examples: **loop_count=INFINITE** or **wrap_count=9** |
| wrap<br>loop | HERE | This key marks the **wrap point** in the traffic.<br>When generation is in Repeat mode, all the traffic before the wrap point is going to be sent once. All the traffic after the wrap point is going to be repeated in a loop.<br>The usage of the keyword is **wrap=HERE** or **loop=HERE**.<br>For Device Emulation, the value would be a memory segment number, so that the looping is associated with only that one endpoint, such as **wrap=4**. |

| Key Code | Format | Description |
|---|---|---|
| skip | HERE | Causes a region in the **.utg** file to be ignored, as if commented out.<br>Can be used multiple times in the file.<br>Must be used in conjunction with **skip_end=HERE**. Example:<br>**skip=HERE frame=auto** makes this statement be ignored!<br>**skip_end=HERE** |
| skip_end | HERE | Causes a region in the **.utg** file to be ignored, as if commented out.<br>See above in **skip=HERE**. |
| stop | string | If you want to run only some first portion of the beginning of a **.utg** file, insert this statement where you want generation to halt. This saves having to edit a file into smaller files when testing a portion of traffic.<br>The usage of the keyword is **stop=HERE**. |
| break | HERE | **Host Generation Only.**<br>Enables you to generate up to a point in the .**utg** file, then wait for input before continuing in the file. During the breakpoint time, the traffic signal icon in the toolbar flashes yellow, indicating that a breakpoint was hit.<br>When you click the traffic light icon, generation resumes.<br>If you want to stop rather than continue, select **Stop** from the Generation menu or hit the **Start/Stop** button on the front of the generator module.<br>Start-of-frames are issued automatically during the breakpoint duration. When you resume running, traffic begins after another start-of-frame is issued.<br>The **break=HERE** statement must be inserted between **frame=xxx** statements.<br>Syntax example:<br>**frame=AUTO break=HERE frame=AUTO** |

| Key Code | Format | Description |
|---|---|---|
| **Endpoint Configuration** | | |
| begin_config | HERE | Defines the beginning of the region in the file used to configure the endpoint types.<br>The configuration is necessary to determine the default behavior of the NAK retry mechanism during IntelliFrame operation.<br>Between the **begin_config=HERE** and the **end_config=HERE** statements is a series of **config_endpoint=xxx** statements, which define each endpoint's type and default retry behavior.<br>The config region must precede any actual packet or bus condition statements.<br>For Device Emulation, the config region is mandatory. It provides the mapping of the endpoints into their corresponding segments of Analyzer memory, which contain the traffic for those endpoints.<br>When exporting to a **.utg** file from a trace file, these sections are created automatically.<br>Syntax example: **begin_config=HERE** |
| end_config | HERE | Terminates the region in the file used for configuring the endpoints.<br>See **begin_config**.<br>Syntax example: **end_config=HERE** |
| config_endpoint | CONTROL<br>INTERRUPT<br>ISOCHRONOUS<br>BULK | Begins a statement that defines a particular endpoint's type, default retry behavior (Host Generation only), and memory segment (Device Emulation only).<br>Usage example: **config_endpoint=BULK addr=1 endp=3 direction=OUT retry=TRUE retry_next_frame=FALSE** |
| endp_mem_seg | 1<br>2<br>3<br>4<br>5<br>6<br>7<br>8 | **Device Emulation Only.**<br>Separates each endpoint function into a different queue (also referred to as a Memory Segment) of commands and responses.<br>There are a maximum of eight of these queues, and each has a unique address/direction combination.<br>For control endpoints, one queue is shared by both directions of the endpoint.<br>Traffic on the Default Endpoint (Address 0, Endpoint 0) shares the same queue as the endpoint 0 of the selected device address (the address it gets from the Host through the SetAddress request).<br>These always use **endp_mem_seg=1**.<br>These are all set automatically when exporting a trace file to a Device Emulation **.utg** file. |

| Key Code | Format | Description |
|---|---|---|
| direction | IN<br>OUT | Defines the transfer direction of data for the specified endpoint.<br>For all transfer types but CONTROL, there can be two distinct logical connections using the same address and endpoint. They would differ only in defined direction.<br>Syntax example: **direction=IN** |
| retry | TRUE<br>FALSE | **Host Generation Only.**<br>Defines whether an automatic retry should be performed on packets to/from this endpoint in the case that they are NAKed (or in some cases NYETed), or if a timeout on device response occurs.<br>RETRY only works for the Pids: Setup, In, and Out.<br>If TRUE, the Exerciser automatically retries the specified sequence if a Pid is received on the bus which does not match the **expected_pid**, or if a timeout occurs.<br>The generator re-issues the host packet(s) after waiting either 1/10th of a frame, or until after the next start-of-frame (depending on the value set for **retry_next_frame**).<br>The retries continue until the **expected_pid** is received.<br>When a retry attempt finds its **expected_pid**, the Exerciser automatically generates a new start-of-frame before continuing with the rest of the Gen File. (The start-of-frame is either an SOF packet or a keep-alive signal.)<br>If FALSE, the Exerciser waits for a Pid before proceeding. There is no timeout.<br>If a Pid is received which does not match the **expected_pid**, the Exerciser continues to wait for the correct Pid to appear.<br>If the user stops the generation, a message states that the generator was waiting patiently for the **expected_pid**, and it never showed up. The user must examine the problem by viewing the trace file.<br>This statement can also be used in conjunction with any **pid=xxx** statement in the **.utg** file. This can be done to override the configured or default retry behavior.<br>Syntax example: **retry=TRUE** |

| Key Code | Format | Description |
|---|---|---|
| retry_next_frame | TRUE<br>FALSE | **Host Generation Only.**<br>Determines when a retry will be attempted after a failed match of an **expected_pid**.<br>This statement only applies if a **retry=TRUE** statement also exists.<br>If TRUE, the Exerciser waits until the current frame completes, issues a start of frame, and then retries the transaction.<br>If FALSE, the Exerciser waits 1/10th of a frame before retrying the transaction.<br>Before each retry attempt, the Exerciser checks to see where in the frame interval it is. If it is too close to the EOF, it automatically generates the next start-of-frame before performing the retry. If it is not too close to the EOF, it performs the retry without generating a new frame.<br>This statement can also be used in conjunction with any **pid=xxx** statement in the .**utg** file. This can be done to override the configured or default retry behavior.<br>Syntax example: **retry_next_frame=FALSE** |
| ping_on_retry | TRUE<br>FALSE | **Host Generation Only.**<br>Determines whether an OUT transaction is retried by repeating the OUT-DATAx sequence, or whether a PING sequence should be initiated.<br>If TRUE, the Exerciser automatically generates PINGs (and retries) before going through a Retry Loop. PINGs are repeated until an ACK is received, and then the original OUT-DATAx transaction Sequence is attempted. During the PING retries, the Exerciser automatically generates frames. When the original Retry Sequence receives its **expected_pid**, the Exerciser generates a new frame before continuing with the Gen File.<br>If FALSE, the original transaction is always retried.<br>This statement can also be used in conjunction with any **pid=xxx** statement in the .**utg** file. This can be done to override the configured or default retry behavior.<br>Syntax example: **ping_on_retry=TRUE** |

| Key Code | Format | Description |
|---|---|---|
| ping_after_nyet | | **Host Generation Only.**<br>If TRUE, the Exerciser automatically generates PINGs (and retries) after receiving a NYET instead of the **expected_pid**. This feature is only used if the **expected_pid** is an ACK. PINGs are retried until an ACK is received. When the PING is ACKed, the Exerciser generates a new frame before continuing with the Gen File.<br>If FALSE, the Exerciser continues as if an ACK occurred.<br>This statement can also be used in conjunction with any **pid=xxx** statement in the **.utg** file. This can be done to override the configured or default retry behavior.<br>Syntax example: **ping_after_nyet=TRUE** |

| Key Code | Format | Description |
|---|---|---|
| **Packet Starting Keys** | | |
| pid | 8 bits (0-0xFF)<br>or<br>pid string | **Host Generation Only.**<br>Use this as the first key of most packets sent by the Host (Exception: Use **frame=** for SOF packets).<br>The key should be assigned to a valid packet identifier string per the USB specification: SETUP, IN, OUT, DATA0, DATA1, ACK, PRE, PING, SPLIT, DATA2, MDATA, EXT, or LPM.<br>Optionally, you may assign this key a raw eight bit value to force an error condition.<br>**Warning**: If you specify **PID=0xNN**, you must use **raw_data=( )** to specify the rest of the packet data, because the packet structure is unknown. |
| expected_pid | pid string | **Host Generation Only.**<br>Use this as the PID key for packets which are expected to be sent by the device.<br>In IntelliFrame mode, the generator waits until this PID has completed before sending the next generated packet or bus condition.<br>The key should be assigned to a valid packet identifier string per the USB specification: DATA0, DATA1, ACK, NAK, STALL, NYET, DATA2, MDATA, EXT, or LPM.<br>The generator engine waits forever until this **expected_pid** appears, so the user may have to hand edit the file to achieve the desired results.<br>For example, if a NAK comes where the **expected_pid** was a DATA1, the user should edit the .**utg** file to move the **pid=IN** command to later in the file by inserting some **frame=AUTO idle=TO_EOF** pairs before it. This allows time for the device to be ready for the IN.<br>If **RETRY=TRUE** for this address/endpoint, the NAKs are ignored and the SOF's are generated automatically until the expected PID occurs. |
| device_pid | pid string | Use this as the first key of most packets sent by a device.<br>The key should be assigned to a valid packet identifier string per the USB specification: DATA0, DATA1, ACK, NAK, STALL, NYET, DATA2, MDATA, EXT, or LPM.<br>Normally, the **device_pid=** statement is NOT present in a Host Generation .**utg** file, because the device responses are intended to come from real devices. By default, Host Generation files exported from Trace Files do NOT include **device_pid=** statements.<br>**Warning:** If you specify **PID=0xNN**, you must use **raw_data=( )** to specify the rest of the packet data, because the packet structure is unknown. |

| Key Code | Format | Description |
|---|---|---|
| frame | 11 bits<br>or<br>AUTO<br>KEEP_ALIVE | Creates a start of frame packet and generates a SOF PID as expected.<br>The key should be assigned a value of the frame number, AUTO, or KEEP_ALIVE.<br>**Note**: An explicit frame number is supported only when the generator is in "Bitstream Mode".<br>AUTO instructs the generator to increment the frame number automatically.<br>KEEP_ALIVE instructs the Analyzer to generate a low-speed EOP in place of a SOF packet for traffic on a low-speed branch (**file_speed=LOW**).<br>For Device Emulation, this statement is ignored by the Device Emulator, but serves to organize the **.utg** file in a more readable manner. |
| empty_frame | integer | **Host Generation Only.**<br>This key creates a sequence of start of frame packets with **idle=TO_EOF** values for the idle time. This results in N empty frames, where N is the integer value specified.<br>If the branch speed is LOW, the frames contain only the keep-alive standalone EOP's. This key makes for an easier to manage **.utg** file by eliminating the need for many lines of **frame=AUTO idle=TO_EOF** statements.<br>Usage:<br>**empty_frames=23**; insert 23 empty frames here |
| host_exp_pid | PID | **Device Emulation Only.**<br>Defines the PID that is expected to be received from the Host.<br>The Device Emulator waits until this PID has completed before sending the next generated packet.<br>The key should be assigned to a valid packet identifier string per the USB specification: SETUP, IN, OUT, DATA0, DATA1, ACK, DATA2, or MDATA.<br>PRE and PING are for Hubs only and are not supported.<br>Each memory segment waits forever until it receives the expected PID to its address/endpoint, so the user may have to hand edit the file to achieve the desired results.<br>Each endpoint memory segment acts independently. |

| Key Code | Format | Description |
|---|---|---|
| **Bus Condition Keys** | | |
| reset | positive integer or LS_EOP | **Host Generation Only.**<br>Indicates the number of microseconds that single-ended zeros (SE0) are driven onto the bus.<br>Assign a positive integer to this key.<br>This key can also be assigned the string **LS_EOP** to drive two low-speed bit times of SE0 followed by one bit time of J. |
| se0 | positive integer <2500 | **Host Generation Only.**<br>Same SE0 signal as reset, but the range is in nanoseconds (accuracy: +/- 33 ns). |
| suspend | positive integer | **Host Generation Only.**<br>Indicates the number of microseconds of idle and suspend after the previous packet (for example, for ten milliseconds of suspend, the key should equal 13000).<br>Assign a positive integer to this key.<br>Note that suspend begins after 3 milliseconds of idle. |
| resume | positive integer | **Host Generation Only.**<br>Indicates the number of microseconds of K driven onto the bus.<br>Assign a positive integer to this key.<br>For a proper resume sequence, this should be followed by the condition **reset=LS_EOP speed=LOW**. |
| wait_resume | HERE | **Host Generation Only.**<br>Place this immediately before a **resume=<>** statement to implement a device resume, also known as Remote Wakeup.<br>This causes the host to wait for the device to issue the Resume (K) condition before the Host proceeds with its own Resume signalling.<br>This statement MUST be followed by the **resume=<> statement**. |
| chirp | HERE | Used to create a chirp sequence for a High Speed generation.<br>Usage: **chirp=HERE** |
| wait_vbus | VALID | **Device Emulation Only.**<br>Wait for VBus to go Hi. |
| termination | HERE | **Device Emulation Only.**<br>Set terminations now. |
| wait_termination | HERE | **Host Emulation Only.**<br>**Only for Voyager.**<br>Wait until Device Speed terminations are seen before proceeding. |

| Key Code | Format | Description |
|---|---|---|
| **Keys for Packet Fields** | | |
| speed | LOW | Used to cause a low speed packet on a full speed branch.<br>The only legal value is **speed=LOW**. |
| addr | 7 bits (0-127) | Assign a value for the address field. |
| endp | 4 bits (0-15) | Assign a value for the endpoint number field. |
| hub_addr | 7 bits (0-127) | **Host Generation Only.**<br>Assign a value for the **hub_address** field of a SPLIT packet. |
| port | 7 bits (0-127) | **Host Generation Only.**<br>Assign a value for port field of a SPLIT packet. |
| data | (AB CD) | Assign data bytes for the data field.<br>Use the following syntax:<br>**data=(12 34 56 78 90 AB CD EF DC 13 40 78 11 CA 70 65)**<br>You can wrap bytes of the data field to the next line. The bytes are in the order they come across the bus, and the bits within the bytes are in MSB to LSB order.<br>Maximum number of bytes allowed is 1049. |
| crc | 5 bits (0x0-0x1F)<br>or<br>16 bits (0x0-0xFFFF) | Assign a value for the crc field.<br>The default value is the correct crc calculated for the packet. |
| s | 0 or 1 | **Host Generation Only.**<br>Assign a value for the s (High Speed SPLIT Start/Speed) field. |
| sc | 0 or 1 | **Host Generation Only.**<br>Assign a value for the sc (High Speed SPLIT Start/Complete) field. |
| e | 0 or 1 | **Host Generation Only.**<br>Assign a value for the e (High Speed SPLIT End) field. |
| et | 0 to 3 | **Host Generation Only.**<br>Assign a value for the et (High Speed SPLIT Endpoint Type) field:<br>0 = Control<br>1 = Isoch<br>2 = bulk<br>3 = Interrupt |
| hird | 4 bits (0-15) | **Host Generation Only.**<br>Assign the Host Initiated Resume Duration. Default value is 0. For a description of the values 1 through 15, see the *Link Power Management Specification*. |
| link_state | 4 bits (0-15) | **Host Generation Only.**<br>Assign the link state. Currently, the only legal link_state value is 1, for L1 (Sleep). Default value is 0, so set the link_state value to 1. |

| Key Code | Format | Description |
|---|---|---|
| remote_wake | 0 or 1 | **Host Generation Only.**<br>Disable or enable Remote Wakeup. Default value is 0, which disables Remote Wakeup. To enable Remote Wakeup, set the value to 1. |
| eop | positive integer | Assign a positive integer for the length of the end of packet (EOP).<br>The default value is the correct length (2 bits of SE0, 1 bit of J).<br>The value is reflected by **<val-1>** bits of SE0 plus one bit of J. |
| hi_eop | (AB CD) Hex | Used to generate a high speed EOP pattern.<br>The bytes are in the order they come across the bus, and the bits within the bytes are in LSB to MSB order.<br>Maximum number of bytes allowed is 13. |
| idle | positive integer<br>or<br>TO_EOP | Defines the length of idle after the current packet.<br>Assign a positive integer or string to this key. The positive integer indicates the number of full-speed or low-speed bit times. The default value is around 4 bits for Classic speeds and around 150 bits for High speeds.<br>When this keyword is assigned a string TO_EOF, USB Chief automatically calculates the amount of idle remaining in the frame.<br>When handshaking with a device, you can use this keyword to add idle where you anticipate a packet being returned from the device.<br>The **idle=** key is always associated with the proceeding packet or bus condition, so you should not put file control keys between the packet or bus condition statement and the **idle=** statement. |
| marker | string | Assign a string in quotation marks to be put in the marker for the defined packet. |
| raw_data | (aa bb) | Use to send a non-modulo 8 number of bits in a classic speed **raw_data** packet.<br>It is only valid in conjunction with the **raw_data** statement.<br>Normally, every bit of the array defined in a **raw_data=(xx yy)** type of statement would be sent. However, particularly in the case where **bit_stuff=off**, you need more control over the number of bits to be output on the bus. By adding the statement **raw_data_bits = 11**, only the first 11 bits of the defined bytes are sent.<br>For the following case,<br>**raw_data=(8F F0) raw_data_bits=13**<br>the output bitstream would be:<br>1111 0001 0000 1<br>(Each byte is described in MSB to LSB format, but is output on the wire in LSB to MSB format.) |

| Key Code | Format | Description |
|---|---|---|
| raw_data_bits | integer | Use to send a non-modulo 8 number of bits in a classic speed **raw_data** packet.<br>It is only valid in conjunction with the **raw_data** statement.<br>Normally, every bit of the array defined in a **raw_data=(xx yy)** type of statement would be sent. However, particularly in the case where **bit_stuff=off**, you need more control over the number of bits to be output on the bus. By adding the statement **raw_data_bits = 11**, only the first 11 bits of the defined bytes are sent.<br>For the following case,<br>**raw_data=(8F F0) raw_data_bits=13**<br>the output bitstream would be:<br>1111 0001 0000 1<br>(Each byte is described in MSB to LSB format, but is output on the wire in LSB to MSB format.) |
| bit_stuff | OFF<br>ON | Assign the string **OFF** to disable bit stuffing within the current packet.<br>The default value is **ON**. |
| sync | integer<br>1-40 | Assign an integer from 1 to 40 to represent the sync field. The integer is the number of zeros transmitted before the one.<br>For Low and Full Speed files, the default value is 7 to give a sync of 00000001.<br>For High Speed files, the default value is 31 resulting in a sync of 00000000000000000000000000000001. |
| retry<br>ping_on_retry<br>ping_on_nak<br>retry_next_frame | TRUE<br>FALSE | **Host Generation Only.**<br>These four keys may be applied to individual packets to override the behavior in a given instance.<br>Normally, they are used in the **config_endpoint** statement.<br>See their descriptions in the Endpoint Configuration section earlier. |
| **Keys for Class Decoding** | | |
| These keys are populated into the **.utg**. script file automatically whenever the menu command **File** > **Export to .utg file** is run. These keys do not need to be edited. | | |
| sd_prod | | |
| sd_vend | | |
| sd_bm_req_type | | |
| sd_interface | | |
| sd_host_id | | |
| sd_class_code | | |
| sd_subclass | | |
| sd_protocol | | |
| sd_end_sd | | |

# Chapter 12: Traffic Generation (3.0 Exerciser)

The USB 3.0 Exerciser allows you to generate USB 3.0 traffic and test designs under realistic conditions. Traffic Generation can also transmit known bad packets, providing an opportunity for engineers to observe how a device handles specific adverse conditions.

**Note:** For traffic generation for USB 2.0, see “Traffic Generation (2.0)” on page 277.

## 12.1 Connecting to Voyager

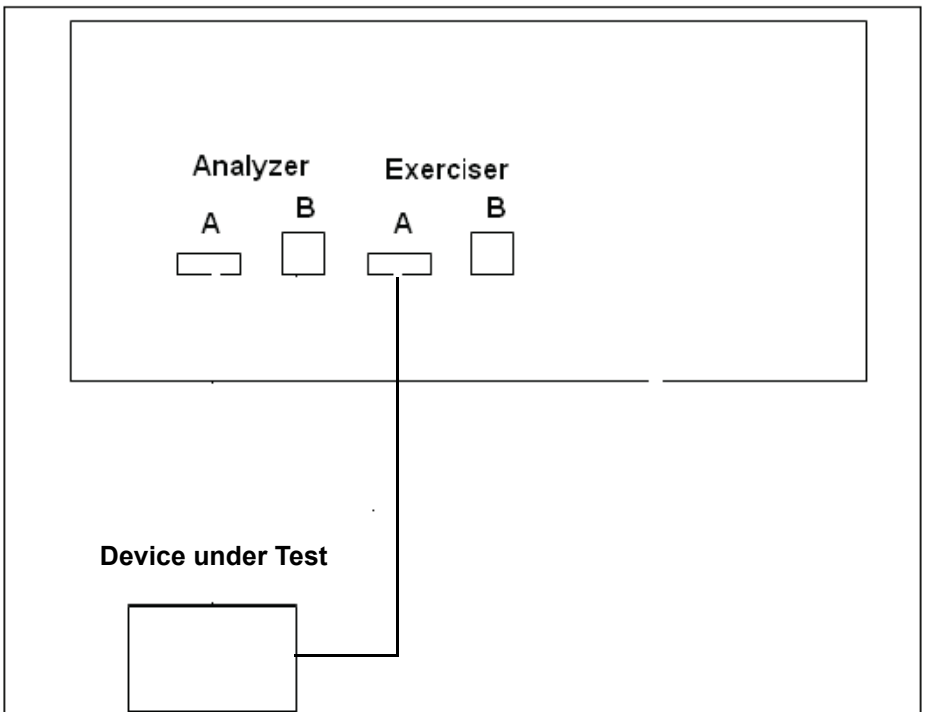
The connections differ for Host Emulation and Device Emulation.

Full Speed, Low Speed, Hi Speed, and SuperSpeed connections are the same.

You only need to plug into the Exerciser ports, because there is an internal Analyzer tap.

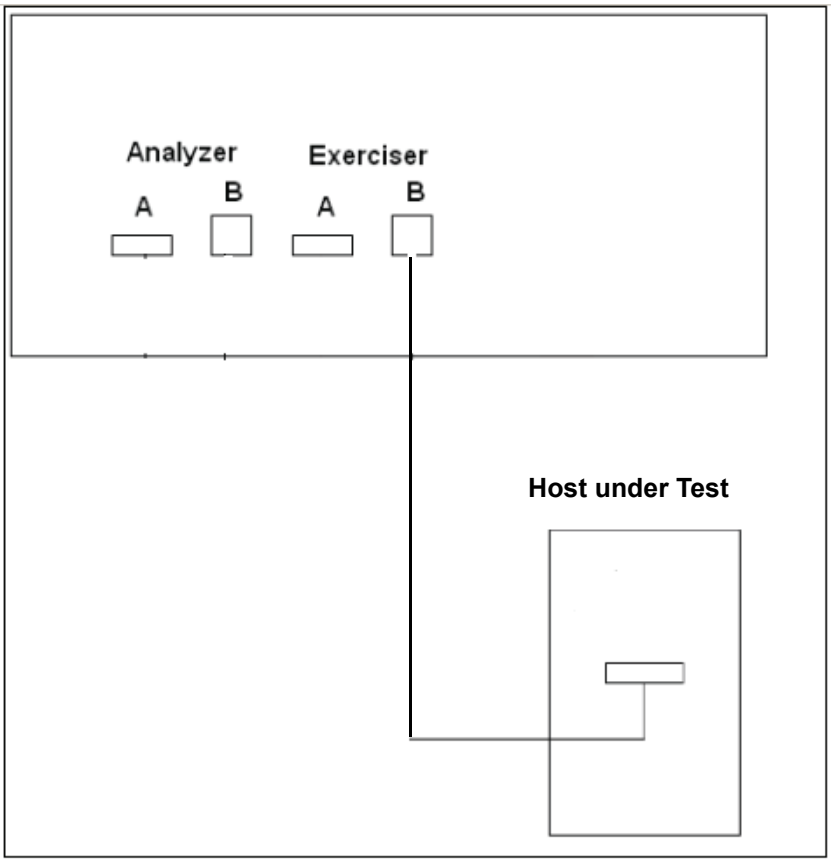
### 12.1.1 Host Emulation

For Host Emulation, connect a cable from Device under Test to Exerciser “A” port.



## 12.1.2 Device Emulation

For Device Emulation, connect a cable from Host under Test to Exerciser “B” port.



# 12.2 Transaction Engine

The Transaction Engine allows Voyager hardware to automatically handle low-level protocol elements, for quicker response and higher data throughput. Some Transaction Engine features are:

- **Retry Upon RX NRDY TP**: Exerciser automatically waits for ERDY and then retries Header TP or ACK TP.
- **Upon RX of Data burst packets**: Exerciser automatically sends ACK TP with proper SEQ number for all received packets.
- **Upon RX of DP with out of order SEQ number**: Exerciser sends ACK TP with missing SEQ number and Retry bit set to 1.
- **Upon RX of DP with Host Error bit set**: Exerciser (in Device Emulation mode) automatically waits for ERDY and then retries packet.
- **Upon RX of Stream Transfer with out-of-order data packets**: Exerciser sends ACK TP with correct Stream ID and SEQ number.

**Note: For more information on the theory of operation of the Transaction Engine and the use of the Scripting language, consult the Voyager USB 3.0 Exerciser Generation Script Language Reference Manual.**

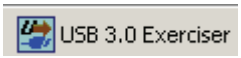
# 12.3 Exerciser Files

The system generates USB 3.0 traffic from traffic generation files (***.usb3g**) which are text-based script files that instruct the Exerciser how to generate USB 3.0 traffic. These script files can be edited with either a simple text editor such as Notepad or with the Script Editor utility provided by the application.

# 12.4 Creating Exerciser Files

If you choose to write a script with a text editor, a good way to start is to edit a sample generation file, such as **MassStorageEnumeration.USB3g, SampleEnumHostTx.usb3g**, or **SampleMassStorageHostTx.usb3g**, in the directory **C:\Program Files\LeCroy\USB Protocol Suite\SampleFiles\3.0**). You can open a generation file with Notepad or other editor and then add or remove text as needed.

# 12.5 Exerciser Window

Click the **USB 3.0 Exerciser**  button to open the USB 3.0 Protocol Exerciser window.

## 12.5.1 Exerciser Menus

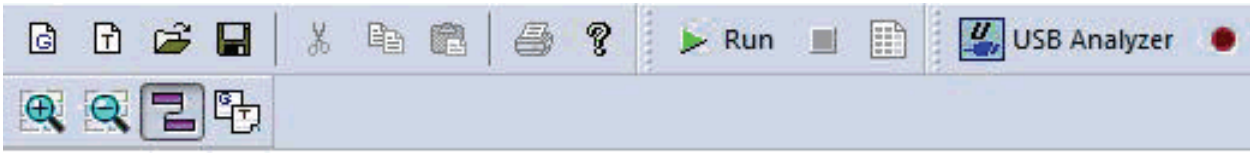
The Exerciser menus are:

| Menu | Function |
|---|---|
| **File** | |
| New Graphic Scenario | Creates a new, empty, graphic traffic generation file. |
| New Text Scenario | Creates a new, empty, text traffic generation file. |
| Open | Opens a file. |
| Close | Closes the current file. |
| Save | Saves the current file. |
| Save As | Saves all or a range of packets from the current file. |
| Print | Prints part or all of the current traffic data file. |
| Print Preview | Produces an on-screen preview before printing. |
| Print Setup | Sets the options for the current or new printer. |
| Exit | Exits the program. |
| **Edit** | |
| Undo | Undoes previous command. |
| Redo | Redoes undone command. |
| Cut | Deletes selected text. |
| Copy | Copies selected text |
| Paste | Pastes copied text. |
| Toggle Bookmark | Moves back and forth between bookmarks (scripts only). |
| Next Bookmark | Goes to the next bookmark (scripts only). |
| Previous Bookmark | Goes to the previous bookmark (scripts only). |
| Clear All Bookmarks | Removes all bookmarks (scripts only). |
| Find | Displays the Find dialog (scripts only). You can match case, find whole word only, and search up or down. |
| Replace | Opens the Replace dialog to find text and replace it (scripts only). You can match case, find whole word only, and search up or down. |
| Find Next | Finds the next text entered in the Find dialog (scripts only). |
| Goto | Opens the Go To Line dialog, in which you can enter a line number (scripts only). |
| Select All | Select all text in the current file (scripts only). |
| **Generation** | |
| Run Scenario | Starts traffic generation. |
| Stop Scenario | Stops traffic generation. |
| Preview Trace | Checks script for errors and displays trace. |

| Menu | Function |
|---|---|
| **Build** (scripts only) | |
| Compile | Starts traffic generation (scripts only). |
| **View** | |
| Main Toolbars | Switches display of the Main toolbar on or off. |
| Graphical Toolbar | Switches display of the Graphical toolbar on or off (graphics only). |
| Views Toolbar | Switches display of the Views toolbar on or off (scripts only). |
| Script Toolbar | Switches display of the Script toolbar on or off (scripts only). |
| Status Bar | Switches display of the Status Bar on or off. |
| Zoom In | Increases the size of the displayed elements (graphics only). |
| Zoom Out | Decreases the size of the displayed elements (graphics only). |
| Wrap | Wraps displayed packets within the window (graphics only). |
| Convert | Converts graphic scenario to text scenario (graphics only). |
| **Window** | |
| Cascade | Displays all open windows in an overlapping arrangement. |
| Tile | Displays all open windows in a above-below arrangement. |
| Arrange Icons | Arranges minimized windows at the bottom of the display. |
| Windows ... | Displays a list of open windows. |
| **Help** | |
| About | Displays version information about the Voyager M3 and the USB Protocol Suite.<br>See “Software, Firmware, and BusEngine Revisions” on page 345. |

## 12.5.2 Main Exerciser Toolbar

The Main Exerciser toolbar contains buttons for saving your edits, navigating, searching, and other functions.




The buttons have the following functions:

New Graphic Scenario

New Text Scenario

Open file.

Save. Saves your edits and immediately updates the setting bars and Frames shown in the trace window.

Cut.

Copy.

Paste.

Print.

About

Run Scenario.

Stop Scenario.

Trace Preview.
Checks script for errors and displays trace.

Go to USB Analyzer window.

Start Recording.

Stop Recording.

# 12.6 Script Editor

After you open an existing generation script file or create a new text scenario in the Script Editor, use the following steps to edit or build a script. The Script Editor utility has several aids to simplify the process of writing and editing scripts: tool-tips, drop-down menus, and colored fields.

## 12.6.1 Highlighting

All known commands and parameters are highlighted in **blue**.

All predefined values and command modifiers are highlighted in **brown**.

Comments are in **green**.

Errors are in **red**.

## 12.6.2 Text Editing Commands

The Script Editor supports standard editor commands using toolbar buttons and Edit menu commands:

- **Cut/Copy/Paste:** Also available by right-clicking a command to display a menu
- **Undo/Redo**
- **Find/Replace/Find Next**
- **Bookmarks:** Show/Hide, Previous/Next, and Clear All

## 12.6.3 Help

Right-click a command to display a menu from which you can choose Help.

## 12.6.4 Properties Window

The Properties window lists all parameters and their values for the selected script command. Parameters/values can be changed by entering text into the text boxes or by selecting items from pull-down menus.

## 12.6.5 File Tabs

At the top of the Script Editor window is a tab with the name of the open generation file.

If there are **Include** statements in the generation file that link it to other generation files, these files automatically open and display as tabs at the top of the window. You can click the tabs to toggle between the open generation files.

## 12.6.6 Errors

When you compile a script and have an error, the error appears in the Error tab at the bottom of the application window. Each error has a file name, line number, and description. Double-clicking the error jumps to the line number.

A red square appears next to the line number that contains the error.

A yellow square appears next to the line number that has a warnings.

**Note:** You cannot run a script that has syntax errors.

## 12.6.7 Output

When you compile a script that generates output or when the application sends you a message, the information appears in the Output tab.

## 12.6.8 Options Menu

You can set text options in the Options menu by clicking :

- **Enable Outlining:** Adds a hierarchy of levels to the script.
- **Show Line Numbers:** Displays the line numbers at the left of the window.
- **Show Tooltips:** When you place the cursor over an item, information about the item appears.
- **Enable IntelliSense:** Starts the IntelliSense program.
- **Toggle Outlining:** If Enable Outlining is checked, allows you to expand or collapse the outlining levels.

## 12.6.9 Outlining

If you enable outlining at the Options button, you can **collapse** or **expand** code blocks. You can toggle outlining at the Options button or by right-clicking a command to display a menu from which you can choose Toggle Outlining.

## 12.6.10 Line Numbers

If you enable line numbers at the Options button, each line has a line number.

## 12.6.11 Tooltips

If you show tooltips at the Options button, tooltips appear when you place the cursor over a button or command.

## 12.6.12 Text Snippets

Text snippets appear in the Text Snippets window. You can drag and drop a text snippet into the script. The available text snippets are:

- **Send:** Enter a packet template name, with options to delay or override.
- **SendPipeCommand**: Enter a command name, pipe type, total length, setup, data pattern, asn, store data, and send erdy.
- **SetSequenceNumber**: Enter a pipe type, device address, endpoint number, data directory, sequence number, and enable.
- **SendFile:** Enter a file path, device address, endpoint, delay, start sequence number, payload_size, stream ID, and route string.
- **PrepareWaitPkt**: Enter packet type as TP or DP, requested packet subtype for TP, packet endpoint number, packet device address, packet direction, and packet stream ID.
- **WaitPacket**: Enter packets to wait (default is 1) and start wait at last end (default is 1) or not (0).
- **TxSleep**: Enter an interval.
- **Set Link State**: Enter a link state.
- **Loop**: Enter a counter.
- **Start Recording**: Enter the Recorded Options File Path and Name and the Trace File Path and Name. Indicate whether to keep the old trace.
- **Stop Recording**: Enter 0 (no WaitForUpload) or 1 (WaitForUpload). You can also force to stop recording.
- **Trigger Analyzer:** Has no options.
- **for**: Enter code between the braces.
- **Call**: Enter a Procedure name and the procedure parameters.
- **Packet Size**: Enter an integer or a template.
- **Pattern Size**: Enter an integer or a data pattern.
- **Field Size**: Enter an integer or a field name.
- **Set**: After the set command, enter a setting and its value.
- **Trace_B**: Enter a message.
- **Trace**: Enter a message.
- **DeviceEnumerationInit.snpt**: Text snippet for device enumeration.

**Note:** In the syntax for Text Snippets, the /* and */ stand for comment marks. Do not use either the / or * when you enter a parameter. For example in:

**Send /*packet template name*/**

the entry might look like this:

**Send Name1**

Script Scenario 2 *
1 Send /*packet template name*/( /*delay*/ , /*override*/ )
2 SendFile( /*file_path*/, /*device_addr*/, /*endpoint*/, /*delay*/, /*start_seq_num*/,
3 /*payload_size*/, /*stream_id*/, /*route_string*/ )
4 TxSleep (/*interval*/)
5 SetLinkState (/*link_state*/)
6 Loop (/*counter*/)
7 StartRecording (/*recording_options*/ , /*trace_file*/, /*keep_old_trace */ )
8 StopRecording ( /* wait_for_trace */, /* force_stop_recording*/ )
9 TriggerAnalyzer()
10 for( i = 0, i < 10, i++ )
11 {
12 /*place your code here*/
13 }
14 Call /*Procedure*/ ( /* parameters */ )
15 pkt_size (/*template*/)
16 pttn_size (/*data_pattern*/)
17 Fld_size (/*field_name*/)
18 Set (/*set setting = value*/)
19 Trace_B( /* message */ )
20 Trace( /* message */ )
21

**Note:** For information about each command, see the *Voyager USB 3.0 Exerciser - Generation Script Language Reference Manual*.

## 12.6.13 Views Toolbar

The Views toolbar contains buttons for viewing text snippets, Output window, and Error Output window.

The buttons have the following functions:

View Toolbox Text Snippets.

View Output window .

View Error Output window.

## 12.6.14 Script Toolbar

The Script toolbar contains buttons for saving your edits, navigating, searching, and other functions.

The buttons have the following functions:

Undo.

Redo

View Options. Opens a menu with three options: Enable Outlining, Toggle Outlining, and Show Line Numbers. See **View Options Menu** below.

Compile.

Find.

Add/Remove bookmark. Allows markers to be set or removed to aid in navigation.

Go to next bookmark.

Go to previous bookmark.

Clear all bookmarks.

Find and Replace.

Find Next

### Pop-up Menu

Right-click anywhere in the script window to open a pop-up menu with the following options:

- Cut
- Copy
- Paste
- Toggle Outlining
- Open All Include Files

The List Values option displays the types of values that can be entered for a parameter in a line. To see the types of values, select the current parameter, then choose **Show Values** from the pop-up menu.

## 12.6.15 Error Log

Whenever you create a scripting error, a log opens at the bottom of the application window. When the error is corrected, the window automatically closes.

## 12.6.16 Tooltips

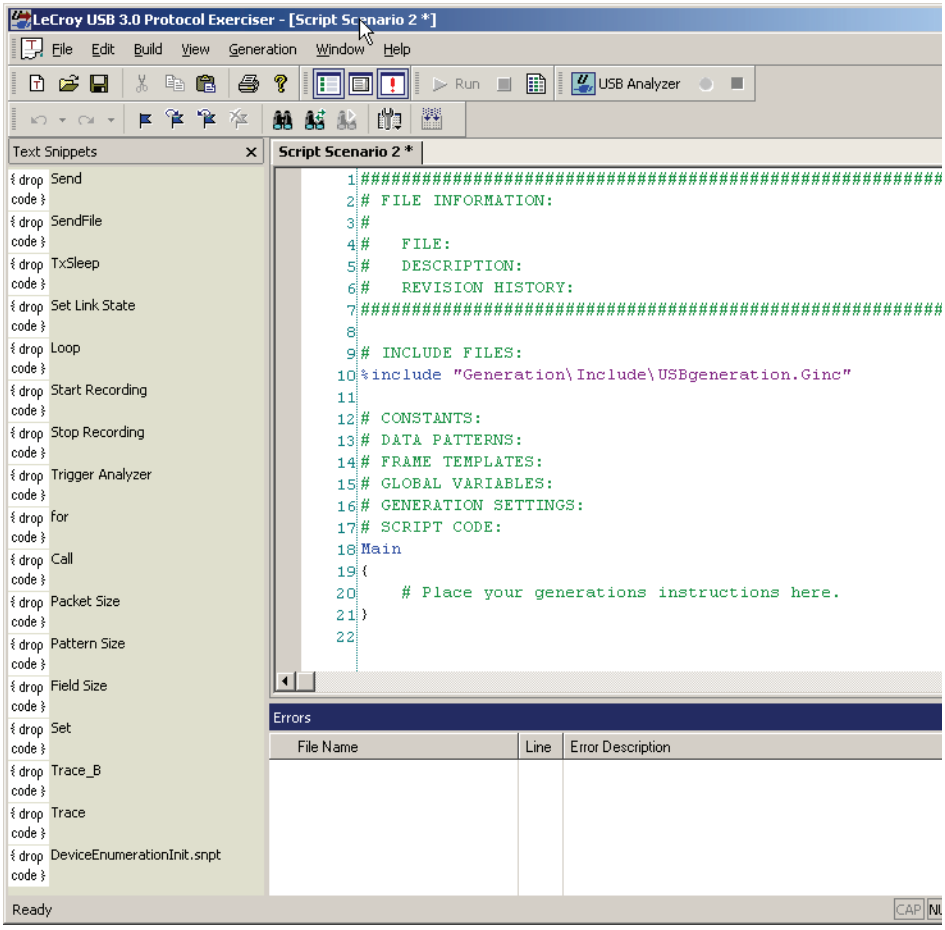
The Script Editor window includes extensive tooltips for each keyword. To see a tooltip, hold the mouse pointer over a keyword.

# 12.7 Creating a Script using the Script Editor

Before creating a script, read the *Voyager USB 3.0 Exerciser Generation Script Language Reference Manual* to become familiar with all parts of a script and their order, learn about the commands and their parameters, and see an example script.

To create a script, do the following in the USB 3.0 Protocol Exerciser window:

**Step 1** Click the **New Generation Scenario** button or select **File > New Generation Scenario** to display a blank script.




The file name appears on the tab for the file.

**Step 2** Enter file information in beginning comment lines:

```
#########################################################
# FILE INFORMATION:
#   FILE:
#   DESCRIPTION:
#   REVISION HISTORY:
#########################################################
```

**Step 3** Add a comment line by starting the line with **#**:

```
# INCLUDE FILES:
```

**Step 4** To include main definitions and templates, add an include file line:

```
%include "Include\FrameworkLib.ginc"
```

**Step 5** Add constants:

```
Const EndpointNum = 1
Const DeviceNumber = 1
```

**Step 6** Add data patterns:

```
DataPattern SetAddrReq   = { 00 05 00 00 00 00 00 00 }
```

**Step 7** Add frame and structure templates:

```
struct DeliveryID
{
    Sel : 1 = 1     # Stream Index
    Val : 3
}
```

**Step 8** (optional) Add global variables.

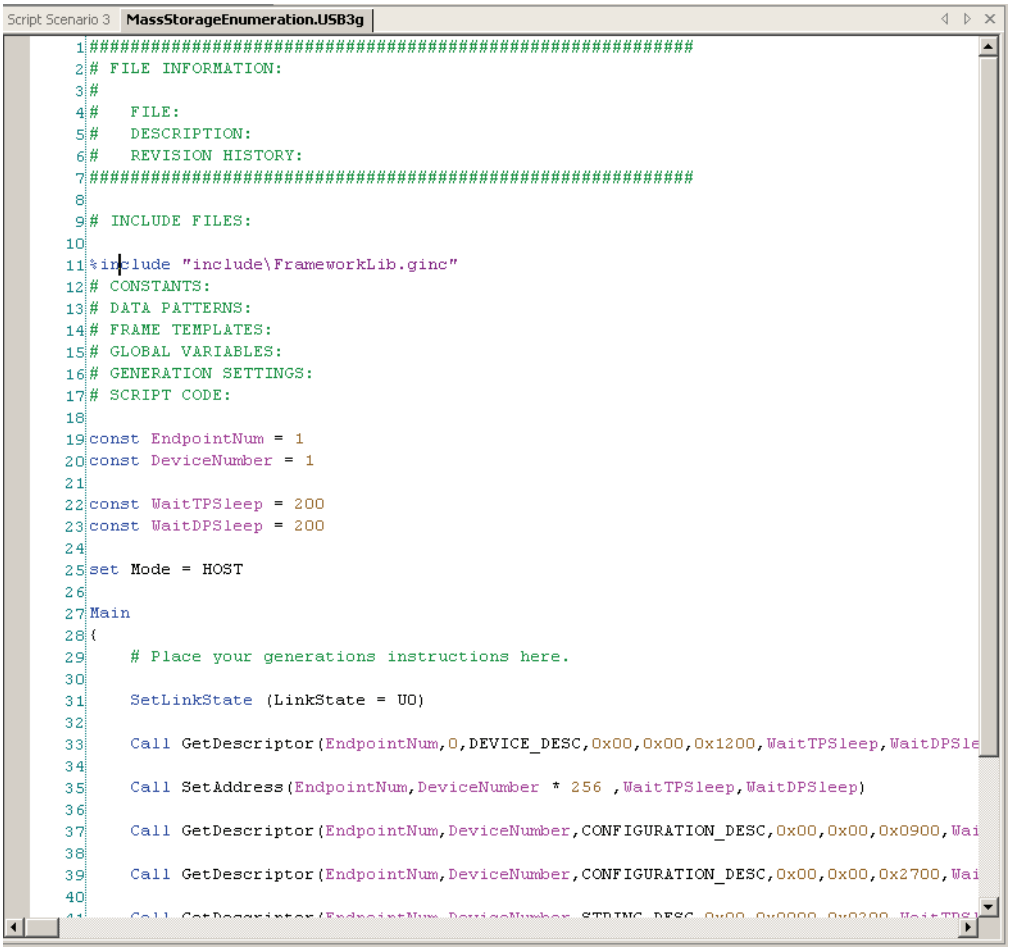
**Step 9** (optional) Add generation settings.

**Step 10** Add the **Main** generation procedure, such as the following example:

```
Main
{
    # Place your generations instructions here.
    SetLinkState (LinkState = U0)
    Call GetDescriptor(EndpointNum,0,DEVICE_DESC,0x00,
                  0x00,0x1200,WaitTPSleep,WaitDPSleep)
     Call SetAddress(EndpointNum, DeviceNumber * 256,
                  WaitTPSleep, WaitDPSleep)
}
```

**Note:** You can use the Text Snippets on the left Text Snippets panel to add commands and their parameters.

**Step 11** Add other generation procedures. For how to set up other generation procedures, see Appendix A of the *Voyager USB 3.0 Exerciser Generation Script Language Reference Manual*.




**Step 12** (optional) You can use the Text Snippets on the left Text Snippets panel to add commands and their parameters.

**Step 13** Click the **Compile** button or select **Build > Compile** to check the file for errors. The application lists any errors in the Errors tab.

**Step 14** Click the **Save** button or select **File > Save** to save the file.

**Note:** Saving the file automatically compiles it.

# 12.8 Graphical Scenario Editor

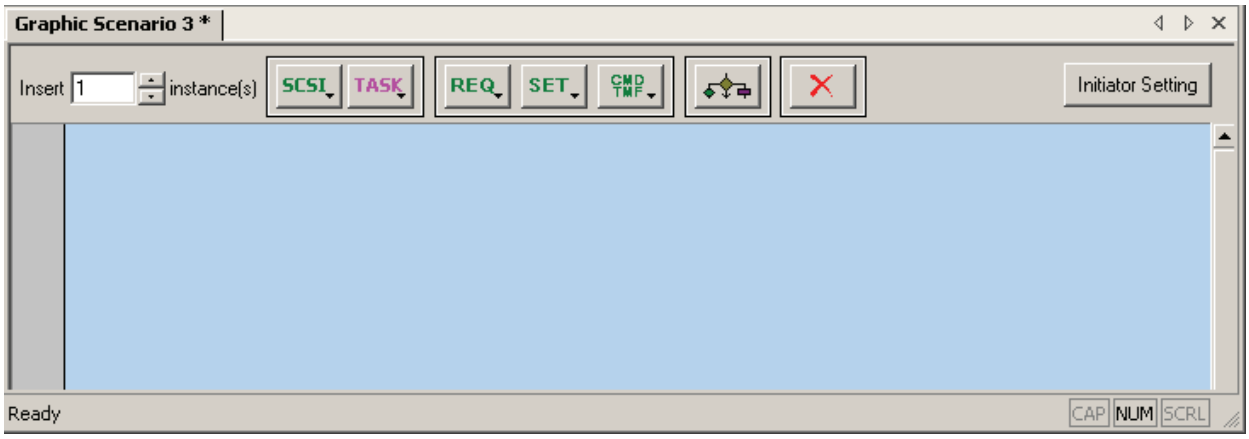
The Graphical Scenario Editor allows you to create Host Emulator scenarios (only), using high-level constructs and graphical elements.

After inserting an item, you can modify these elements through simple edit boxes and pull-down selections by clicking on elements.

You can insert the following items:

- High-Level SCSI Commands (SPC-3, SBC-2, SMC-2, SSC-2, MMC-5, SCC-2, and SES-2)
- High-Level Task Management Functions
- Bus Enumeration / Control Requests
- Settings
- Mass Storage Transfer Packets
- Instructions (Start Loop, End Loop, Delay, Stop Exerciser)

After you create a new graphical scenario, use the following steps to edit or build the scenario.



## 12.8.1 Graphical Scenario Window

The Graphical Scenario window contains SCSI, TASK, REQ, SET, Insert Instructions, and Delete Selected Item buttons. You can **Insert** 1 to 20 instances.

SCSI command:

- SPC-3
- SBC-2
- SMC-2
- SSC-2
- MMC-5
- SCC-2
- SES-2

Task button:

- Abort Task
- Abort Task Set
- Clear Task Set
- LUN Reset
- Clear ACA
- Query Task
- Query Task Set
- I T Nexus Reset
- Query Asynchronous Event

REQ button:

- Bus Enumeration
- Device Requests:
    - Clear Feature
    - Get Configuration
    - Get Descriptor
    - Get Interface
    - Get Status
    - Set Address
    - Set Configuration
    - Set Descriptor
    - Set Feature
    - Set Interface
    - Set Status
    - Synch Frame
    - Set Sel
    - Set Isoch Delay

SET button:

- ErrLostLGOOD
- ErrWrongLGOOD
- ErrLostLCRD
- ErrWrongLCRD
- ErrCorruptLinkCmd
- ErrCorruptLMP
- ErrDisparity
- ErrWrongSymbol
- ErrLBAD
- ErrLostLGOODAdv
- ErrWrongLGOODAdv
- ErrLostLCRDAdv
- ErrWrongLCRDAdv
- SetLinkState

CMD/TMF button inserts Mass Storage transfer items in BOT or UAS based on Active Device (See Initiator Emulator Setting)

- Command
- Task Management

Instruction items:

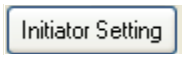
- Start Loop
- End Loop
- Delay
- Stop

Delete Selected Item(s). Selected item(s) are marked by horizontal arrow(s) on left bar.

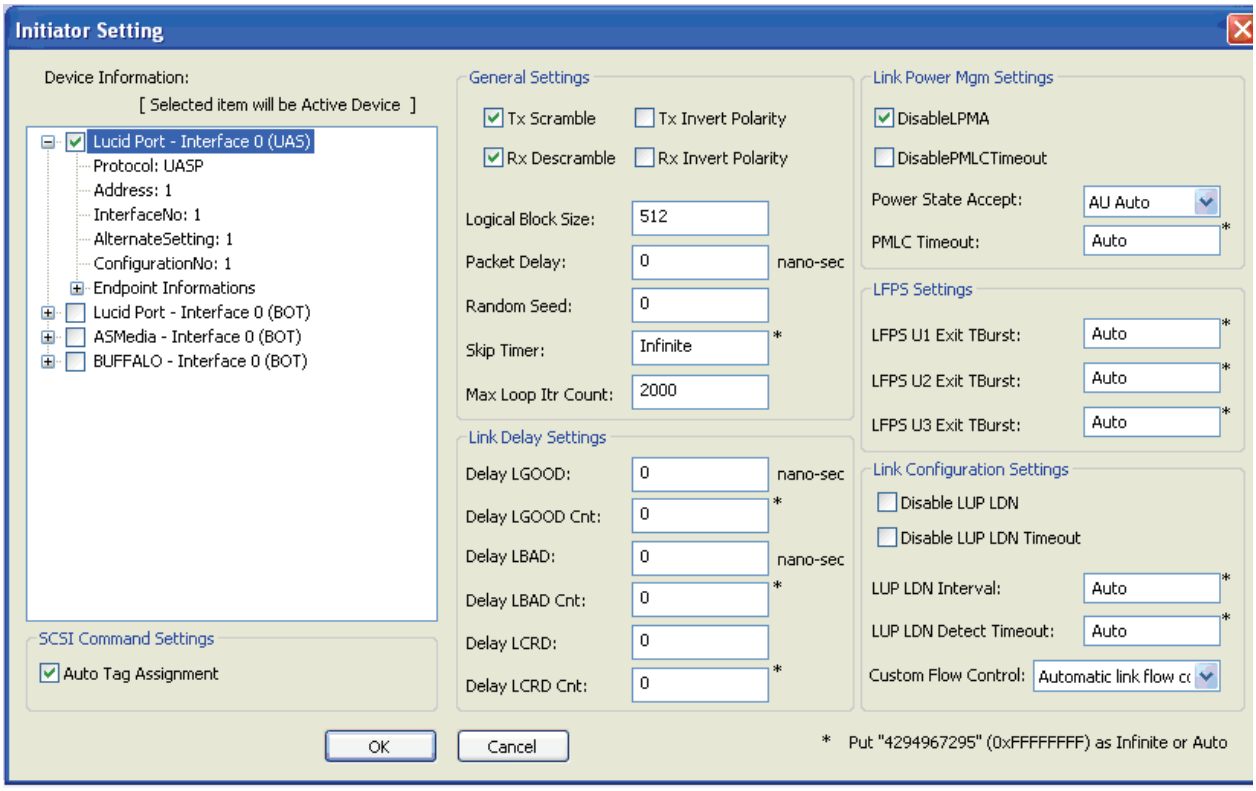
**Note:** There are different ways to select items:

- Click item for single selection.
- Use Ctrl, Shift, or Ctrl+ A, or drag mouse around item(s) for multiple selections

## Initiator Setting




The Initiator Settings button displays the Initiator Settings dialog.




### Device Information

The left pane shows Device Information, as expected from enumeration, so this pane shows general device information from a pre-configure file. The Device Information **DeviceInfo.cfg** file is in the **Generation** directory under the **users** directory. You can edit this file.

For each device, the following information is in the **DeviceInfo.cfg** file:

- Name
- Protocol (UASP or BOT)
- Address
- InterfaceNo
- AlternateSetting
- ConfigurationNo
- Endpoint Information
  - EndpointNo
  - Direction (IN or OUT)
  - Max Burst Size
  - PipeUsageId
  - Endpoint Type (only for UAS protocol)

**Note**: You can only select one device from the Device List as the active device. Required information for the project is defined by the active device. The active protocol in the project is defined by the active device.

**Note**: If you have already inserted some items in the project, and then you change the active device, if the new active device is in another protocol (UAS or BOT), the software will try to convert all information to the selected protocol (based on the active device), and sometimes information may be lost.

**SCSI Command Settings**

**Auto Tag Assignment**: You can choose Auto Tag Assignment for SCSI Commands. Then the tag will be assigned automatically for SCSI Commands (starts with 1 and continually increments). If you deselect this feature, you must check the tag value of all SCSI Commands in the project and make them unique in each run.

**General Settings**

The middle pane has General Settings: Tx Scramble, Rx Descramble, Port Configuration Ack, Tx Invert Polarity, and Rx Invert Polarity checkboxes.

You can set Logical Block Size, Packet Delay, Random Seed, Skip Timer, and Maximum Loop Iteration Count.

**Link Delay Settings**

The middle pane has Link Delay Settings: Delay for LGOOD, LGOOD Count, LBAD, LBAD Count, LCRD, and LCRD Count.

**Link Power Management Settings**

The right pane has Link Power Management Settings. You can disable LPMA and PMLC Timeout. You can set Power State Accept and PMLC Timeout.

**LFPS Settings**

The right pane has LFPS Settings. You can set Exit TBurst for U1, U2, and U3.

**Link Configuration Settings**

The right pane has Link Configuration Settings. You can disable LUP LDN and LUP LDN Timeout.

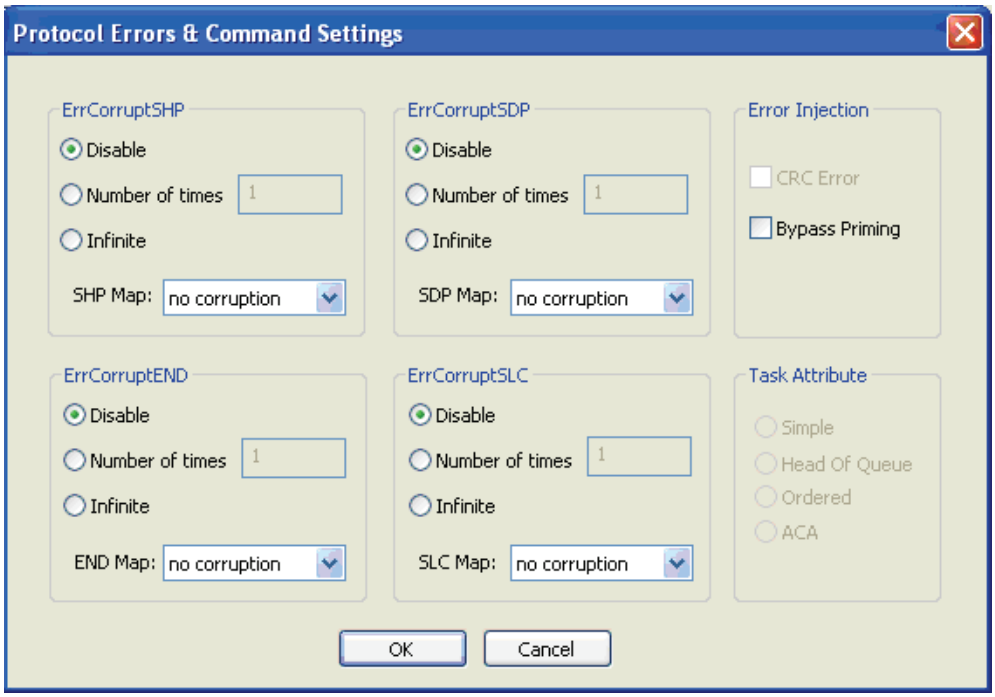
You can set LUP LDN Interval and Detect Timeout.

You can select a Custom Flow Control, such as Automatic Link Flow Control, No LGOOD Detect, No LCRD Detect, No LGOOD Generation, No LCRD Generation, or No Flow Control.

**Note**: A value of 4294967295 (0xFFFFFFFF) indicates that a default value will be used (Infinite or Auto).

## Option Button

After insetting a SCSI Command, a Task Management Functions, or a Transfer packet, at the end of the packet an extra button, called Option, is shown. After clicking this button, you can set some protocol errors and command settings for that item.




**ErrCorruptSHP** section has Disable, Number of items, Infinite, and SHP Map (no corruption or Corrupt Symbol 1, 2, or 3).

**ErrCorruptSDP** section has Disable, Number of items, Infinite, and SDP Map (no corruption or Corrupt Symbol 1, 2, or 3).

**ErrCorruptEND** section has Disable, Number of items, Infinite, and END Map (no corruption or Corrupt Symbol 1, 2, or 3).

**ErrCorruptSLC** section has Disable, Number of items, Infinite, and SLC Map (no corruption or Corrupt Symbol 1, 2, 3, or 4).

**Error Injection** section has CRC Error or Bypass Priming.

**Task Attribute** section has Sample, Head of Queue, Ordered, and ACA.

## Script Scenarios

For some special purposes in which graphical scenario features are limited, you can convert a graphical scenario to a script scenario, which you can then modify.

**Note**: The software does not support converting a text scenario to a graphic scenario.

## Save

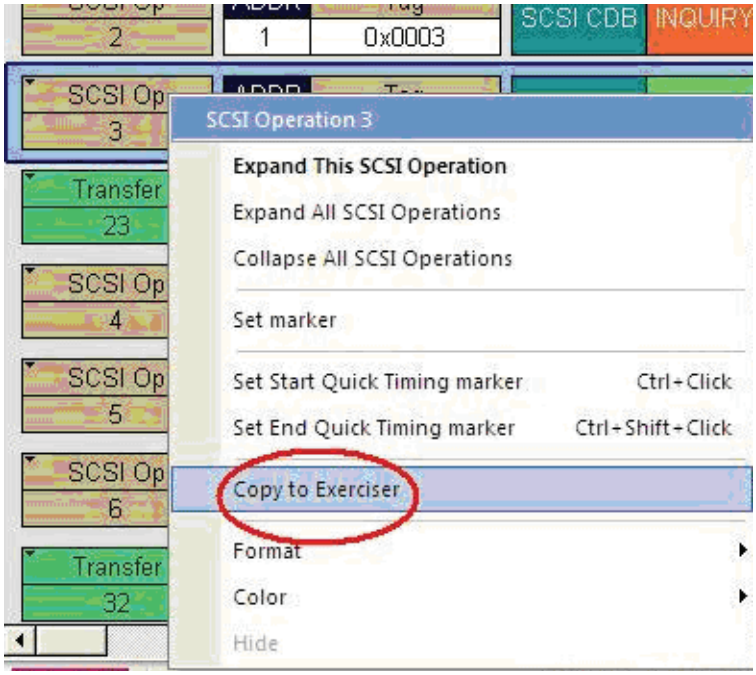
You can save a created project by selecting **File > Save**.

You can run a saved project by selecting **Generation > Run Scenario** or using the Run Toolbar.

## 12.8.2 Copy SCSI Operation from Trace File and Paste to Exerciser Scenario

To select a SCSI command from a trace file to use in an Exerciser scenario:

**Step 1** Right-click any SCSI packet and select **Copy to exerciser** from the menu:




**Step 2** Go to the Graphical View of the Exerciser, right-click in the view, and select **paste** from the menu.

## 12.8.3 Graphical Toolbar

The Graphical toolbar contains buttons for zooming, wrapping, and converting from graphic scenario to text scenario.

The buttons have the following functions:

Zoom In

Zoom Out

Wrap

Convert from graphic scenario to text scenario.

# 12.9 Loading and Running the Generation File

The USB 3.0 Traffic Generation files are scripts that instruct the Analyzer how to generate USB 3.0 traffic. A traffic generation file contains text in special format and is named with a ***.usb3g** extension. There are several examples of Traffic Generation files included with the installation of the software.

To load a generation file:

**Step 1** Select **File > Open ...** from the menu to display the Open dialog box.

**Step 2** Select **Usb3Script Files (*.usb3g)** from the drop-down menu marked **Files of Type** to display a list of USB 3.0 Traffic Generation files.

**Step 3** Select a Traffic Generation file (*.usb3g).

**Step 4** Click **Open**.

## 12.9.1 Starting Traffic Generation

To start traffic generation, click

on the Tool Bar.

Click the **Trace Preview** button to check the file.

## 12.9.2 Stop Traffic Generation

To instruct the Analyzer to halt traffic generation, click on the Tool Bar.

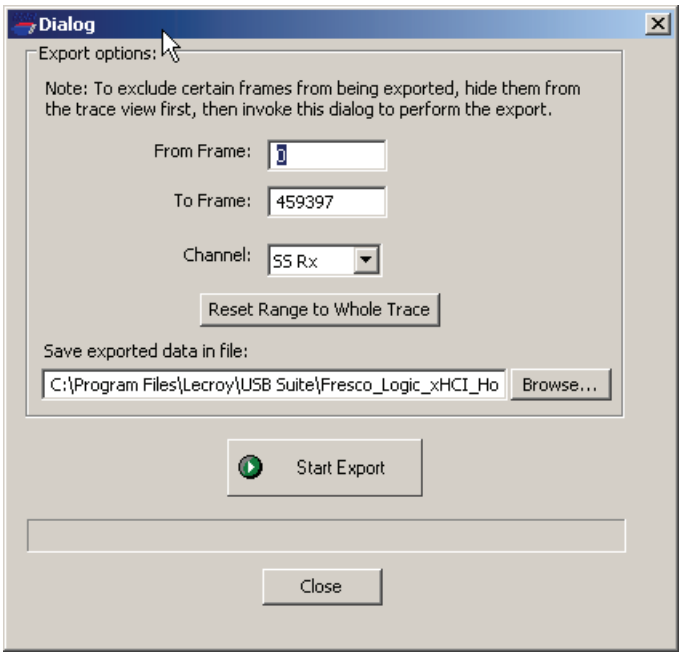
# 12.10 Exporting a Trace to a Traffic Generation File

A simple way to create a script file is to open a trace and then to export the trace data to a generation file.

To export:

**Step 1** Open a **.usb** file.

**Step 2** Click the **Export to Script** button to display the Export dialog.




**Step 3** Enter the first frame number in the From Frame field.

**Step 4** Enter the last frame number in the To Frame field.
You can **Reset Range to Whole Trace**.

**Step 5** Select the Channel:

**SS Rx**: Exports device TX packets.

**SS Tx**: Exports host TX packets.

**Step 6** Enter the file path for the file in which to save the exported data.

**Step 7** Click the **Start Export** button to begin export.

**Step 8** After exporting finishes, click **Close** to close the dialog.

# 12.11 USB 3.0 Electrical Test Modes

In the Electrical Test window, you can use Loopback mode and Compliance mode.

To access the Electrical Test window, you must connect to the Voyager system.

## 12.11.1 Loopback Mode

The Voyager USB 3.0 Electrical Test window supports entry to the Polling.Loopback substate. For receiver testing, the device under test (loopback slave) is placed in a special test mode and echoes back a predefined loopback pattern. The Voyager system can initiate this special mode (loopback master) and generate the basic loopback pattern. The Voyager automatically monitors the received traffic for bit errors.

Full compliance testing requires the addition of jitter tolerance measurements to the loopback stream. Specialized equipment, such as LeCroy's PERT
Receiver Tolerance Test system, should be used to introduce jitter and perform the full electrical layer compliance testing process.

**Loopback Mode test procedure**

**Step 1** Connect the DUT to the Exerciser port:

For Device Loopback: Attach DUT to Port A

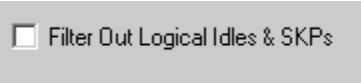
For Host Loopback: Attach DUT to Port B

**Step 2** Set recording options:

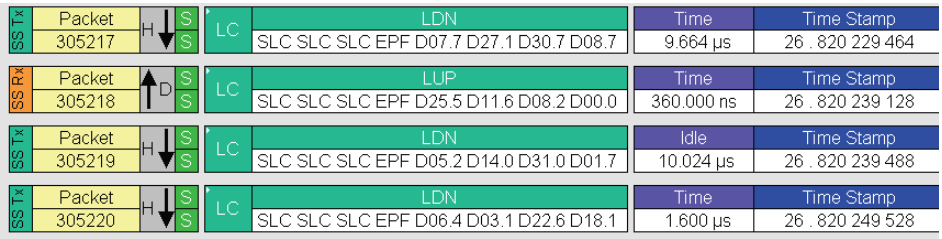
For Device DUT Loopback: Set Voyager as Host Emulator

For Host DUT Loopback: Set Voyager as Device Emulator

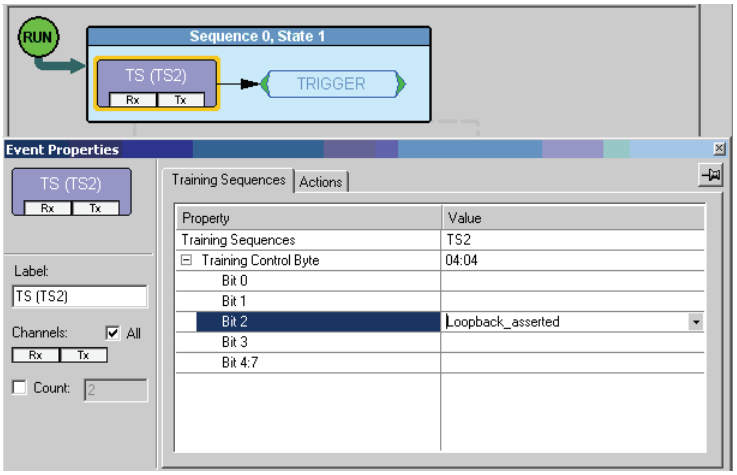
**Step 3** In the Misc USB 3.0 tab, uncheck the **Filter Out Logical Idles & SKPs** option.




Initiating loopback mode requires that the DUT successfully link trains with the Voyager exerciser. Verify that the link reaches U0 by pressing the Record button and looking at traffic for LUP/ LDN link commands.

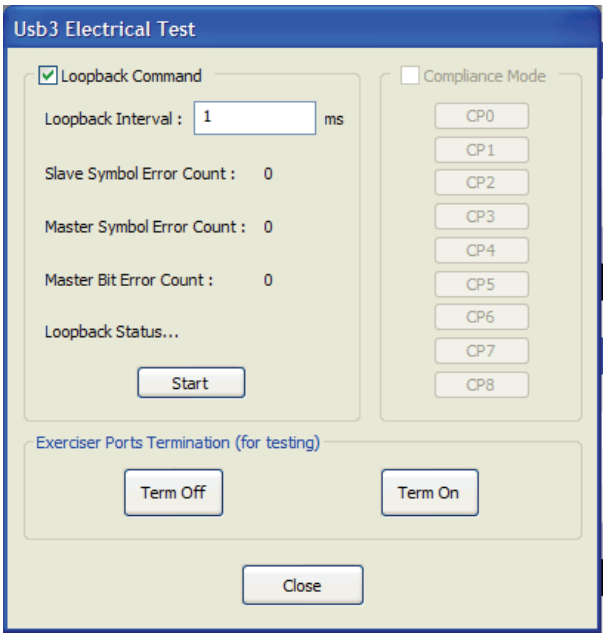


You can optionally set the analyzer to record the Loopback traffic to verify that the system enters loopback. If you elect to record Loopback traffic, it is recommended that you set Trigger on the Loopback command by setting Trigger on TS2 with loopback bit asserted.




**Step 4** Select the **Electrical Test** window from the View Menu.

**Step 5** Click the **Loopback Test** check box.



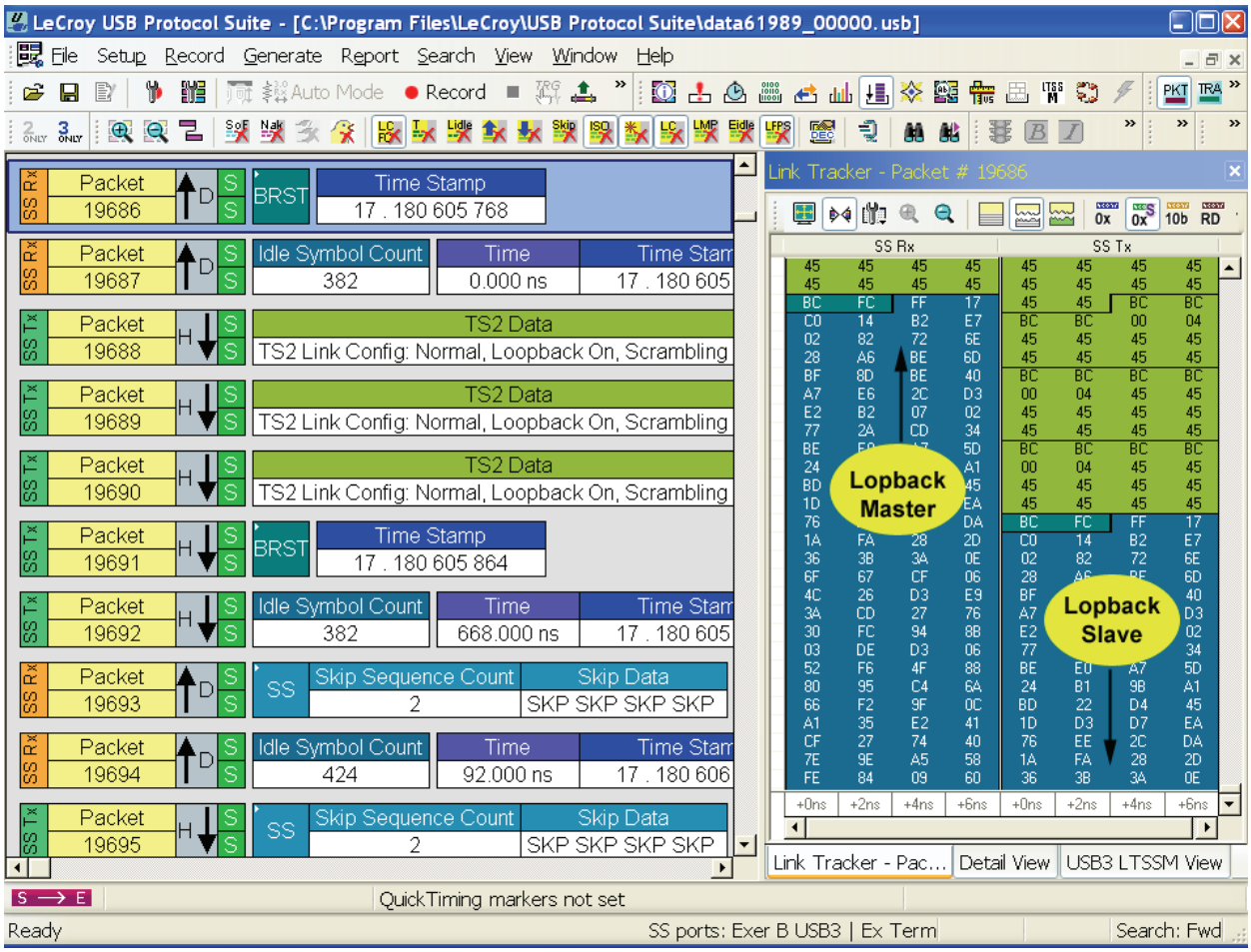

Use the **termination buttons** to verify that a device sees (or does not see) termination from the exerciser ports. After you finish, be sure to put them back in the mode that you expect them to be in when done.

**Step 6** Set the **Loopback Interval**. This is the time interval in milliseconds in which each of the BERT ordered sets (BRST, BDAT, and BERC) will be transmitted. The minimum value is 1 ms. The maximum value is 2^28 = 268,435,456 ms.

**Step 7** Press the **Start** button.

Loopback entry and pattern generation occurs immediately after the link partners complete training. SSC is enabled within the transmitted loopback pattern. If the analyzer is used to record the exchange, the loopback traffic should appear in both upstream and downstream directions, with individual BERT ordered sets.

In the image below, the Voyager initiates loopback testing on a host (upstream) port. Uncheck the **Hide Logical Idle Packets** option, on the toolbar or View menu. Then use the **Link Tracker** to verify that the pattern is transmitted, as shown below.




**Device initiates loopback mode with SuperSpeed host.**

The loopback sequence is transmitted for the defined interval and automatically repeats until the **Stop** button is pressed. The Electrical Test window automatically monitors the loopback patterns for receiver errors and displays the following:

- Number of Symbols
- Number of Transmitted Errors
- Number of Received Errors
- Status of Loopback Mode

**Note:** The Voyager Loopback Mode does not alter the transmitted signal and does not perform the jitter tolerance electrical test defined in USB-IF Electrical Layer Compliance Specification. Specialized equipment, such as LeCroy's PERT Receiver Tolerance Test system, should be used to introduce jitter as defined by the Electrical Layer Compliance Specification.

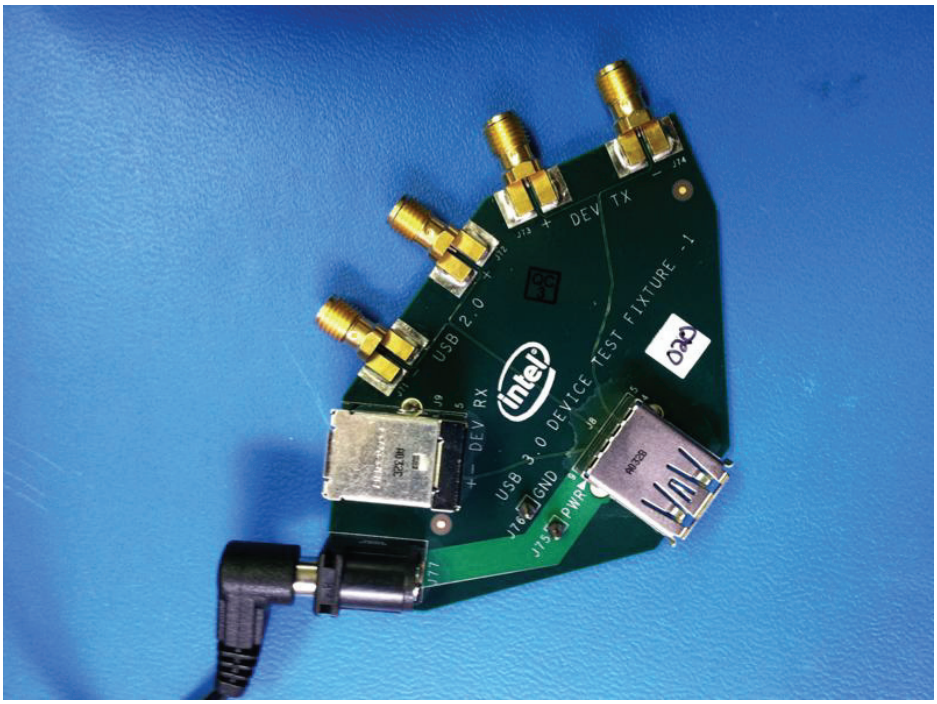
## 12.11.2 Compliance Mode

The Voyager USB 3.0 Electrical Test window supports entry to the Polling.Compliance substate. This initiates the transmission of the pseudo-random data pattern generated by the scrambled D10.0 compliance sequence. The Voyager system USB 3.0 Electrical Test window can initiate the required test modes, while an attached oscilloscope is used to measure the transmitted compliance patterns.

After the DUT is in the Compliance state and is sending a compliance pattern (CP0), the pattern will be transmitted continuously until a ping LFPS is detected at the DUT receiver. The Voyager system does not send a compliance pattern but remains in electrical idle while the Compliance mode is operational. The Voyager can transmit subsequent ping.lfps signals interactively to advance the DUT to the next compliance pattern.

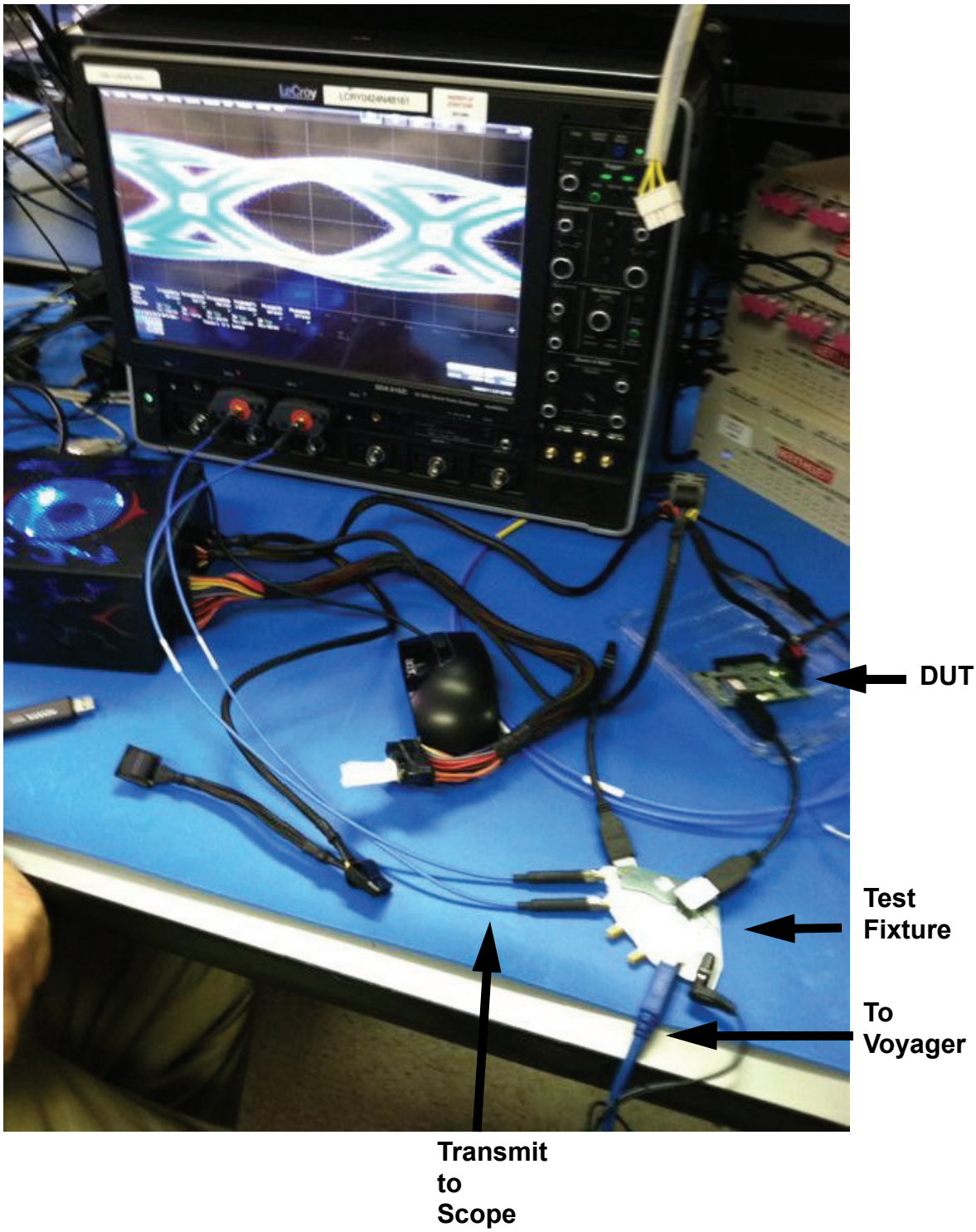
**Compliance Mode test procedure**

**Step 1** Connect the DUT or HUT to a test fixture board (for example, an Intel board), so that transmit signals go to the oscilloscope and receive signals come from the analyzer.

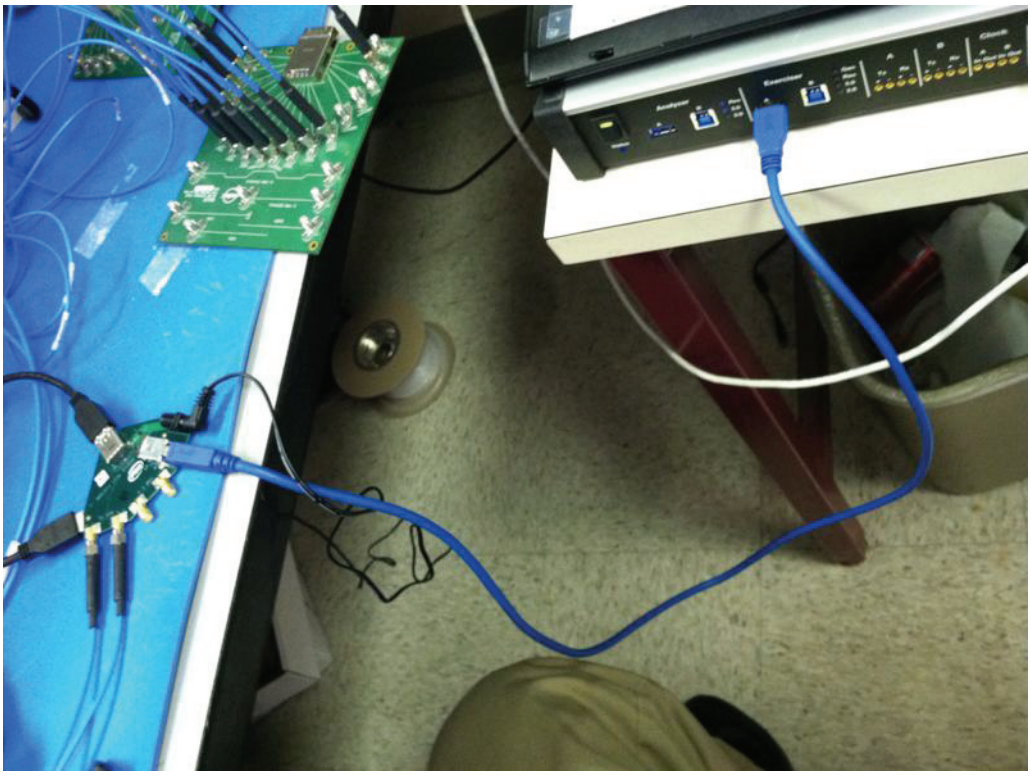



**Intel Test Fixture**

The following two photos show an example connection.

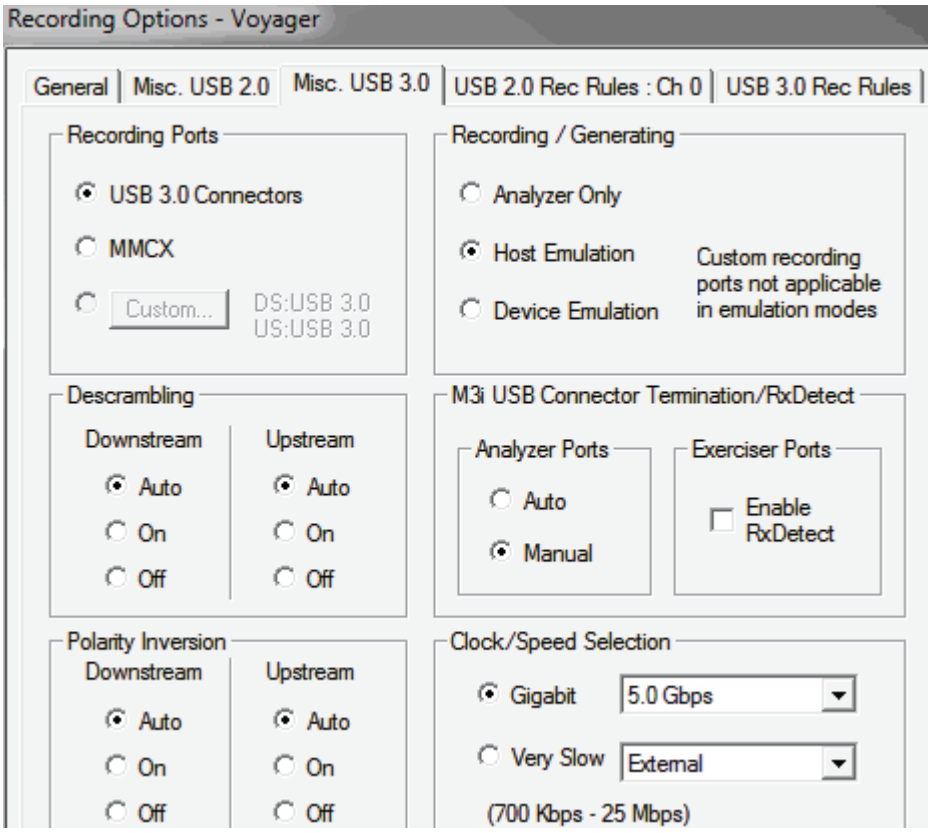



**Test Fixture to DUT and Oscilloscope Connections**



**Test Fixture to Voyager Connection (blue cable)**

**Step 2** Set the Recording Options, in the Misc USB 3.0 tab, to run the Electrical tests.



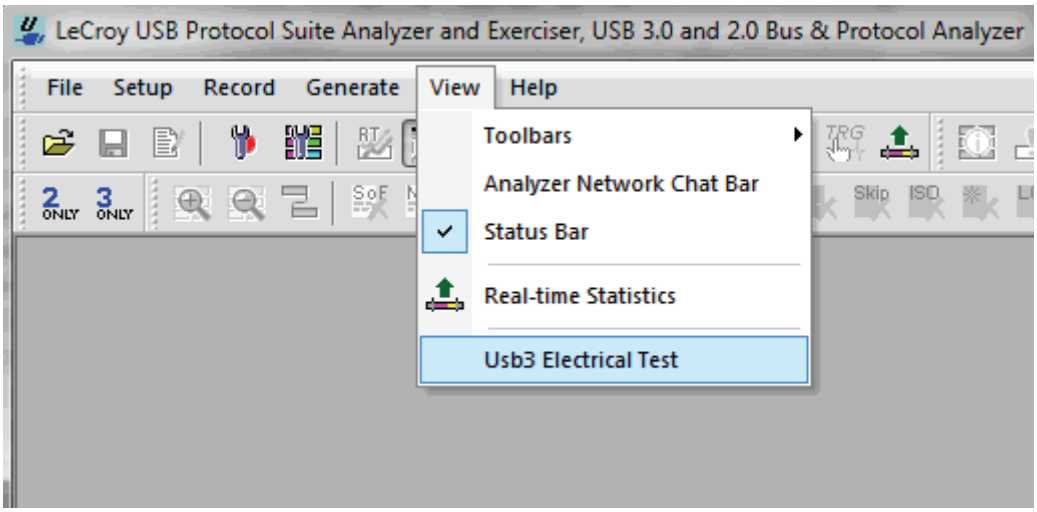

To test a USB Device, in the Recording/Generating section, select **Host Emulation** mode.

To test a USB Host, or the downstream port of a USB 3 hub, select **Device Emulation** mode.

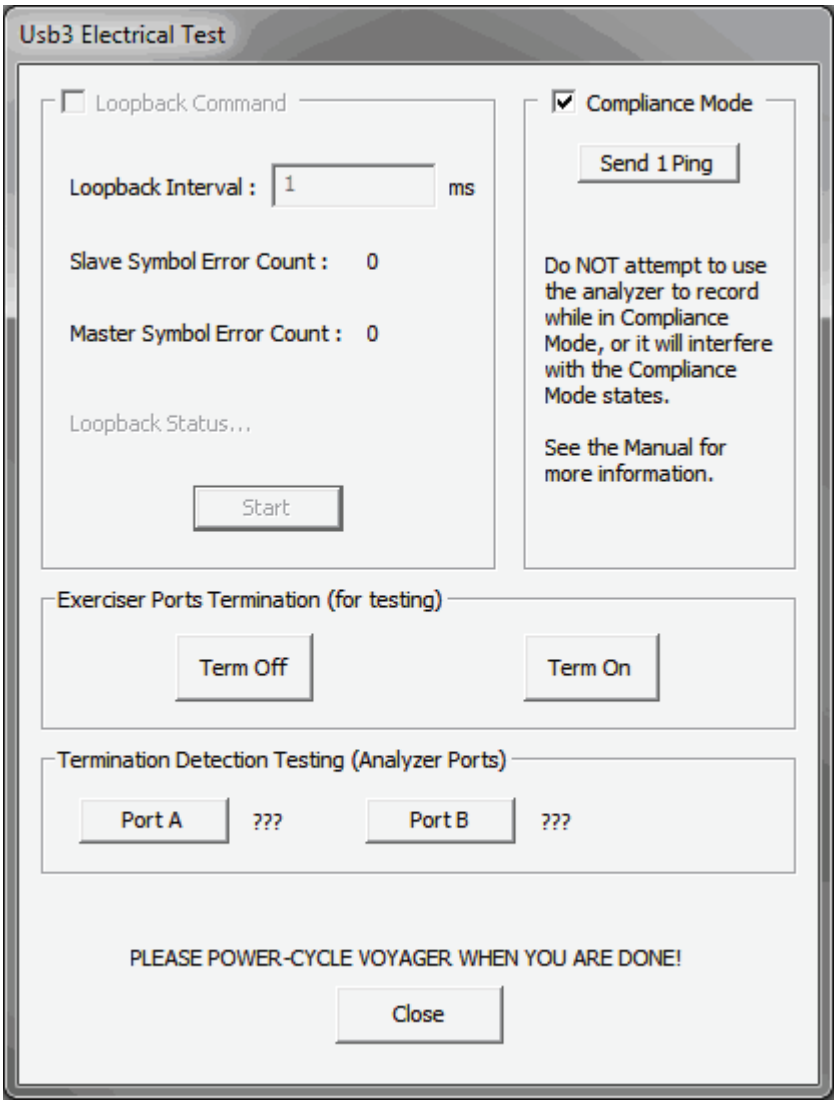
In the M3i USB Connector Termination/RxDetect section, in the Analyzer Ports subsection, select **Manual** termination.

Click the **OK** button to apply the options.

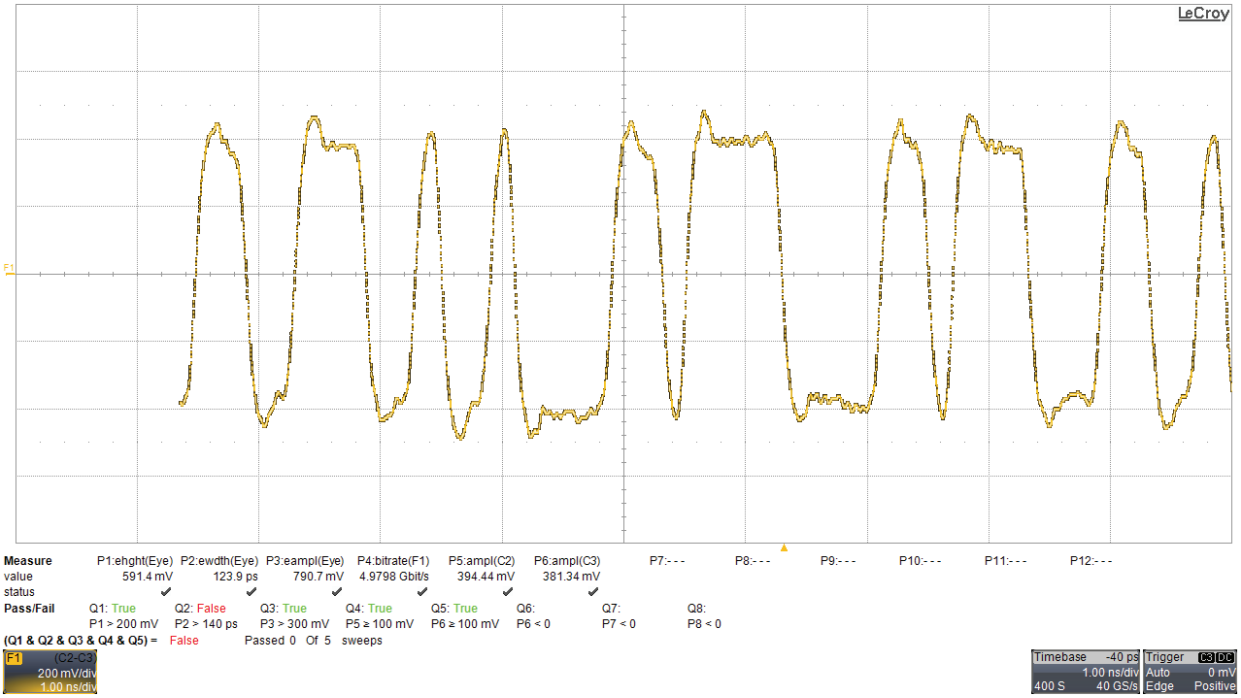
**Step 3** After you set up the system, make sure that the USB cable is NOT plugged into Voyager, and then select **USB3 Electrical Test** from the View menu.



**Step 4** In the USB3 Electrical Test dialog, check the **Compliance Mode** box.

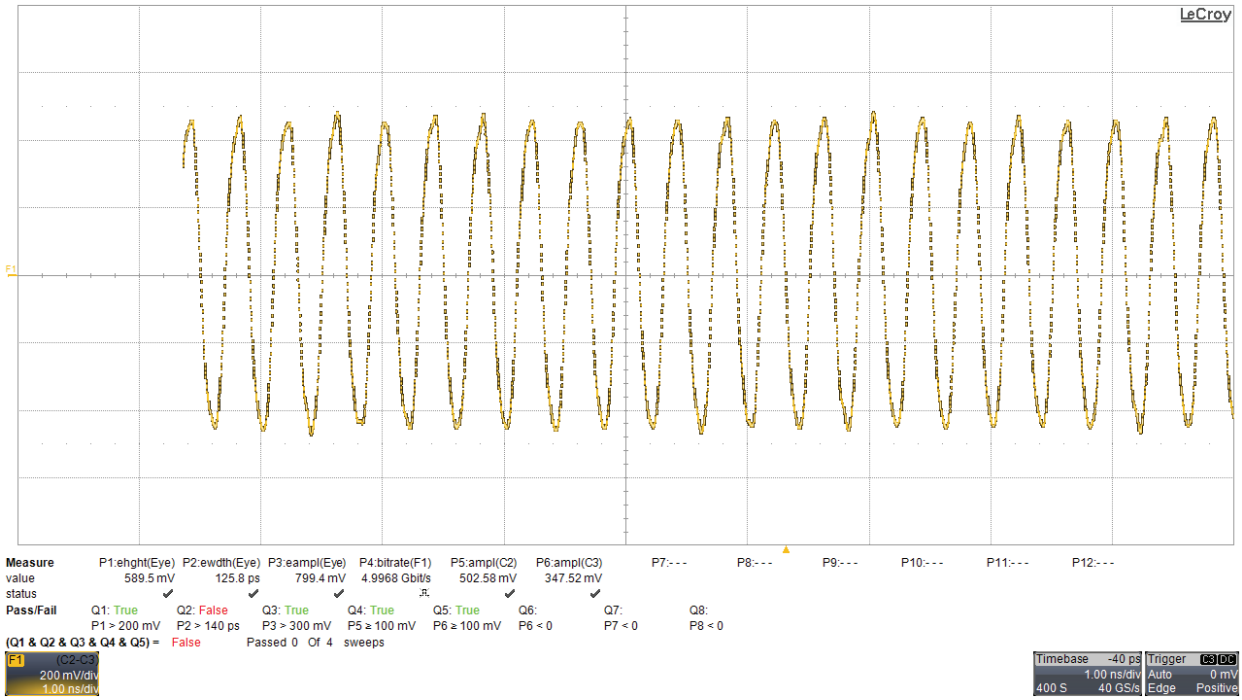


**Step 5** To test the USB 3 signals, first connect the DUT/HUT to the appropriate Exerciser port. Do not click any buttons. The DUT/HUT should see termination on the port, but no LFPS signaling, and go to the CP0 pattern.

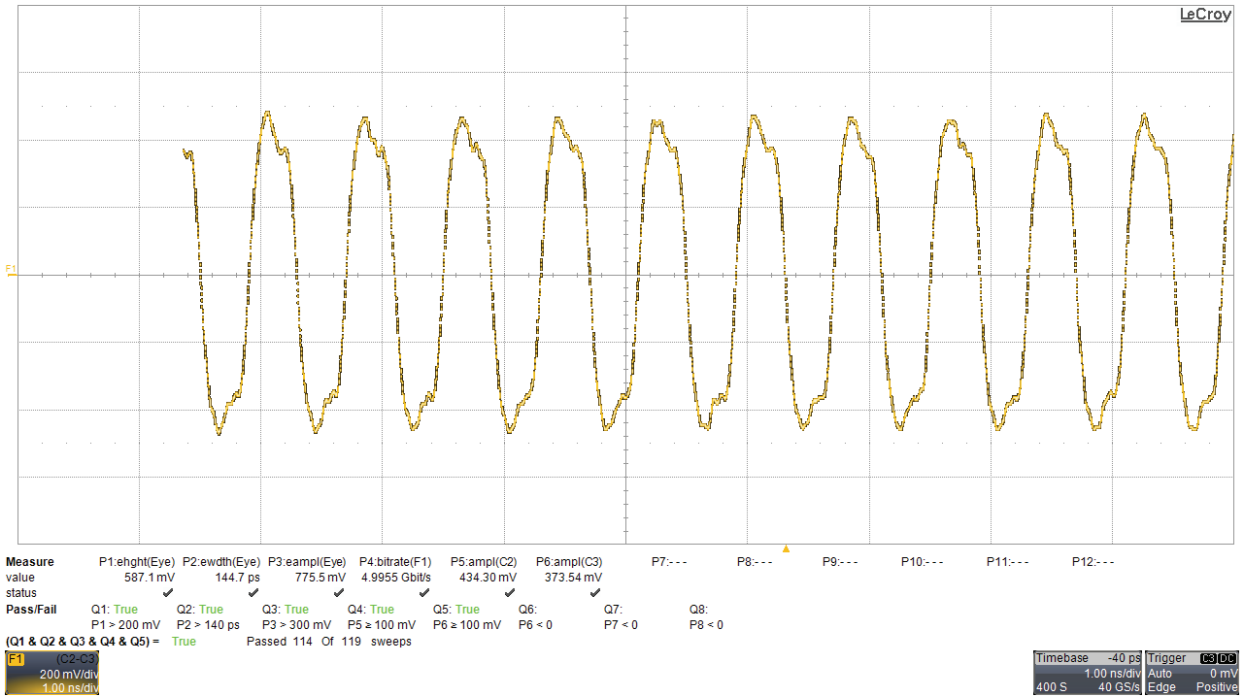

LeCroy
F1
Measure P1:ehght(Eye) P2:ewdth(Eye) P3:eampl(Eye) P4:bitrate(F1) P5:ampl(C2) P6:ampl(C3) P7:- - - P8:- - - P9:- - - P10:- - - P11:- - - P12:- - -
value 591.4 mV 123.9 ps 790.7 mV 4.9798 Gbit/s 394.44 mV 381.34 mV
status
Pass/Fail Q1: True Q2: False Q3: True Q4: True Q5: True Q6: Q7: Q8:
P1 > 200 mV P2 > 140 ps P3 > 300 mV P5 ≥ 100 mV P6 ≥ 100 mV P6 < 0 P7 < 0 P8 < 0
(Q1 & Q2 & Q3 & Q4 & Q5) = False Passed 0 Of 5 sweeps
F1 (C2-C3)
200 mV/div
1.00 ns/div
Timebase -40 ps
1.00 ns/div
400 S 40 GS/s
Trigger
Auto 0 mV
Edge Positive

**Typical CP0 Pattern**

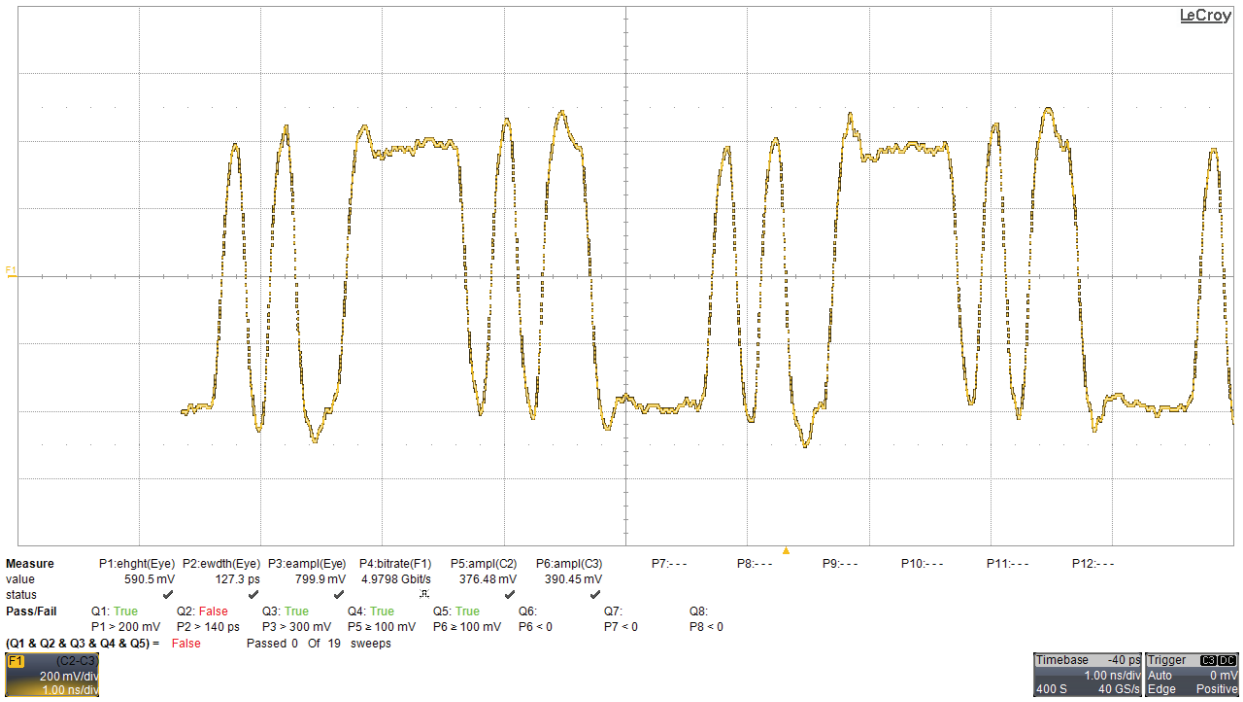
**Step 6** To display subsequent Compliance patterns, click the **Send 1 Ping** button once for each advance to the next pattern. The following photos show the appearance of the signals for each CP pattern, as captured by a LeCroy oscilloscope. Use these photos as guides to verify that you are seeing expected patterns.


LeCroy
Measure P1:ehght(Eye) P2:ewdth(Eye) P3:eampl(Eye) P4:bitrate(F1) P5:ampl(C2) P6:ampl(C3) P7:--- P8:--- P9:--- P10:--- P11:--- P12:---
value 589.5 mV 125.8 ps 799.4 mV 4.9968 Gbit/s 502.58 mV 347.52 mV
status
Pass/Fail Q1: True Q2: False Q3: True Q4: True Q5: True Q6: Q7: Q8:
P1 > 200 mV P2 > 140 ps P3 > 300 mV P5 ≥ 100 mV P6 ≥ 100 mV P6 < 0 P7 < 0 P8 < 0
(Q1 & Q2 & Q3 & Q4 & Q5) = False Passed 0 Of 4 sweeps
F1 (C2-C3) 200 mV/div 1.00 ns/div
Timebase -40 ps 1.00 ns/div 400 S 40 GS/s
Trigger Auto Edge 0 mV Positive

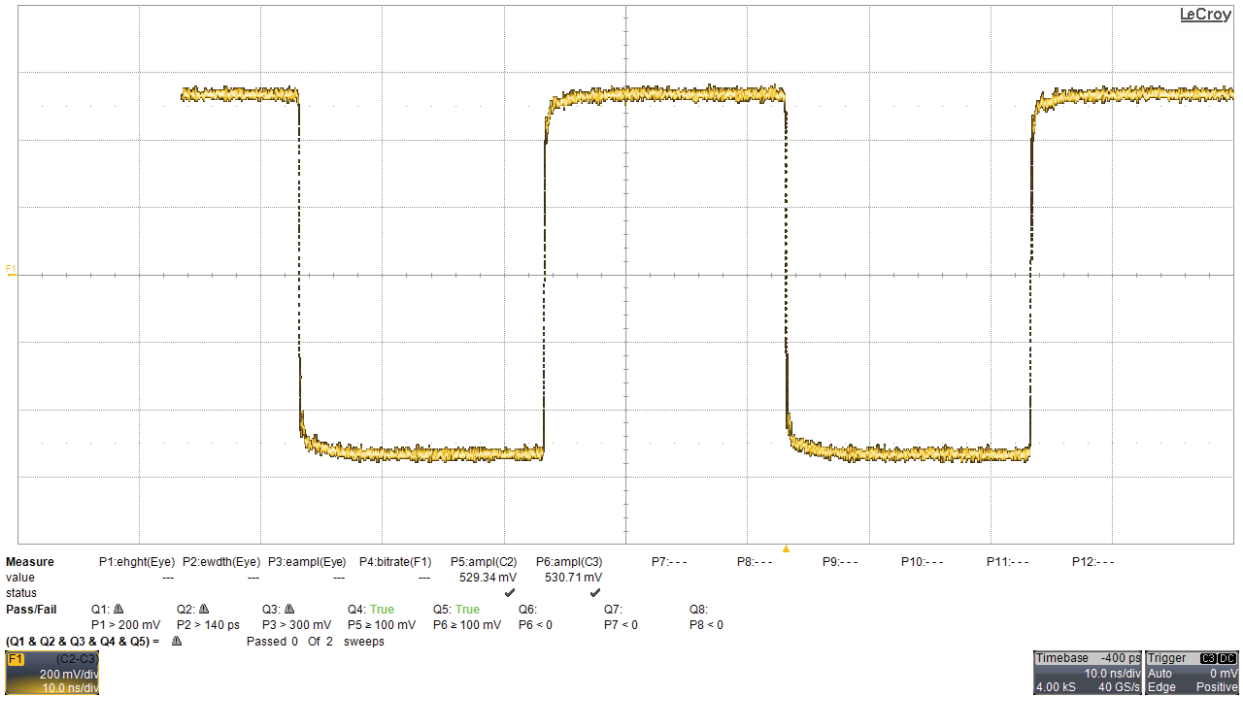
**Typical CP1 Pattern.**


LeCroy
Measure P1:ehght(Eye) P2:ewdth(Eye) P3:eampl(Eye) P4:bitrate(F1) P5:ampl(C2) P6:ampl(C3) P7:--- P8:--- P9:--- P10:--- P11:--- P12:---
value 587.1 mV 144.7 ps 775.5 mV 4.9955 Gbit/s 434.30 mV 373.54 mV
status
Pass/Fail Q1: True Q2: True Q3: True Q4: True Q5: True Q6: Q7: Q8:
P1 > 200 mV P2 > 140 ps P3 > 300 mV P5 ≥ 100 mV P6 ≥ 100 mV P6 < 0 P7 < 0 P8 < 0
(Q1 & Q2 & Q3 & Q4 & Q5) = True Passed 114 Of 119 sweeps
F1 (C2-C3) 200 mV/div 1.00 ns/div
Timebase -40 ps 1.00 ns/div 400 S 40 GS/s
Trigger Auto Edge 0 mV Positive

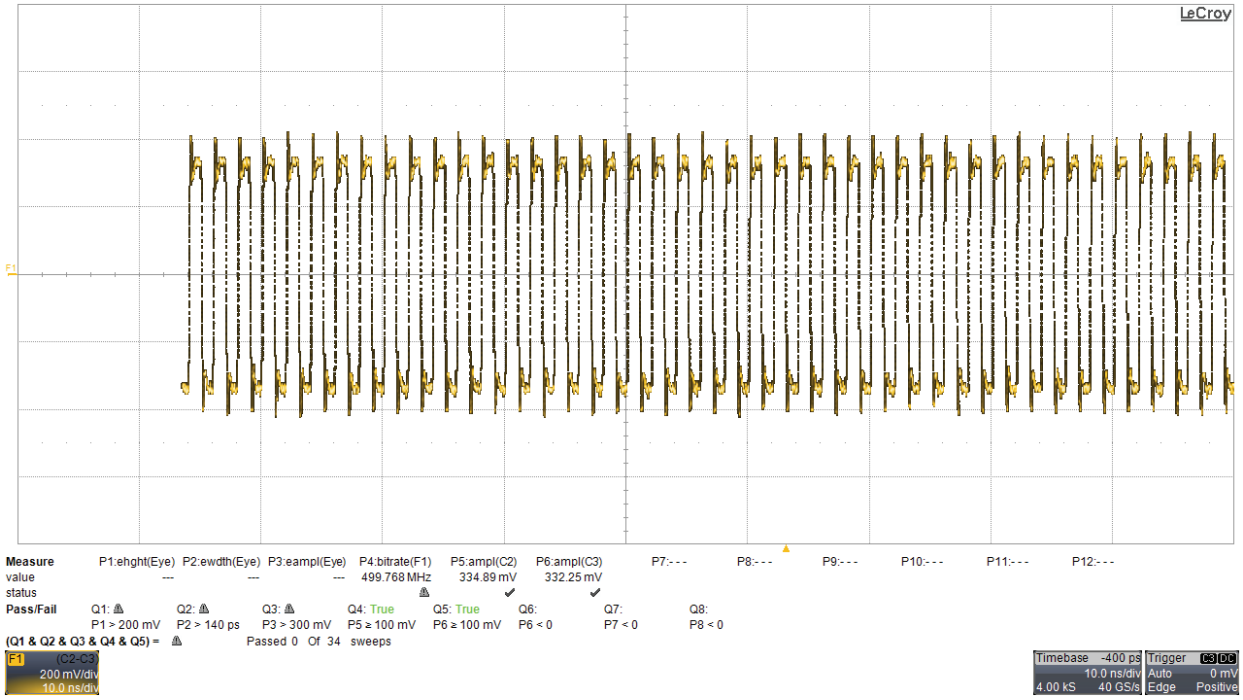
**Typical CP2 Pattern**


LeCroy
Measure P1:ehght(Eye) P2:ewdth(Eye) P3:eampl(Eye) P4:bitrate(F1) P5:ampl(C2) P6:ampl(C3) P7:--- P8:--- P9:--- P10:--- P11:--- P12:---
value 590.5 mV 127.3 ps 799.9 mV 4.9798 Gbit/s 376.48 mV 390.45 mV
status
Pass/Fail Q1: True Q2: False Q3: True Q4: True Q5: True Q6: Q7: Q8:
P1 > 200 mV P2 > 140 ps P3 > 300 mV P5 ≥ 100 mV P6 < 0 P7 < 0 P8 < 0
(Q1 & Q2 & Q3 & Q4 & Q5) = False Passed 0 Of 19 sweeps
F1 (C2-C3) 200 mV/div 1.00 ns/div
Timebase -40 ps 1.00 ns/div 400 S 40 GS/s
Trigger C3 DC Auto 0 mV Edge Positive

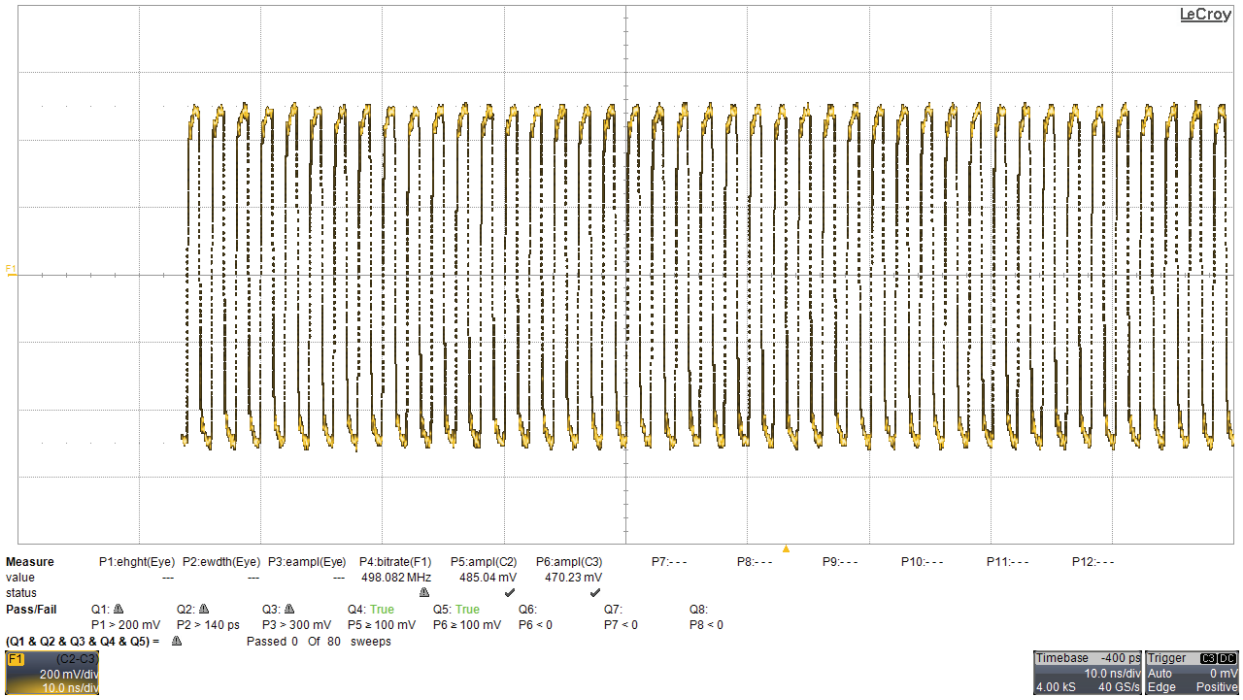
**Typical CP3 Pattern**


LeCroy
Measure P1:ehght(Eye) P2:ewdth(Eye) P3:eampl(Eye) P4:bitrate(F1) P5:ampl(C2) P6:ampl(C3) P7:--- P8:--- P9:--- P10:--- P11:--- P12:---
value --- --- --- --- 529.34 mV 530.71 mV
status
Pass/Fail Q1: Q2: Q3: Q4: True Q5: True Q6: Q7: Q8:
P1 > 200 mV P2 > 140 ps P3 > 300 mV P5 ≥ 100 mV P6 < 0 P7 < 0 P8 < 0
(Q1 & Q2 & Q3 & Q4 & Q5) = Passed 0 Of 2 sweeps
F1 (C2-C3) 200 mV/div 10.0 ns/div
Timebase -400 ps 10.0 ns/div 4.00 kS 40 GS/s
Trigger C3 DC Auto 0 mV Edge Positive

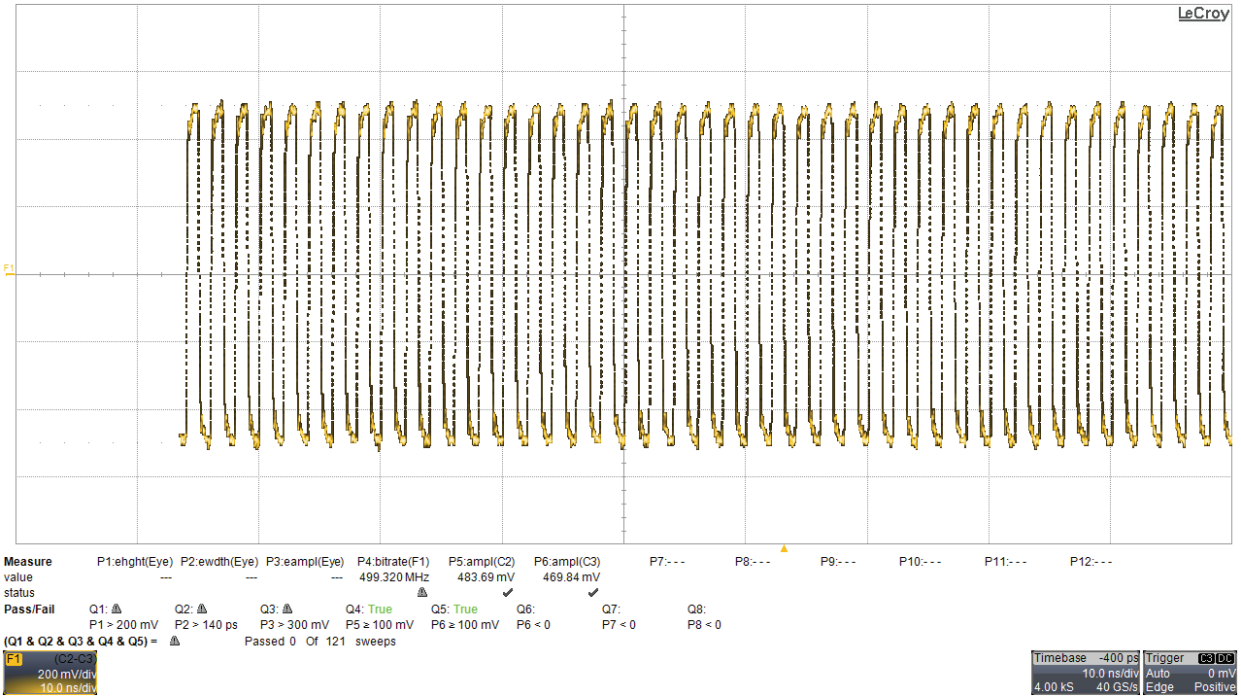
**Typical CP5 Pattern**


LeCroy
F1
Measure P1:ehght(Eye) P2:ewdth(Eye) P3:eampl(Eye) P4:bitrate(F1) P5:ampl(C2) P6:ampl(C3) P7:--- P8:--- P9:--- P10:--- P11:--- P12:---
value --- --- --- 499.768 MHz 334.89 mV 332.25 mV
status
Pass/Fail Q1: Q2: Q3: Q4: True Q5: True Q6: Q7: Q8:
P1 > 200 mV P2 > 140 ps P3 > 300 mV P5 ≥ 100 mV P6 ≥ 100 mV P6 < 0 P7 < 0 P8 < 0
(Q1 & Q2 & Q3 & Q4 & Q5) = Passed 0 Of 34 sweeps
F1 (C2-C3)
200 mV/div
10.0 ns/div
Timebase -400 ps
10.0 ns/div
4.00 kS 40 GS/s
Trigger
Auto 0 mV
Edge Positive

**Typical CP6 Pattern.**


LeCroy
F1
Measure P1:ehght(Eye) P2:ewdth(Eye) P3:eampl(Eye) P4:bitrate(F1) P5:ampl(C2) P6:ampl(C3) P7:--- P8:--- P9:--- P10:--- P11:--- P12:---
value --- --- --- 498.082 MHz 485.04 mV 470.23 mV
status
Pass/Fail Q1: Q2: Q3: Q4: True Q5: True Q6: Q7: Q8:
P1 > 200 mV P2 > 140 ps P3 > 300 mV P5 ≥ 100 mV P6 ≥ 100 mV P6 < 0 P7 < 0 P8 < 0
(Q1 & Q2 & Q3 & Q4 & Q5) = Passed 0 Of 80 sweeps
F1 (C2-C3)
200 mV/div
10.0 ns/div
Timebase -400 ps
10.0 ns/div
4.00 kS 40 GS/s
Trigger
Auto 0 mV
Edge Positive

**Typical CP7 Pattern**


LeCroy
F1
Measure P1:ehght(Eye) P2:ewdth(Eye) P3:eampl(Eye) P4:bitrate(F1) P5:ampl(C2) P6:ampl(C3) P7:--- P8:--- P9:--- P10:--- P11:--- P12:---
value --- --- --- 499.320 MHz 483.69 mV 469.84 mV
status
Pass/Fail Q1: P1 > 200 mV Q2: P2 > 140 ps Q3: P3 > 300 mV Q4: True P5 ≥ 100 mV Q5: True P6 ≥ 100 mV Q6: P6 < 0 Q7: P7 < 0 Q8: P8 < 0
(Q1 & Q2 & Q3 & Q4 & Q5) = Passed 0 Of 121 sweeps
F1 (C2-C3) 200 mV/div 10.0 ns/div
Timebase -400 ps 10.0 ns/div 4.00 kS 40 GS/s
Trigger C3 DC Auto 0 mV Edge Positive

**Typical CP8 Pattern**

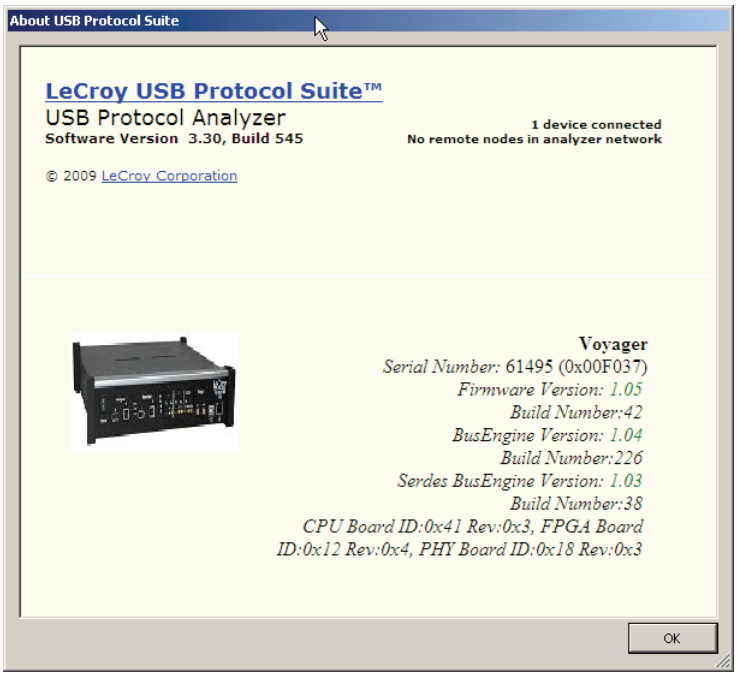
# Chapter 13: Updates

From time to time as modifications are made to the Analyzer, it is necessary to update for optimal performance. Updates can be performed two ways: either automatically or manually. This chapter describes both procedures.

## 13.1 Software, Firmware, and BusEngine Revisions

The **Readme.txt** file on the first installation disk and in the installed directory gives last-minute updates about the current release. Included with each release are the most recent downloadable images of the Firmware and the BusEngine™.

Once the Analyzer has completed the self diagnostics and is connected to the PC, you can check the latest revision of the software and BusEngine by selecting **About** from the **Help** menu.




**About** details revisions of the following software and hardware:

- Software Version
- Unit Serial Number
- Firmware Version
- BusEngine Version
- Serdes BusEngine Version

**Note:** When contacting LeCroy for technical support, please have available the revisions reported in the **About** window.

# 13.2 Software Updates

You can check for software updates manually, or the application can automatically check for updates at startup.

**Note:** To check for software updates and to download available updates, you need an open internet connection.

## 13.2.1 Manual Check for Software Updates

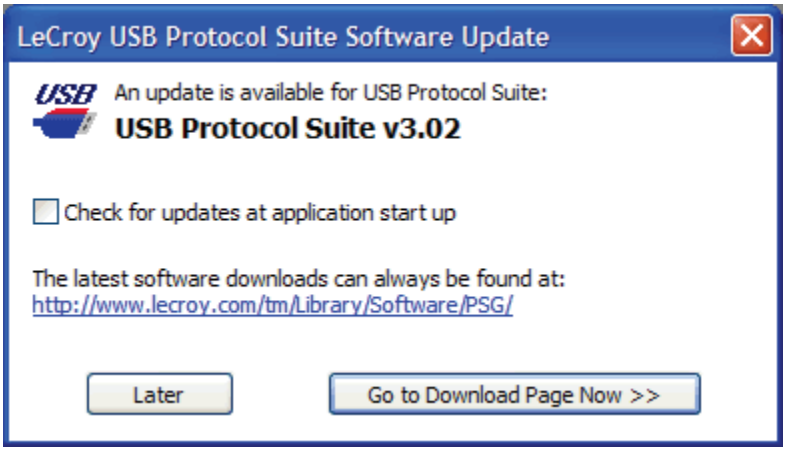
In the application, you can check for software updates:

**Step 1** Select **Help > Check for Updates...** to display the Software Update window.

If no update is available, the window is:

LeCroy USB Protocol Suite Software Update
There are no new updates available for USB Protocol Suite.
Check for updates at application start up
The latest software downloads can always be found at:
http://www.lecroy.com/tm/Library/Software/PSG/
Close

If an update is available, the window is:


LeCroy USB Protocol Suite Software Update
An update is available for USB Protocol Suite:
USB Protocol Suite v3.02
Check for updates at application start up
The latest software downloads can always be found at:
http://www.lecroy.com/tm/Library/Software/PSG/
Later
Go to Download Page Now >>

To install an available update, click **Go to Download Page Now** to go to the LeCroy web site. Follow the on-screen instructions to download and install the software update.

To install available updates later, click **Later** to close the window and return to the application. **Note:** If you select **Later**, when you are later ready to install, again select **Help > Check for Updates…**, then download and install the software update.

## 13.2.2 Automatic Check for Software Updates

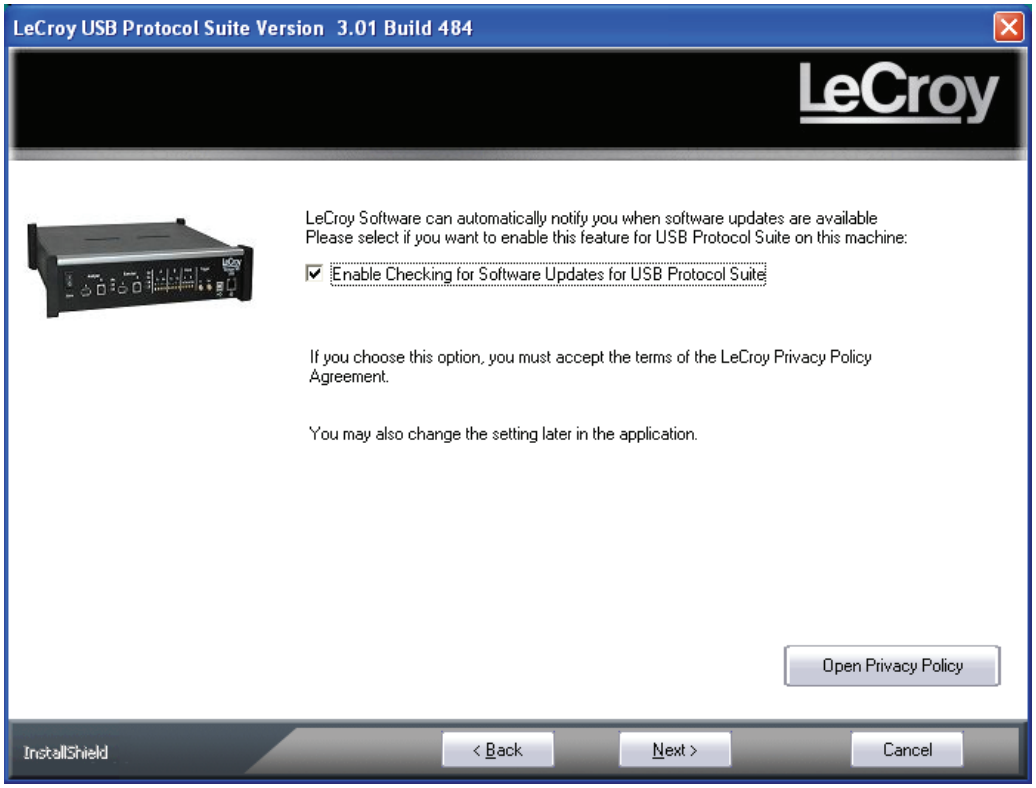
You can set the application to automatically check for software updates, either during software installation or in the installed application.

After enabling automatic software update checking, when you start the application, the application checks for any software updates. If an update is available, the application notifies you. **Note:** To automatically check for software updates, you need an open internet connection.

**Note:** Automatic checking for software updates does not download, install, or update the application. It only notifies you that an update is available. After receiving notification, you must use the Software Update window to download and install the latest version of the application.

### During Software Installation

During software installation, a window asks if you would like to receive automatic notification when software updates are available. Select the checkbox to enable automatic checking for software updates.


LeCroy USB Protocol Suite Version 3.01 Build 484
LeCroy
LeCroy Software can automatically notify you when software updates are available
Please select if you want to enable this feature for USB Protocol Suite on this machine:
Enable Checking for Software Updates for USB Protocol Suite
If you choose this option, you must accept the terms of the LeCroy Privacy Policy Agreement.
You may also change the setting later in the application.
Open Privacy Policy
InstallShield
< Back
Next >
Cancel

When you enable automatic notification of software updates, you accept the LeCroy Privacy Policy Agreement. Click the **Open Privacy Policy** button to view the agreement.

## In the Application

In the application, you can set the software to automatically check for software updates:

**Step 1** Select **Help > Check for Updates...** to display the Software Update window.

If no update is available, the window is:

LeCroy USB Protocol Suite Software Update
There are no new updates available for USB Protocol Suite.
Check for updates at application start up
The latest software downloads can always be found at:
http://www.lecroy.com/tm/Library/Software/PSG/
Close

If an update is available, the window is:

LeCroy USB Protocol Suite Software Update
An update is available for USB Protocol Suite:
USB Protocol Suite v3.02
Check for updates at application start up
The latest software downloads can always be found at:
http://www.lecroy.com/tm/Library/Software/PSG/
Later
Go to Download Page Now >>

**Step 2** To enable automatic checking for software updates, select the **Check for updates at application start up** checkbox.

The next time you open the application, if you have an open internet connection, the application will notify you if an update is available.

# 13.3 BusEngine and Firmware Updates

BusEngine, Serdes BusEngine, and Firmware updates often need to be performed when you update the USB Protocol Suite software. These updates can be performed automatically or manually. Both processes are described.

## 13.3.1 Updating the BusEngines

The BusEngine core is the heart of the Analyzer. Using state-of-the-art Electronically Programmable Logic Device (EPLD) technology, it incorporates both the high speed recording engine and the configurable building blocks that implement data/state/error detections, triggering, capture filtering, external signal monitoring, and event counting and sequencing. The BusEngine program and the Serdes BusEngine program, and the Firmware that manages the internal microcontroller, are fully field upgradeable.

Within a new software release, it may be necessary to update the Analyzer's BusEngine and Serdes BusEngine hardware for proper operation. The Readme file lets you know if this is necessary.

## 13.3.2 Updating the Firmware

Within a new software release, it may also be necessary to update the Analyzer's firmware for proper operation. The Readme file informs you if this is necessary.

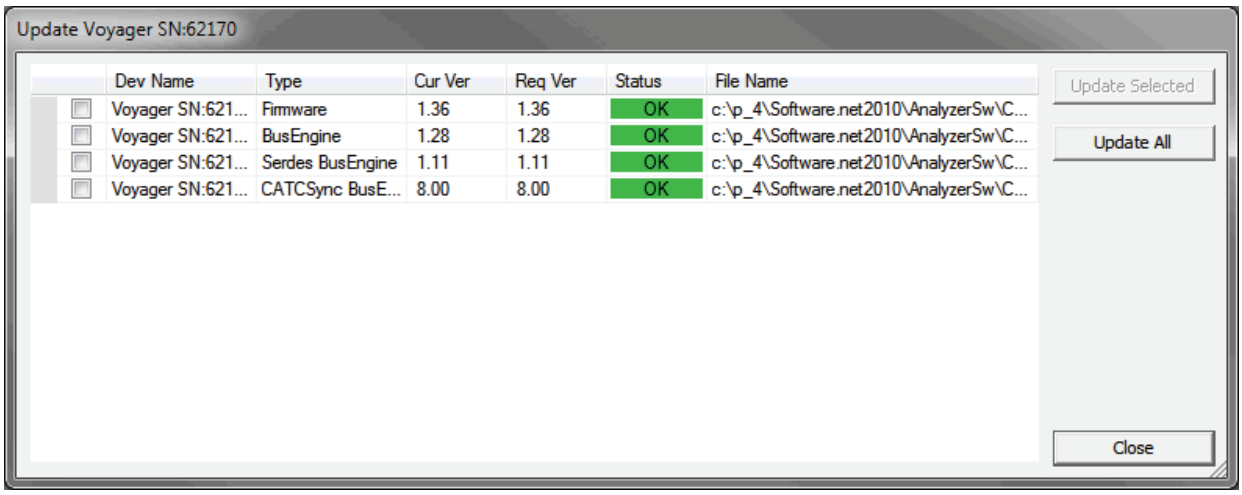
## 13.3.3 Automatic Updates

When the USB Protocol Suite software is upgraded, the software may become incompatible with the BusEngine, Serdes BusEngine, and/or Firmware. The next time you connect to the analyzer, the application will prompt you if any of the components needs to be updated. Follow the on-screen instructions to complete the update.

### 13.3.4 Manual Updates to Firmware, BusEngine, and Serdes BusEngine

You can manually update the Firmware, BusEngine™, and/or Serdes BusEngine by performing the following steps:

**Step 1** Select **Setup > Update Device** on the Menu Bar to display the Update Device dialog:




The dialog shows the Device Name, Type, Current Version, Required Version, Status, and File Name.

**Note**: Updating the CATCSync Bus Engine can take up to 40 minutes. For that reason, it is recommended that you do **not** update it when its current status is "**OK"**.

**Step 2** To update the Firmware, BusEngine, and/or Serdes BusEngine, first select its check box.

**Step 3** Click **Update Selected** or click **Update All** to update all three.

**Note:** The most current files were copied to your **\LeCroy\USB Protocol Suite** directory when you installed the program.

**Step 4** Power cycle the Analyzer. Re-initialization takes a couple of minutes.

# 13.4 License Information

You can view license information by selecting **Display License Information** from the Help menu. The License Information window provides a list of the named features supported by the current software version.

| Feature Title | Purchased | Feature Description |
|---|---|---|
| Hi-Speed Slow Clock | Yes | Hi-Speed Traffic Generated and Traced at Slow Clock rate |
| Exerciser: USB 2.0 Device Emulation | Yes | Device Emulation |
| Hi-Speed Tracing on UPAS 2500H | Yes | Hi-Speed Tracing Enabled (Required on UPAS 2500H only) |
| Capturing: USB 2.0 | Yes | Capture USB 2.0 traffic |
| Capturing: USB 3.0 | Yes | Capture USB 3.0 traffic |
| Memory Size: 512MB | Yes | Recording buffer size up to 512MB |
| Memory Size: 1GB | Yes | Recording buffer size up to 1GB |
| Memory Size: 2GB | Yes | Recording buffer size up to 2GB |
| Memory Size: 4GB | Yes | Recording buffer size up to 4GB |
| Trig/Filt: Limited I | Yes | Trig/Filt: Limited I |
| Trig/Filt: Limited II | Yes | Trig/Filt: Limited II |
| Trig/Filt: Limited III | Yes | Trig/Filt: Limited III |
| Trig/Filt: Advanced | Yes | Trig/Filt: Advanced |
| External Trigger In/Out | Yes | External Trigger In/Out |
| SW Analysis: Link Tracker | Yes | Link Tracker display for debugging link-level behaviors |
| SW Analysis: Traffic Summary | Yes | Traffic Summary reports |
| SW Analysis: Real-Time Statistics | Yes | Real-Time Statistics graphs |
| Exerciser: USB 2.0 Host Emulation | Yes | USB 2.0 Host Emulation |
| Exerciser: USB 3.0 Host Emulation | Yes | USB 3.0 Host Emulation |
| Exerciser: USB 3.0 Device Emulation | Yes | USB 3.0 Device Emulation |
| Automation API | Yes | Automation API |
| USB 3.0 Slow Clock | Yes | USB 3.0 traffic generated and captured at Slow Clock rate |
| USB 3.0 External Slow Clock | Yes | USB 3.0 traffic generated and captured at External Slow Clock rate |
| USB 3.0 SMA Input/Output | Yes | USB 3.0 traffic generated and captured via SMA connectors |
| Host Interface: Gigabit Ethernet | Yes | Gigabit Ethernet link for host interface communications |

Named features enabled on your PC are indicated by **Yes** in the Purchased column. Named features that are not enabled on your PC are indicated by **No** in the Purchased column. Whether or not named features are enabled depends on the license key stored in your analyzer.

If you try to use a feature for which you do not yet have a license, the program displays the License Protection Message. Named features that are not enabled on your PC are indicated by **No** in the Purchased column. To use the feature, you must purchase a license.

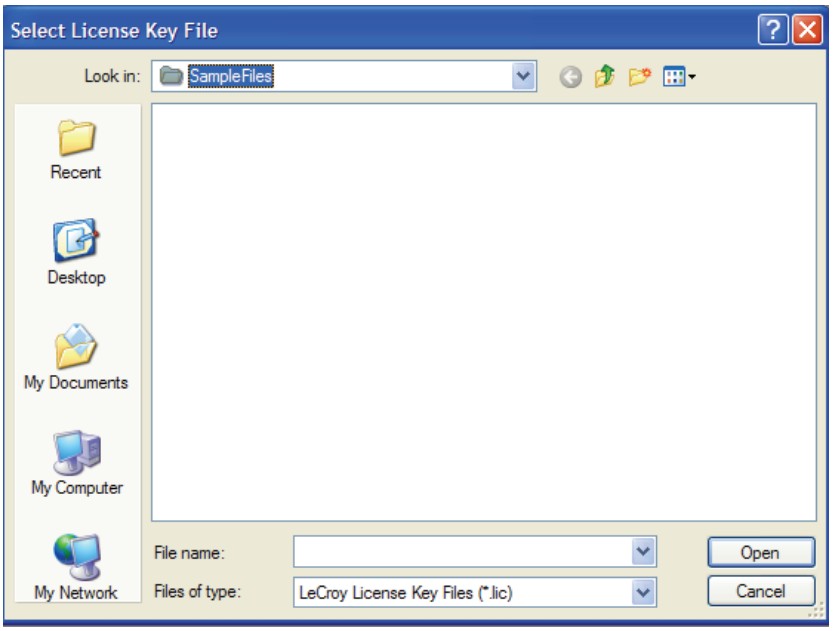
# 13.5 Updating the Software License

A current license agreement with LeCroy entitles the Analyzer owner to continued technical support and access to software updates as they are published on the LeCroy website.

If your license expires, you must obtain a license key from LeCroy (refer to the contact information at the back of this manual.)

After you obtain a license key, follow these steps to install it:

**Step 1** From the Help menu, select **Update License** to display the Select License Key File dialog box.




**Step 2** Enter the path and filename for the license key.

OR

Browse to the directory that contains the license key and select the ***.lic** file.

**Step 3** Click **Open**.

# 13.6 Registering Online

To register the product online, select **Help > Register Product Online**.

# Appendix A: China Restriction of Hazardous Substances Table

The following tables are supplied in compliance with China's Restriction of Hazardous Substances (China RoHS) requirements:

| | 有毒有害物质和元素 | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 部件名称 | 铅 (Pb) | 汞 (Hg) | 镉 (Cd) | 六价铬 ($Cr^{6+}$) | 多溴联苯 (PBB) | 多溴二苯醚 (PBDE) |
| | | | | | | |
| PCBAs | X | O | X | X | X | X |
| 机械硬件 | O | O | X | O | O | O |
| 金属片 | O | O | X | O | O | O |
| 塑料部件 | O | O | O | O | X | X |
| 电源 | X | X | X | O | X | X |
| 电源线 | X | O | X | O | X | X |
| | | | | | | |
| 保护外壳(如有) | O | O | O | O | X | X |
| 电缆组件(如有) | X | O | X | O | X | X |
| 风扇(如有) | X | O | X | O | X | X |
| 交流滤波器和熔丝组件(如有) | X | O | X | O | O | O |
| 外部电源(如有) | X | X | X | O | X | X |
| 探头(如有) | X | O | X | O | X | X |
| | | | | | | |
| O: 表明该有毒有害物质在该部件所有均质材料中的含量均在 SJ/T11363-2006 标准规定的限量要求之下。 | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| X: 表明该有毒有害物质至少在该部件的某一均质材料中的含量超过 SJ/T11363-2006 标准规定的限量要求。 | | | | | | |

EFUP (对环境友好的使用时间) 使用条件：参阅本手册“规范”部分规定的环境条件。

| | Toxic or Hazardous Substances and Elements | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Part Name | Lead (Pb) | Mercury (Hg) | Cadmium (Cd) | Hexavalent Chromium ($Cr^{6+}$) | Polybrominated Biphenyls (PBB) | Polybrominated Diphenyl Ethers (PBDE) |
| | | | | | | |
| PCBAs | X | O | X | X | X | X |
| Mechanical Hardware | O | O | X | O | O | O |
| Sheet Metal | O | O | X | O | O | O |
| Plastic Parts | O | O | O | O | X | X |
| Power Supply | X | X | X | O | X | X |
| Power Cord | X | O | X | O | X | X |
| | | | | | | |
| Protective Case (if present) | O | O | O | O | X | X |
| Cable Assemblies (if present) | X | O | X | O | X | X |
| Fans (if present) | X | O | X | O | X | X |
| AC Filter/Fuse Assy (if present) | X | O | X | O | O | O |
| Ext Power Supply (if present) | X | X | X | O | X | X |
| Probes (if present) | X | O | X | O | X | X |
| | | | | | | |
| O: Indicates that this toxic or hazardous substance contained in all of the homogeneous materials for this part is below the limit requirement specified in SJ/T11363-2006. | | | | | | |
| X: Indicates that this toxic or hazardous substance contained in at least one of the homogenous materials used for this part is above the limit requirement specified in SJ/T11363-2006. | | | | | | |

EFUP (Environmental Friendly Use Period) Use Conditions: refer to the environmental conditions stated in the specifications section of this Manual.

# How to Contact LeCroy

| Type of Service | Contact | |
|---|---|---|
| Call for technical support… | US and Canada: | 1 (800) 909-7112 |
| | Worldwide: | 1 (408) 653-1260 |
| Fax your questions… | Worldwide: | 1 (408) 727-6622 |
| Write a letter… | LeCroy Customer Support<br>3385 Scott Blvd.<br>Santa Clara, CA 95054 | |
| Send e-mail… | psgsupport@lecroy.com | |
| Visit LeCroy's web site… | http://www.lecroy.com/ | |

# Limited Hardware Warranty

So long as you or your authorized representative ("you" or "your"), fully complete and return the registration card provided with the applicable hardware product or peripheral hardware products (each a "Product") within fifteen days of the date of receipt from LeCroy or one of its authorized representatives, LeCroy warrants that the Product will be free from defects in materials and workmanship for a period of 3 years (1 year for USB*Mobile* T2) (the "Warranty Period"). You may also complete your registration form via the internet by visiting http://www.catc.com/support/register/. The Warranty Period commences on the earlier of the date of delivery by LeCroy of a Product to a common carrier for shipment to you or to LeCroy's authorized representative from whom you purchase the Product.

## What this Warranty Does Not Cover

This warranty does not cover damage due to external causes including accident, damage during shipment after delivery to a common carrier by LeCroy, abuse, misuse, problems with electrical power, including power surges and outages, servicing not authorized by LeCroy, usage or operation not in accordance with Product instructions, failure to perform required preventive maintenance, software related problems (whether or not provided by LeCroy), problems caused by use of accessories, parts or components not supplied by LeCroy, Products that have been modified or altered by someone other than LeCroy, Products with missing or altered service tags or serial numbers, and Products for which LeCroy has not received payment in full.

## Coverage During Warranty Period

During the Warranty Period, LeCroy or its authorized representatives will repair or replace Products, at LeCroy's sole discretion, covered under this limited warranty that are returned directly to LeCroy's facility or through LeCroy's authorized representatives.

## How to Obtain Warranty Service

To request warranty service, you must complete and return the registration card or register via the internet within the fifteen day period described above and report your covered warranty claim by contacting LeCroy Technical Support or its authorized representative.

You can reach LeCroy Technical Support at 800-909-7112 or via email at psgsupport@lecroy.com. You may also refer to the LeCroy website at http://www.lecroy.com for more information on how to contact an authorized representative in your region. If warranty service is required, LeCroy or its authorized representative will issue a Return Material Authorization Number. You must ship the Product back to LeCroy or its authorized representative, in its original or equivalent packaging, prepay shipping charges, and insure the shipment or accept the risk of loss or damage during shipment. LeCroy must receive the Product prior to expiration of the Warranty Period for the repair(s) to be covered. LeCroy or its authorized representative will thereafter ship the repaired or replacement Product to you freight prepaid by LeCroy if you are located in the continental United States. Shipments made outside the continental United States will be sent freight collect.

Please remove any peripheral accessories or parts before you ship the Product. LeCroy does not accept liability for lost or damaged peripheral accessories, data or software.

LeCroy owns all parts removed from Products it repairs. LeCroy may use new and/or reconditioned parts, at its sole discretion, made by various manufacturers in performing warranty repairs. If LeCroy repairs or replaces a Product, the Warranty Period for the Product is not extended.

If LeCroy evaluates and determines there is “no trouble found” in any Product returned or that the returned Product is not eligible for warranty coverage, LeCroy will inform you of its determination. If you thereafter request LeCroy to repair the Product, such labor and service shall be performed under the terms and conditions of LeCroy's then current repair policy. If you chose not to have the Product repaired by LeCroy, you agree to pay LeCroy for the cost to return the Product to you and that LeCroy may require payment in advance of shipment.

## General Provisions

THIS LIMITED WARRANTY GIVES YOU SPECIFIC LEGAL RIGHTS. YOU MAY HAVE ADDITIONAL RIGHTS THAT VARY BY JURISDICTION. LECROY'S RESPONSIBILITY FOR DEFECTS IN MATERIALS AND WORKMANSHIP IS LIMITED TO REPAIR AND REPLACEMENT AS SET FORTH IN THIS LIMITED WARRANTY STATEMENT. EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY STATED IN THIS WARRANTY STATEMENT, LECROY DISCLAIMS ALL EXPRESS AND IMPLIED WARRANTIES FOR ANY PRODUCT INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF AND CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, AND ANY WARRANTIES THAT MAY ARISE FROM ANY COURSE OF DEALING, COURSE OF PERFORMANCE OR TRADE USAGE. SOME JURISDICTIONS MAY NOT ALLOW LIMITATIONS ON HOW LONG AN IMPLIED WARRANTY LASTS, SO THE PRECEDING LIMITATION MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

LECROY DOES NOT ACCEPT LIABILITY BEYOND THE REMEDIES SET FORTH IN THIS LIMITED WARRANTY STATEMENT OR FOR INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY LIABILITY FOR THIRD PARTY CLAIMS AGAINST YOU FOR DAMAGES, PRODUCTS NOT BEING AVAILABLE FOR USE, OR FOR LOST DATA OR SOFTWARE. LECROY'S LIABILITY TO YOU MAY NOT EXCEED THE AMOUNT YOU PAID FOR THE PRODUCT THAT IS THE SUBJECT OF A CLAIM. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE PRECEDING EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

The limited warranty on a Product may be transferred for the remaining term if the then current owner transfers ownership of the Product and notifies LeCroy of the transfer. You may notify LeCroy of the transfer by writing to Technical Support at LeCroy, 3385 Scott Blvd., Santa Clara, CA 95054 USA or by email at: support@catc.com. Please include the transferring owner's name and address, the name and address of the new owner, the date of transfer, and the Product serial number.

# Index

## Symbols

.csv file 70
.dec files 155
.lic file 352
.usb files 86
.utg file 70
.utg files 283, 309

## Numerics

2-stage SOF hiding 151
3.0 Exerciser 307
5-volt pin 38, 45

## A

About
  command 345
  window 345
About window 56
Abstract Control Model .dec file 155
AC
  connector module 34
AC connector module 42
Accurate Time Management 2
Action
  button 254
  pop-up menu 254
  Properties dialog 255
actions
  assigning 253
  events 253, 256
Actions submenu 255
Add Analyzer Network Node dialog 61
Add Counter option 255
Add Ethernet Attached Device dialog 57
Addr & Endp search criteria 130
Addr field 159
address and endpoint 135
address/endpoint combination 105
Advance the Sequence button 254
Advanced Recording Options Mode 222
Advisor T3 20
All Connected Devices command 57
Analyzer
  bus 12
  front panel 41
  rear panel 41
  setup 43, 51, 52
  traffic 12
Analyzer Devices dialog 57
Analyzer LEDs 30
Analyzer Network Chat Bar 73
Analyzer Network command 61
Analyzer Network dialog 61
Analyzer Ports 30
Analyzer Speed options 238
application
  startup 69
Application startup 56
architecture
  network 13
assigning actions 253
ATM Networking Control Model .dec file 155
Audio Class .dec file 155
Audio Class decoding 2.0 155
automatic
  updates 349
Available Events Area 247

## B

Bar option 189
Basic Recording Options Mode 222
bits 100
Bitstream mode 291
Bitstream vs. Intelliframe 291
blue current-position indicator 203
blue highlight 313
Bookmarks 313
branching 262
Breakout Board 38, 40, 45
brown highlight 313

BT .dec file 158
buffer size 18
Buffer Size box 234
Bulk/Int Transfer field 162
bus
  analyzer 12
  condition 294
  condition keys 303
Bus Conditions 131
Bus Conditions shortcuts 92
bus data
  recording 272
Bus Reset 151
Bus Usage option 220
Bus Utilization
  buttons 188
  report 186
BusEngine 3
  manual updating 350
  technology 3
  update 349
buttons
  bus utilization 188
  Detach Device 41
  Manual Trigger 41
  real-time statistics 218
  Script Editor 287, 312, 316, 317, 327
  tool bar descriptions 78
Bytes box 239

## C

cable
  connector 38
Cable Based Association Framework .dec file 158
cables 40
  connectors 45
  USB 46
CAPI Control Model .dec file 155
cascading 53
CATC SYNC port 53
CATC Trace 17, 40
  recording 67
  set marker 95
CATC Trace View 119
Cell pop-up menu 254
cells 252
  highlight 252
  types 252
Channel
  search 132
Channel 0 or Channel 1 packets 151
Channel field 329
channels
  recording 18
Check for Updates command 346, 348
Check Syntax command 70
Chirp Bus conditions 151
Chirped packets 105
chirps
  hiding 105
class decoding keys 306
class definition files 155
Class Request
  decode 172
Class request, decode 172
Class/Vendor decoding 159
Class/Vendor Decoding field 159
Class/Vendor Decoding Groups menu 160
Class/Vendor Endpoint Decoding
  field 162
  menu 163
Class/Vendor endpoint RPipes decoding 167, 169
Classic LED 34
Classic Speed port 41
Clear Marker command 96
Clear Quick Timing Marker command 97
clock 30, 238
  rate 16
  selection 238
Clock/Speed Selection 240
collapse 314
Collapse Idle 196
Collapse Idle Plus. 196
Collapse This USB Transfer command 114
Collapsible Idle Time 195
colors
  Display Options 147
command modifiers 313
Command Properties window 313
commands 313
comments 313
  editing 124
Communication Device Subclass/EEM .dec file 155
Communications and CDC Control .dec file 155
Communications Device Class (CDC) Data 157
Communications Device Class (CDC) Data .dec file 157
Compare Endpoint Data command 70
Compile command 320

components 40
physical 7, 14, 18, 22, 26
system 33
Compressed CATC Trace 119
Config Status Indicator 247
Configuration Name option 145
connect
Trainer 307
connecting
cables 51, 52, 65
Trainer 277
Connection Properties dialog 57
connections
cable 45
connector pin-out 46
to a PC 46
connector
cable 38
Data In/Out 38
DB-25 13, 34
DB-9 42
descriptions 39
module 34
connectors 35, 42, 44, 45
contents of package 40
Continuous Time Scale 196
Control Transfer 170
Control Transfer field 170
Conventional Single Buffer Recording 233
convert.usb file 69
Copy Event to option 255
copying events 255
counter 2
counters 255
counting 3
creating
generation file 292
CrossSync Control Panel User Manual 90
current-position indicator 203
Customize
command 83
dialog box 83

## D

Data Block
viewing 104
Data Block dialog box 104
data connectors
pin descriptions 39
data fields
collapse 101
expand 101
pop-up menus 102
Data In/Out connector 38, 45
data length 134
search for 130
Data option 70, 145
Data Packet Count option 220
Data Pattern Mask and Match 141, 258
Data Payload Throughput option 220
Data View command 183
Data View window 183
data.usb file 86
DB-25 connector 13, 34
Decode
decoding options 159
decode
class request 172
endpoint 162, 173
endpoint DWA RPipes 169
endpoint RPipes 167
general options for requests 170
hub status 173
layout 174
protocol-specific fields 115
request recipient 159
Request RPipe 166, 168
requests 170, 171
standard request 171
vendor requests 172
Decode ... Request command 172
Decode as ... Endp command 173
Decode Standard Request command 171
decoded transactions, viewing 110
decoded transfers 113
decoder files 155
decoding
assigning 159
refresh 170
defining packet fields 295
Delay Time 292
Delete button 255
Delete selected item button 323
Delete This Event option 255
deleting events 255
delimiters 203
Delta Time 98
Descrambling 240, 245
description 12
product 40

Detach Device button 41
Detach Device switch 18, 44
Detail View window 205
detailed installation 33
device
  emulation 291, 292
Device Emulation mode 292
Device Information 324
Device IP Settings dialog 59
Device Management Model 155
Device Requests 170
Device Resumes option 292
Device Wire Adapter .dec file 158
Device Wire Adapter Segment View 116
Device Wire Adapter Transfer View 116
devices
  hiding 105
DHCP 58
DHCP network 52
diagnostics 51
dimensions 44
Direct Line Control Model .dec file 155
direction
  search 142
Direction field 162
display
  configuration name 145
  format 67
  graphs 220
  options 9, 15, 24
  windows 310
Display License Information 351
Display Options 19
  Color/Format/Hiding tab 146
  factory settings 145
  General 144
  level hiding 151, 152
  loading 153
  saving 153
  values 145
  window 143
Divide By field 238
Downstream Packets 106
Downstream port link status 208
dragging buttons 252
DWA RPipes
  endpoints 169

## E

Edit as Text command 70, 286
Edit Comment command 70, 124
Edit comment for trace file window 124
Edit Marker Comment
  command 96
  window 95
Edit script command 214
editing
  comment 124
  generation file 286
  marker 96, 97, 99
  script 313
electrical
  fuse 34
  power switch 34
Electrical Idles 106
Electrically Programmable Logic Device 3
Electronically Programmable Logic Device 349
e-mail 355
emulation 291, 292
Enable IntelliSense option 314
Enable Outlining command 287
Enable Outlining option 314
Enable Tips option 144
Endp field 162
endpoint
  configuration keys 297
  decoding 162
Endpoint RPipes
  dialog box 167, 169
  tab 167, 169
Endpoints
  tab 162
endpoints
  decoding 173
  DWA RPipes 169
  RPipes 167
Endpoints dialog box 162
environment 44
environmental conditions 32, 36
EPLD 3, 349
error
  detection 2
error log 288, 317
Error Summary report 179
errors 313
  searching for 129
  summary 179
Errors pane 202
Ethernet connection 52
Ethernet connector 31
Ethernet Networking Control Model .dec file 155

Event buttons
creating 251
dragging 252
Event pop-up menu 255
Event Properties dialog 255
Event Trigger recording 231
events 3
actions 253, 256
buttons 251
copying 255
deleting 255
moving 255
events for USB 2.0 256, 257
Events Group box 139
events USB 3.0 267
Exclusion search 140
Exerciser LEDs 30
Exerciser menus 310
Exerciser Ports 30
expand 314
Expand Packet Data 144
Expand Script Decodes 144
Expand This USB Transfer command 114
Expand Transaction menu 111
Export command 70, 283
Export dialog 329
Export to Generator Text window 285
Export to Script button 329
exporting
Trace to a Traffic Generation File 329
exporting to a .utg file 77
external clock 30
External Interface Breakout Board 38, 45
external interface connector 34, 42
External Trigger Out with Simple Triggers
checkbox 241
External Trigger Pulse
HIGH option 255

## F

fax 355
features 7, 14, 22
named 351
product 17
trace 67, 93
fields
expanding 101
Fields option 145
file
generation format 294
File Control Keys 295
File Export menu 284
File Information report 177
File menu 70, 310
File Tabs 313
files
.dec 155
.utg 283, 309
editing comment for trace 124
File Control Keys 295
file information 177
generation loading 289, 328
information 177
loading generation 289, 328
script 155
tabs 288
trace filename 236
Files of Type field 289, 328
Filter In
action 254
option 254
Filter Out
action 254
option 254
Filter Out ITP 241, 246
Filter Out Logical Idles and SKPs 241, 246
Filter Out LUP/LDN 241, 246
filtering 3
hardware 12
filters 247
Find
command 138
utility 138
Find Next command 142
firewall 52
firmware
automatic updates 349
update 349
first recording 65
Fit to Graph Area option 219
fonts
changing 145
Fonts and Colors options 190
Fonts option 145
format
display 67
display options 149
fractional clock rate 9, 16
From Frame field 329
Front Panel 41

Full Speed
indicator 34
fuse 34, 42

## G

General Settings 325
General tab
Display Options 144
Recording Options 231
Generate menu 71, 310
generating
traffic 16
generation
file loading 289, 328
formats 294
mode 290, 291
options 292
repeating 291
running 293
session 291
starting 291, 328
generation file
creating 292
editing 286
loading 289, 328
repeat 291
Generation Files option 289
generation script file 292
generator
modules 34
Generator Text File 291
Generator/Analyzer Clocking Overrides option 238
Gigabit Ethernet connector 31
Gigabit field 241
glass fuse 34, 42
Go to
Marker search 126
Packet/Transaction/Transfer... search 126
Trigger search 125
USB2.0 127
USB3.0 133
Go to Marker command 195
go to next link state 209
go to previous link state 209
Go To SCSI 137
Go to USB2.0
drop-down menu 127, 133
Graph Areas button 220
Graph Areas menu 191
graphical display 1
graphical scenario 321
Graphical Scenario window 322
Graphical toolbar 327
graphs
displaying multiple 220
Graph Areas menu 191
green comments 313
green LED 34, 41
Grid Lines option 189
Grid on Top option 189
ground pins 38, 45

## H

hardware
filtering 12
header packet type 135
Help command 313
Help menu 75, 311
Hi Speed
recordings 238
HID .dec file 156
Hide buttons 195
Hide Downstream Packets 106
Hide Electrical Idles 106
Hide Inter-Packet Symbols 106
Hide ISO Time Stamp Packets 106
Hide LFPS Packets 107
Hide Link Commands (Flow Control) 105
Hide Link Commands (other than Flow Control) 106
Hide Link Training Sequences 106
Hide LMP Packets 106
Hide Logical Idle Packets 106
Hide option 219
Hide Skip Sequences 106
Hide Upstream Packets 106
hiding
chirps 105
devices 105
display options 150
Idles 195
levels 151, 152
NAKs 105
SOF packets 105
toolbars 83
Hierarchy Lines option 144
High Speed port 41
High, Full, or Low Speed packets 151
highlighting 313
High-Speed traffic 9

Hi-Speed
indicator 34
Hi-Speed traffic 16
HNP 132
Host field 159
Host Negotiation Protocol 132
Host option 132
Host Wire Adapter .dec file 158
Host Wire Adapter Segment View 115
Host Wire Adapter Transfer View 116
hosts
Host Negotiation Protocol 132
with a B plug 132
with an A plug 132
hot keys 91
HS LED 34
Hub .dec file 156
humidity 44
HUT .dec file 156
HWA address field 166

## I

Import command 70
Include statement 288
Include statements 313
independent sequences 262
indicators 36
UPAS 34
information
priority 204
initialization 51
Initiator Settings button 324
Initiator Settings dialog 324
Insert instructions button 323
installation 51
detailed 33, 40
installed unit 33
Installation CD 51
IntelliFrame
button 290
mode 291
Intelliframe LED 34
Interface Association Descriptor .dec file 158
Inter-Packet Symbols 106
Intersection search 140
IP Address 57
IP settings 58
IP Setup 58
ISO Time Stamp Packets 106

## K

Keep Across Recordings checkbox 161
keyboard
shortcuts 91
keys
bus condition 303
class decoding 306
endpoint configuration 297
file control 295
packet fields 304
packet starting 301
support 295
Keys for packet fields 306

## L

layout 174
Layout command 174
LED lights 41
LEDs 34, 36, 44
left module slot 34
Legend option 203
letter 355
LFPS Packets 107
LFPS Settings 325
license
agreement 352
information 351
key 352
updating software 352
License Information window 351
License Protection Message 352
line numbers 287, 314
link command 136
Link Commands (Flow Control) 105
Link Commands (other than Flow Control) 106
Link Configuration Settings 325
Link Delay Settings 325
Link Power Management Settings 325
Link Tracker
buttons 196
toolbar 193
Link Tracker window 193
docking 195
markers 195
reformat 194
Link Training Sequences 106
Link utilization 220
linking states 254
List Values option 288, 317

LMP Packets 106
LMP Subtype 136
Load command 153, 235, 271
log
  error 288, 317
Logical Idle Packets 106
logical objects 117
looping 262
Low Speed
  indicator 34
LTSSM buttons 209
LTSSM View 209
LV TTL output and input signals 38

## M

Main Display Area 193, 247
Main Exerciser toolbar 312
Manual Trigger button 34, 41
Manual Trigger recording 231
Manual Trigger switch 44
Map DWA RPipe to Class/Vendor Decoding command 168
Map Endpoint to Class/Vendor Decoding command 162
markers 19
  clearing 96, 97
  defining 95
  editing 96
  setting 95, 195
Mass Storage .dec file 156
Maximum Disk Usage 233
Media Transfer Protocol 117
memory 18, 32, 37
  recording 44
  requirements 234
menus
  graph areas 191
  pull-down 70, 310
  real-time statistics 219
  view settings 189
Merge Trace Files command 70, 273
merging
  trace files 273
Micro Frames 18
Misc USB 2.0 tab
  recording options 237
Misc USB 3.0 tab
  recording options 240, 245
MMCx plug connectors for interfacing 30
Mobile Direct Line Model 155
mode
  Bitstream 291
  collapsed 144
  device emulation 292
  expanded 144
  generation 290
  Repeat 290
  traffic generation 291
modules
  generator 34
Monitor .dec file 156
monitoring statistics 217
Move Event to option 255
moving events 255
MTP 117
Multi-Channel Control Model .dec file 155
multi-state sequences 250

## N

NAK'ed transactions 151
NAKs 105
  hiding 105
name of Recording Options settings 235
navigating 198
navigation
  shortcuts 91
  tools 89
Navigation Bar checkbox 198
Navigator 198
  displaying 198
  legend 203
  panes 199, 202
  range 200, 201
  ranges 199
  slider 203
  toolbar 199
Navigator Legend dialog box 203
Navigator Panes button 203
Navigator Range button 201
network 13, 52
New Event
  button 251
  option 254
  pop-up menu 251
New Generation Scenario button 318
New script command 214
No Decoding option 161
None option 189
number of transitions 209

## O

OBEX Model 155
object handles 117
object transfers 117
On the Go, searching 132
open trace, verification script 212
operating range 44
opt files 153
Option button 326
options
    display 9, 15, 24
    recording 8, 15, 23
    search 125
options file 145
Options menu 184, 314
Options Name field 235
orange LED 34
Orient Horizontally option 189
Orient Vertically option 189
OTG shortcuts 92
outlining 314
output windows 213
overview 17, 25, 28
    software 69

## P

package 35
package contents 40
Packet # field 95
Packet Direction field 94
packet fields keys 304
Packet label 100
Packet menu 95
packet starting keys 301
packet type 133
packet types
    USB 3.0 94
Packet View 108
packets
    defining fields 295
    definition 294
    display level 145
    hiding SOF 105
    packet starting keys 301
    searching for IDs 128
    view 67
Packets to .CSV option 70
Packets to Device Emulation Traffic Generation Text File option 70
Packets to Host Traffic Generator Text File option 70
Packets to Text (Generator Text File Format command 285
Packets to Text option 70
Packets to USB3 Exerciser Script (.usb3g) 70
Packing List 33, 40
packing list 29
pane checkbox 203
parameters 313
Partial Upload 86
Partial Upload button 86
percentages, post triggering 234
Photographic and Imaging Manufacturers Association 157
Physical .dec file 156
physical components 7, 14, 18, 22, 26
Physical Interface .dec file 156
physical memory 234
Picture Transfer Protocol 117
Picture Transfer Protocol .dec file 157
PID shortcuts 91
PIMA 157
pin
    signaling 45
pin-out descriptions 46
pin-outs 39
    descriptions 39
pins 38, 45
Point of Sale Devices .dec file 156
Polarity Inversion 240, 245
pop-up menu
    Script Editor 288, 317
pop-up menus
    data field 102
    Recording Rules 248
pop-up tool tips 105
ports 41
position of trigger 234
post-process analysis 212
post-triggering percentages 234
power
    indicator 34
    indicator LED 41
    on/off switch 34, 42
    requirements 44
    socket 34, 42
    switch 34
Power .dec file 156
power connector 31
Power LED 44

power requirements 32, 35
Power Switch 29
Power Tracker 210
Pre/Post Trigger pane 202
predefined values 313
Printer .dec file 156
probing 32, 36
Process USB3 LTSSM 144
product
  description 12, 40
  features 17
products 231
program
  startup 69
Properties
  option 254
Properties dialog box 219
Properties options
  actions 255
  events 255
protocol
  analyzer 12
  violations 2
protocol for mixed file 142
Protocols of Traffic 202
protocol-specific fields, decode 115
prototype rework area 39, 46
PTP 117
PTP .dec file 157
PTP Object 117
PTP Session 118
PTP Transaction 117
pull-down menus 70, 310
Pulse High format 255
Purchased column 351
PWR indicator 41
PWR LED 34

## R

range delimiters 203
raw bits 100
  viewing 100
Raw Bits View 100
Readme.txt file 19, 345
Real-Time Statistics
  buttons 218
Real-time Statistics
  pop-up menu 219
  window 217
Rear Panel 41
REC indicator 41
REC LED 34
Recently Used Ranges 201
Recipient field 159
Reconnect command 61
Record menu 71
recording
  activity 87
  bus data 272
  channels 18
  first 65
  LED 34
  memory 44
  options 8, 15, 23
  progress 85
  rules 3
  snapshot 231
  status 86
  type 231
Recording LED 44
recording LED 41
Recording Options 18
  command 221
  dialog box 221
  General 231
  loading 235
  Misc. USB 2.0 page 237
  Misc. USB 3.0 page 240, 245
  name 235
  options name 235
  recording 272
  saving 271
Recording Options Summary tab 275
Recording Ports section 240, 245
Recording Rules 256
  page 247, 250
  pop-up menus 248
  toolbar 247, 249
Recording Type box 231
Recording/Generating section 240
red errors 313
red LED 41
red square 313
refresh 170
Refresh Decoding command 75, 122
Refresh Decoding for this Trace File command 170
Refresh Device List command 57
Register Product Online command 352
Remote NDIS 158
Remote Network Driver Interface Specification (RNDIS) 158

Repeat
menu 290
mode 290
Repeating a Generation Session 291
Report menu 72, 175, 176
reports 175
REQ button 322
Request DWA RPipes
tab 168
Request Recipient and Endpoints dialog box 159
Request RPipes 166, 168
dialog box 166, 168
tab 166
requests 170
requirements
power 32, 35
Reset All button 84
Reset Column Widths 195
resetting
Toolbar 83
Restart All option 255
restart options 255
Restart the Sequence option 255
Restore Factory Presets button 145
Restore Factory Presets option 145
Resume
settings 292
revisions
firmware 345
software 345
rework area 39, 46
right module slot 34
RPipe field 166, 168
RPipes 166, 168
endpoints 167
rules
recording 3
restarting 255
validity 247
Run scripts command 213
Run verification script command 214
Run Verification Scripts command 212
Run verification scripts dialog 212

## S

save
Display Options 153
recording options 271
trace files 236
Save as Default command 271
script
editing 313
Script Decoder
files 159
Manual 159
Script Decoding language 159
Script Edit Window 313
Script Editor
buttons 287, 312, 316, 317, 327
pop-up menu 288, 317
toolbar 287
tooltips 314
utility 286
window 286
script files 155
script list 213
Script toolbar 317
Scripts directory 155
SCSI commands 322
SCSI Operations 118
SCSI/Bulk Protocol .dec file 156
SE0 Bus conditions 151
search
complex 138
Direction 140
direction 142
Exclusion 140
feature 125
Intersection 140
menu 73, 125
Origin 140
status 87
Union 140
select a SCSI command from a trace file to use in an Exerciser scenario 327
Select License Key File dialog box 352
Select Range dialog 185
Sequence cells 252
sequences
independent 262
restarting 255
sequencing 3
Serdes BusEngine Version 345
serial number 345
Session Request Protocol 132
sessions 118
set
marker in trace 95
SET button 323
Set End Quick Timing Marker command 98
Set Marker command 95, 195

Set Range Near Packet xxx 201
Set Range to Whole Trace 201
setting
  generation options 292
settings
  Resume 292
Settings command 214, 215
Settings dialog 215
SETUP
  field 170
  transaction 170
setup 51, 52
  system 43
Setup menu 71, 310
shortcuts 91
Show Description window command 214
show Downstream port link states 209
Show Grid command 214
Show Line Numbers command 287
Show Line Numbers option 314
Show Markers option 189
Show Output command 214
Show Plumb Line option 189
Show Protocol 145
Show Raw Bits command 100
Show Tooltips command 287
Show Tooltips option 314
show Upstream port link states 209
Show Values option 288, 317
signal
  descriptions 39
signaling pin 45
Simple Filters section 240
Simple Triggers section 240, 245
single-state sequence 250
Skip Sequences 106
slot
  left module 34
  right module 34
slow clock 242
Slow Clock checkbox 238
Slow Clock command 238
slow clock rate 9, 16
Smart Card .dec file 157
Smart Card Class 157
Snapshot recording 231
SOF hiding 151
SOF packets
  hiding 105
software
  license 352
  updating 346, 348
Software Update window 346, 348
Spec View 206
Spec View command 206
specific error 134
specifications 32, 35, 44
Specify Action option 255
speed 16
speeds 17, 41
Split Transaction View 112
Spooled Recording 233
Spread Spectrum Clock 240, 245
Spreadsheet View 120
SRP 132
Start Export button 329
Start of Frame packets 151
Start Recording command 272
Start/Stop button 34
starting 69
  software 56, 69
  traffic generation 291, 328
Start-of-Frame (SOF) packets 105
State cells 252
states
  linking 254
Static IP 58
statistics
  monitoring 217
Statistics Accumulation option 220
status
  indicator 34
Status bar 85
Status LED 29, 34
Status option 189
Std Reqs & Descriptors Scripts 144
Still Imaging Class .dec file 156
Stop Recording command 272
stopping
  traffic generation 291, 328
storage range 44
summary
  error 179
  traffic 184
support 355
support keys 295
switches 32, 36, 44
synchronize the LTSSM View and Trace View 209
Synchronize Trace View 196

system
components 33, 40
setup 43
system components 29

## T

tabs 313
file 288
Task commands 322
technical support 355
Telephone Control Model .dec file 155
Termination/RxDetect 240, 245
Text Snippets window 315
text-editing commands 313
Tile Horizontally option 189
Tile Vertically option 189
Time Stamp menu 99
timer 2
timestamp 99
Timestamp At The Beginning option 144
Timestamp field 144
timestamps 2
Timing Calculations report 180
Timing Calculator 180
To Frame field 329
toggle
reset 151
Toggle Outlining option 314
toggle value 151
Tool tip Display 195
Toolbar 83
button descriptions 78
command 83
icons 78
Recording Rules 247
resetting 83
tab 84
Tools menu 176
Tooltip option 189
tooltips 82, 105, 144, 287, 288, 314, 317
trace
first recording 65, 67
reading 93
set marker in 95
shortcuts 91
view features 67, 93
viewing level 145
Trace File Name & Path button 236
trace files
edit comment 124
filename 236
merging 273
Trace Viewer 69
Trace Viewer mode 67
Trace Viewing Level option 145
traffic
analyzing 175
display 1
generation 16
summary 184
Traffic Generation 277
traffic generation
file format 294
modes 291, 328
options 292
repeating 291
running 293
starting 291, 328
stopping 291, 328
Traffic Generation Start/Stop button 291
Traffic Summary report 184
Traffic Type pane 202
Trainer
connecting 277, 307
Transaction Packet Type 137
Transaction View 108
transactions 117
decoded 110
decoding protocols 115
expanded/collapsed 111
split view 112
Transfer View 112
transfers
decode protocols 115
decoded 113
expanded/collapsed 113
tree 287
TRG indicator 41
TRG LED 34
Trigger 31
option 254
options 255
trigger
LED 34
Trigger Position slider 234
Triggered LED 44
triggered LED 41
triggering 3, 18

triggers
Event 231
Manual 231
manual 34
setting 247
Truncate Data Fields option 239
TTL output and input signals 38
Type B connector 31
type B connector 34, 42
Type field 159

## U

UFI(floppy)/CBI Protocol .dec file 156
Undo Zoom option 219
Union search 140
Universal Protocol Analyzer System 13
Universal Serial Bus 40
Specification 40
Universal Serial Bus Specification 6, 14, 172
UPAS 13
update
automatic 349
BusEngine 349
firmware 349
manual 350
Update Device dialog 350
Update License
command 352
Update Selected button 350
updates
license 351
updating 345
BusEngine manual 350
software 346, 348
UPLD indicator 41
UPLD LED 34
upload
LED 34
partial 86
Upload Again command 71
upload LED 41
Uploading LED 44
Upstream Packets 106
Upstream port link status 208
USB
architecture 13
cables 46
USB 2.0 Features 5
USB 2.0 hiding options 151
USB 2.0 traffic only 107
USB 3.0 Exerciser button 310
USB 3.0 Features 5
USB 3.0 hiding options 152
USB 3.0 packet types 94
USB 3.0 Protocol Exerciser window 310
USB 3.0 traffic only 107
USB connection 51
USB connector 31
USB Device Request menu 170
USB Device Requests 170
USB Implementers Forum 6, 14, 40, 172
USB IP Setup 58
USB On-The-Go option 239
USB Protocol Suite program 56
USB Traffic Generation 277, 307
USB type B connector 34
USB2 Hiding tab 151
USB3 Hiding tab 152
USB3 Link State Timing View 207
USB3 LTSSM View 209
USB-IF 6, 14, 40, 172
USBMobile HS 28
USBMobile T2 25
USBMobile T2 components 50
Use Address in .utg file option 292
User-Defined Find Events screen 138
UWB .dec file 158

## V

vendor definition files 155
verification script 212
versions 345
Very Slow option 241
Video Class .dec file 157
Video CONTROL .dec file 157
Video INTERFACE COLLECTION .dec file 157
Video STREAMING .dec file 157
View
menu 73, 311
options 83

view
data block 104
decoded transactions 110
decoded transfers 113
packet 108
raw bits 100
split transaction 112
transaction 108
transfer 112
Wire Adapter Segment 115, 116
Wire Adapter Transfer 116, 117, 118
View ... Fields Dialog Layout dialog box 174
View Data Block command 104
View Fields for ... Class Requests text box 172
View Fields for ... Endp text box 173
View Fields for Standard Request text box 171
View Options 196
button 287
menu 287
View Options button 195
View Settings button 189
Viewing Level 145
Views toolbar 316
Voyager M3 4

## W

Warnings 313
warranty
coverage 355
limited 355
period 355
provisions 357
service 356
transfer 357
website 355
weight 35, 44
Window menu 75, 311
Wire Adapter .dec file 158
Wire Adapter Multifunction Peripheral programming interface 158
Wireless Controller .dec file 158
Wireless Handset Control Model 155
Wrap command 89
Wrap option 144
wrap=here line 291
wrapping lines 144

## X

XFER button 323

## Y

Y Scale Type option 219
yellow LED 41
yellow range delimiters 203
yellow square 313

## Z

zoom 194
Zoom in command 89
Zoom label 100
Zoom Level option 144
Zoom out command 89